

The minitoc package^{*}

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

13th September 2006

^{*}This document corresponds to minitoc v48, dated 2006/09/13.

Summary

Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
About this document	18
I User's Manual	20
1 The minitoc package	22
2 Frequently Asked Questions	52
3 Memento	74
4 Examples of documents	82
5 Messages	137
6 Jargon	185
7 Installation	215
8 Postface	219
Acknowledgments	227
II Implementation	229
9 Commented code of minitoc.sty	231
10 Commented code of mtcoff.sty	396
11 Commented code of mtcmess.sty	410
12 Patch for the memoir class	411

<i>SUMMARY</i>	3
13 The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	413
III Complements	503
Bibliography	505
Changes History	524
Index	552

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
About this document	18
 I User's Manual	 20
1 The minitoc package	22
1.1 Introduction	23
1.1.1 Important restrictions	24
1.1.2 Version	24
1.2 License	24
1.3 Using the minitoc package	25
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	25
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	25
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	27
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	31
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	32
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	32
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	34
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	36
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	36
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	36
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	36
1.4.7 Position of the titles	37
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	37
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	37
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	37
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles	38
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	38
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	38
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	39
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	40
1.4.12 Languages for the titles	40

1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	40
1.5	Special Features	42
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	42
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	43
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	43
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	45
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	45
1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	45
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	46
1.5.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	46
1.6	The notoccite option	47
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	48
1.8	The hints option	48
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	50
1.10	Why several L ^A T _E X runs are required ?	50
1.11	The mtcoff package	51
2	Frequently Asked Questions	52
2.0	Introduction	53
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after the mini-table	53
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	54
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error	54
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	54
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	55
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	55
2.7	Supported document classes	55
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	55
2.9	Other mini-tables	56
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	56
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	57
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	57
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	58
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	58
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	58
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	58
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	58
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	59
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	59
2.20	Use with the appendix package	59
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	60
2.22	Use with the memoir class	61
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	62
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	62
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	62
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	65
2.27	Use with the abstract package	66
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	66
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	66
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	67

2.31	Use with packages for captions	68
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	68
2.33	Use with the varsects package	68
2.34	Initial font settings	68
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	70
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	70
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package	70
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	71
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	71
2.40	Use with the romannum package	71
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	71
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	71
2.43	Use with the captcont package	72
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before and after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles . .	72
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable	73
3	Memento	74
4	Examples of documents	82
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	83
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	84
4.3	The mtc-add.tex document file	85
4.4	The mtc-ads.tex document file	90
4.5	The mtc-amm.tex document file	96
4.6	The mtc-art.tex document file	96
4.7	The mtc-bk.tex document file	102
4.8	The mtc-bo.tex document file	108
4.9	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	113
4.10	The mtc-cri.tex document file	114
4.11	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	115
4.12	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	116
4.13	The mtc-hia.tex document file	117
4.14	The mtc-hir.tex document file	118
4.15	The mtc-hop.tex document file	119
4.16	The mtc-liv.tex document file	120
4.17	The mtc-mem.tex document file	124
4.18	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	125
4.19	The mtc-mu.tex document file	126
4.20	The mtc-sbf.tex document file	128
4.21	The mtc-scr.tex document file	129
4.22	The mtc-syn.tex document file	131
4.23	The mtc-tbi.tex document file	132
4.24	The mtc-tlc.tex document file	133
4.25	The mtc-tsfc.tex document file	134
5	Messages	137
5.1	Introduction	137
5.2	Messages from the minitoc package	139
5.2.1	Informative messages	139
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	147

5.2.2	Warning messages	149
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	154
5.2.3	Error messages	170
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	182
5.3.1	Warning messages	182
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	184
6	Jargon	185
7	Installation	215
8	Postface	219
8.1	The origins	219
8.2	New design in 1993	220
8.3	Developments in 1994	220
8.4	No developments in 1995	221
8.5	Developments en 1996	221
8.6	Developments in 1997	221
8.7	Developments in 1998	221
8.8	Developments in 1999	221
8.9	Developments in 2000	222
8.10	Developments in 2001	222
8.11	Developments in 2002	222
8.12	Developments in 2003	222
8.13	Developments in 2004	223
8.14	Developments in 2005	223
8.15	Developments in 2006	225
	Acknowledgments	227
II	Implementation	229
9	Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code>	231
9.1	Introduction	234
9.2	Identification code	235
9.3	A file descriptor to write	235
9.4	Indentation and skip	235
9.5	Tests and flags	236
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	236
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	237
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	237
9.5.4	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	238
9.5.5	Flags to check if some commands are used	239
9.5.6	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	240
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	241
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	241
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	241
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	242
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	242

9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	242
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	242
9.9.4	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	242
9.9.5	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	243
9.9.6	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	243
9.9.7	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	243
9.9.8	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	243
9.9.9	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	244
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	244
9.9.11	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	244
9.9.12	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	244
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?	245
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	245
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	247
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	247
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	248
9.15	Section level macros	248
9.16	Corrections for numbering	249
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	249
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	249
9.19	Chapter level macros	250
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	250
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	250
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	251
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	252
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	253
9.25	A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	253
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	254
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	256
9.28	Fake tables of contents	259
9.29	Depth counters for <code>minilofs</code> and <code>minilots</code>	259
9.30	Chapter level commands	260
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	260
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	261
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	262
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	263
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	263
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	263
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	266
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	269
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	272
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	273
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	273
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	274
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	275
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	278
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	282
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	282
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	284
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	285

9.43	Macro to write a contents line	287
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	288
9.45	Part level commands	289
9.46	Fonts for the parttoc	289
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	290
9.48	The ptc@verse environment	292
9.49	The part level mini-tables : \parttoc, \partlof, and \partlot	293
9.49.1	The \parttoc command	293
9.49.2	The \partlof command	296
9.49.3	The \partlot command	299
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttoc	301
9.51	Patching the \part command, continued	302
9.52	The \doparttoc command and its siblings	302
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttoc	304
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	308
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	310
9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	313
9.54	Section-level commands	313
9.55	Fonts commands for secttoc and co.	314
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	314
9.57	The stc@verse environment	315
9.58	The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands	315
9.58.1	The \secttoc command	315
9.58.2	The \sectlof command	318
9.58.3	The \sectlot command	321
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	323
9.60	Patching the \section command (continued)	324
9.61	The \dosecttoc command and siblings	325
9.62	End of section-level commands	334
9.63	The \mtcprepare command	335
9.64	Necessary \l@... commands	335
9.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	336
9.66	The \mtcset... commands	336
9.66.1	Keywords for the \mtcset... commands	337
9.66.2	The \mtcsetfont command	338
9.66.3	The \mtcsettitlefont command	342
9.66.4	The \mtcsettitle command	343
9.66.5	The \mtcsetformat command	345
9.66.6	The \mtcsetpagenumbers command	349
9.66.7	The \mtcsetrules command	351
9.66.8	The \mtcsetfeature command	353
9.66.9	The \mtcsetdepth command	356
9.67	The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings	357
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	359
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	360
9.70	The \mtcselectlanguage command	362
9.71	The \mtcloadmlo internal command	362
9.72	The “coffee breaks”	363
9.73	Initialization of counters	363

9.74	Declarations for simple options	363
9.74.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	363
9.74.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	364
9.74.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	364
9.74.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	364
9.74.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	364
9.75	The <code>insection</code> option	364
9.76	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	365
9.77	Language options	365
9.78	The <code>hints</code> option	369
9.78.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begindoc</code>	369
9.78.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	369
9.78.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	370
9.78.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	370
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	370
9.78.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	371
9.78.1.6	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	371
9.78.1.7	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	371
9.78.1.8	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	373
9.78.1.9	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	373
9.78.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	373
9.78.1.11	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	373
9.78.1.12	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	374
9.78.1.13	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	374
9.78.1.13.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	374
9.78.1.13.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	375
9.78.1.13.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	375
9.78.1.14	Hint about the coherence of the calling sequences of some commands	376
9.78.2	Final part : <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	377
9.78.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	377
9.78.2.2	Final part of the coherence tests	377
9.78.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	379
9.78.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	381
9.78.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	383
9.78.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	384
9.78.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	384
9.78.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	385
9.78.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	385
9.78.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	385
9.78.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	386
9.78.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	386
9.78.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	386
9.78.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	387
9.78.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	387
9.78.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	387
9.78.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	388
9.78.2.18	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	388
9.78.2.19	Check if obsolete commands have been used	390
9.78.2.20	Check if some hints have been written	390

9.79	Processing of options	391
9.79.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	392
9.79.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	392
9.79.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	392
9.79.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	393
9.79.5	Saving the sectioning commands	394
9.80	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	394
10	Commented code of <code>mtcoeff.sty</code>	396
10.1	Why <code>mtcoeff.sty</code> ?	396
10.2	Identification of the package	397
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	397
10.4	Faking simple commands	399
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	400
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	401
10.7	Disabling the font commands	401
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	403
10.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	403
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	403
10.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	403
10.12	Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command	404
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	404
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	404
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	405
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	406
10.17	Caution for some commands	406
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	407
10.19	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	408
10.20	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and <code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> internal commands	408
10.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	408
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	408
10.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	409
11	Commented code of <code>mtcmess.sty</code>	410
12	Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	411
13	The language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	413
13.1	“Acadian” language : <code>acadian.mld</code>	417
13.2	“Acadien” language : <code>acadien.mld</code>	418
13.3	“Afrikaan” language : <code>afrikaan.mld</code>	418
13.4	“Afrikaans” language : <code>afrikaans.mld</code>	418
13.5	“Albanian” language : <code>albanian.mld</code>	419
13.6	“American” language : <code>american.mld</code>	419
13.7	“Arab” language : <code>arab.mld</code>	419
13.8	“Arab2” language : <code>arab2.mld</code>	420
13.9	“Arabi” language : <code>arabi.mld</code>	420
13.10	“Arabic” language : <code>arabic.mld</code>	421
13.11	“Armenian” language : <code>armenian.mld</code>	421

13.12	“Australian” language : <code>australian.mld</code>	422
13.13	“Austrian” language : <code>austrian.mld</code>	422
13.14	“Bahasa” language : <code>bahasa.mld</code>	422
13.15	“Bahasai” language : <code>bahasai.mld</code>	423
13.16	“Bahasam” language : <code>bahasam.mld</code>	423
13.17	“Bangla” language : <code>bangla.mld</code>	424
13.18	“Basque” language : <code>basque.mld</code>	424
13.19	“Bicig” language : <code>bicig.mld</code>	425
13.20	“Bicig2” language : <code>bicig2.mld</code>	425
13.21	“Bicig3” language : <code>bicig3.mld</code>	426
13.22	“Bithe” language : <code>bithe.mld</code>	427
13.23	“Brazil” language : <code>brazil.mld</code>	427
13.24	“Brazilian” language : <code>brazilian.mld</code>	428
13.25	“Breton” language : <code>breton.mld</code>	428
13.26	“British” language : <code>british.mld</code>	429
13.27	“Bulgarian” language : <code>bulgarian.mld</code>	429
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language : <code>bulgarianb.mld</code>	430
13.29	“Buryat” language : <code>buryat.mld</code>	430
13.30	“Buryat2” language : <code>buryat2.mld</code>	431
13.31	“Canadian” language : <code>canadian.mld</code>	431
13.32	“Canadien” language : <code>canadien.mld</code>	432
13.33	“Castillan” language : <code>castillan.mld</code>	432
13.34	“Castillian” language : <code>castillian.mld</code>	432
13.35	“Catalan” language : <code>catalan.mld</code>	432
13.36	“Chinese1” language : <code>chinese1.mld</code> and <code>chinese1.mlo</code>	433
13.37	“Chinese2” language : <code>chinese2.mld</code> and <code>chinese2.mlo</code>	433
13.38	“Croatian” language : <code>croatian.mld</code>	434
13.39	“Czech” language : <code>czech.mld</code>	434
13.40	“Danish” language : <code>danish.mld</code>	435
13.41	“Devanagari” language : <code>devanagari.mld</code>	435
13.42	“Dutch” language : <code>dutch.mld</code>	436
13.43	“English” language : <code>english.mld</code>	437
13.44	“English1” language : <code>english1.mld</code>	437
13.45	“English2” language : <code>english2.mld</code>	438
13.46	“Esperant” language : <code>esperant.mld</code>	438
13.47	“Esperanto” language : <code>esperanto.mld</code>	439
13.48	“Estonian” language : <code>estonian.mld</code>	439
13.49	“Ethiopia” language : <code>ethiopia.mld</code>	440
13.50	“Ethiopian” language : <code>ethiopian.mld</code>	440
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language : <code>ethiopian2.mld</code>	441
13.52	“Farsi1” language : <code>farsi1.mld</code> and <code>farsi1.mlo</code>	441
13.53	“Farsi2” language : <code>farsi2.mld</code> and <code>farsi2.mlo</code>	442
13.54	“Farsi3” language : <code>farsi3.mld</code>	442
13.55	“Finnish” language : <code>finnish.mld</code>	443
13.56	“Finnish2” language : <code>finnish2.mld</code>	443
13.57	“Francais” language : <code>francais.mld</code>	444
13.58	“French” language : <code>french.mld</code>	444
13.59	“French1” language : <code>french1.mld</code>	445
13.60	“French2” language : <code>french2.mld</code>	445

13.61	“Frenchb” language : frenchb.mld	446
13.62	“Frenchle” language : frenchle.mld	446
13.63	“Frenchpro” language : frenchpro.mld	447
13.64	“Galician” language : galician.mld	447
13.65	“German” language : german.mld	447
13.66	“Germanb” language : germanb.mld	448
13.67	“Germanb2” language : germanb2.mld	448
13.68	“Greek” language : greek.mld	449
13.69	“Greek-mono” language : greek-mono.mld	449
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language : greek-polydemo.mld	450
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language : greek-polykatha.mld	451
13.72	“Guarani” language : guarani.mld	452
13.73	“Hangul1” language : hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo	453
13.74	“Hangul2” language : hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo	453
13.75	“Hangul3” language : hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo	454
13.76	“Hangul4” language : hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo	455
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language : hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo	455
13.78	“Hanja1” language : hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo	456
13.79	“Hanja2” language : hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo	456
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language : hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo	457
13.81	“Hebrew” language : hebrew.mld	457
13.82	“Hebrew2” language : hebrew2.mld	458
13.83	“Hindi” language : hindi.mld	459
13.84	“Hindi-modern” language : hindi-modern.mld	459
13.85	“Hungarian” language : hungarian.mld	459
13.86	“Icelandic” language : icelandic.mld	460
13.87	“Indon” language : indon.mld	460
13.88	“Indonesian” language : indonesian.mld	460
13.89	“Interlingua” language : interlingua.mld	461
13.90	“Irish” language : irish.mld	461
13.91	“Italian” language : italian.mld	462
13.92	“Italian2” language : italian2.mld	462
13.93	“Japanese” language : japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	463
13.94	“Japanese2” language : japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	463
13.95	“Japanese3” language : japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	464
13.96	“Japanese4” language : japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	464
13.97	“Japanese5” language : japanese5.mld and japanese.mlo	465
13.98	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	465
13.99	“Khalka” language : khalkha.mld	466
13.100	“Latin” language : latin.mld	466
13.101	“Latin2” language : latin2.mld	467
13.102	“Latvian” language : latvian.mld	467
13.103	“Letton” language : letton.mld	468
13.104	“Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	468
13.105	“Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	469
13.106	“Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	469
13.107	“Magyar” language : magyar.mld	470
13.108	“Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	470
13.109	“Magyar3” language : magyar.mld	471

13.110 “Malay” language : malay.mld	471
13.111 “Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	471
13.112 “Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	472
13.113 “Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	472
13.114 “Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	473
13.115 “Manju” language : manju.mld	473
13.116 “Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld	474
13.117 “Mongol” language : mongol.mld	474
13.118 “Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld	475
13.119 “Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld	475
13.120 “Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld	475
13.121 “Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld	475
13.122 “Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld	476
13.123 “Norsk” language : norsk.mld	476
13.124 “Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld	477
13.125 “Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld	478
13.126 “Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld	478
13.127 “Polish” language : polish.mld	479
13.128 “Polish2” language : polish2.mld	479
13.129 “Polski” language : polski.mld	480
13.130 “Portuges” language : portuges.mld	480
13.131 “Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld	480
13.132 “Romanian” language : romanian.mld	481
13.133 “Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld	481
13.134 “Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld	482
13.135 “Russian” language : russian.mld	483
13.136 “Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld	483
13.137 “Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld	484
13.138 “Russianb” language : russianb.mld	485
13.139 “Russianc” language : russianc.mld	486
13.140 “Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	486
13.141 “Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	487
13.142 “Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	487
13.143 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	488
13.144 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	488
13.145 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	489
13.146 “Samin” language : samin.mld	489
13.147 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld	490
13.148 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld	490
13.149 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld	491
13.150 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld	491
13.151 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld	492
13.152 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld	492
13.153 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld	493
13.154 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld	494

13.155 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld	494
13.156 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld	495
13.157 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld	495
13.158 “Thai” language : thai.mld and thai.mlo	496
13.159 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld	496
13.160 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld	497
13.161 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld	497
13.162 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld	497
13.163 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld	497
13.164 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld	498
13.165 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld	498
13.166 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld	499
13.167 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld	499
13.168 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld	499
13.169 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld	500
13.170 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld	500
13.171 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld	501
13.172 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld	501
13.173 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld	502
13.174 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld	502

III Complements	503
Bibliography	505
Changes History	524
Index	552

List of Figures

1.1	Float barriers with the <code>section</code> option	29
1.2	Float barriers with the <code>above</code> option	29
1.3	Float barriers with the <code>below</code> option	29
1.4	Float barriers with the <code>above</code> and <code>below</code> options	29
1.5	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	41
2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	54
6.1	Some systems derived from <code>T_EX</code> and <code>L^AT_EX</code>	208
9.1	Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions	252

List of Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	26
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	27
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	30
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	32
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	33
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	34
1.7	Available languages	35
1.8	Horizontal rules	42
1.9	Page numbers	42
1.10	Features for mini-tables	44
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	50
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	73
3.1	Package options	74
3.2	General commands	75
3.3	Commands : part level	76
3.4	Commands : chapter level	77
3.5	Commands : section level	78
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	79
3.7	Commands for page numbers	79
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	80
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	80
3.10	Adjustment commands	81
3.11	Obsolete commands	81
6.1	Category codes	191
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	191
6.3	Document classes	192
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	193
6.5	Most common font encodings	205
6.6	Most common font families	206
6.7	Most common font series	206
6.8	Most common font shapes	206
6.9	The five font parameters for some fonts	206
6.10	Author commands for fonts	207
7.1	List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>)	216

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, do not be afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 21):
 - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 22, describes the essential commands to use the package;
 - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 52, may help you to solve some specific problems;
 - the “Memento” chapter, page 74, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
 - the “Examples of documents” chapter, page 82, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
 - the “Messages” chapter, page 137, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages;
 - the “Jargon” chapter, page 185, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
 - the “Installation” chapter, page 215, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
 - the “Postface” chapter, page 219, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 230, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 413, may be useful if you are interested by some language.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 504, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [99], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables.

As the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks, these tables should help you to navigate in the document.

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The <code>minitoc</code> package	22
2	Frequently Asked Questions	52
3	Memento	74
4	Examples of documents	82
5	Messages	137
6	Jargon	185
7	Installation	215
8	Postface	219
	Acknowledgments	227

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	23
1.1.1	Important restrictions	24
1.1.2	Version	24
1.2	License	24
1.3	Using the minitoc package	25
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	25
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	25
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	27
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	31
1.4	Typesetting of the mini-tables	32
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	32
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	34
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	36
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	36
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	36
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	36
1.4.7	Position of the titles	37
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	37
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	37
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	37
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	38
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	38
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	38
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	39
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	40
1.4.12	Languages for the titles	40
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	40
1.5	Special Features	42
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	42
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	43
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	43
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	45
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	45

1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	45
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	46
1.5.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	46
1.6	The <code>notoccite</code> option	47
1.7	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	48
1.8	The <code>hints</code> option	48
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	50
1.10	Why several \LaTeX runs are required?	50
1.11	The <code>mtcoff</code> package	51

Figures

1.1	Float barriers with the <code>section</code> option	29
1.2	Float barriers with the <code>above</code> option	29
1.3	Float barriers with the <code>below</code> option	29
1.4	Float barriers with the <code>above</code> and <code>below</code> options	29
1.5	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	41

Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	26
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	27
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	30
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	32
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	33
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	34
1.7	Available languages	35
1.8	Horizontal rules	42
1.9	Page numbers	42
1.10	Features for mini-tables	44
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	50

1.1 Introduction

The `minitoc` package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 219. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report`) or sections (classes like `article`²). Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial”

¹ The `minitoc` package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard `proc` class loads the standard `article` class, this class will be just considered as a variant of the `article` class.

table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use section level tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions



Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectionning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.

1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #48. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 219) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 524.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L^AT_EX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don’t bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must introduce a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter` `\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}`

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the following page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `<document>.mtc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is `.mlf<N>` for mini-lists of figures and is `.mlt<N>` for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 50 and section 2.5 on page 55). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending of the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the `<document>.toc`, `<document>.lof`, and `<document>.lot`
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the `<document>.mtc<N>`, `<document>.mlf<N>`, and
`<document>.mlt<N>` files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectioning commands; if you modify sectioning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you ask for details with a high value for `minitocdepth`.

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [85], by David CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}	default	
\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}	default	
...		
\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dominitoc		
\dominilof		
\dominilot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\chapter{...}		
\minitoc	if you want one	
\mtcskip		
\minilof	if you want one	
\mtcskip		
\minilot	if you want one	
...		

\dosecttoc	The commands \dosecttoc, \dosectlof, and \dosectlot (for mini-tables at the section level) and \doparttoc, \dopartlof, and \dopartlot (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.
\dosectlof	
\dosectlot	
\doparttoc	The \mtcprepare command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for <i>all</i> the mini-tables.
\dopartlof	
\dopartlot	
\mtcprepare	To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must <i>imperatively be put before</i> any command analog to the \tableofcontents, \listoffigures, and \listoftables commands, or their \fake... siblings.
\tableofcontents	
\listoffigures	
\listoftables	



It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the \do...toc commands), and *before* any \caption-like command producing an entry in the list of figure (for the \do...lof commands) or in the list of tables (for the \do...lot) commands; else disorder in the mini-tables might result.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add the section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `<document>.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 50 and section 2.5 on page 55).

`\usepackage`
`\FloatBarrier`



As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more coherent sectlofs and sectlots. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [9] with its `verbose` and `section` options. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (\Uparrow) or downwards (\Downarrow), or both (\Updownarrow). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (\equiv). This is illustrated by the four figures 1.1 to 1.4 on the following page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENAU, is available on CTAN archives; the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.



Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [151] and [174, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section. In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [160] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [148].

If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3 on page 30. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `<document>.ptc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf<N>` for partial lists of figures and is `.plt<N>` for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 50 and section 2.5 on page 55).



Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a `minilof` for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a `partlof` for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (`secttoc`, `sectlof`, and `sectlot`) and to the part-level mini-tables (`parttoc`, `partlof`, and `partlot`).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.
 Donald ARSENAU

⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\doparttoc</code>	
<code>\dopartlof</code>	
<code>\dopartlot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\part{...}</code>	
<code>\parttoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\partlof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\partlot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 27) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [90, 92] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

`\addstarredpart` **NOTE:** if using `\chapter*` and a
`\addstarredchapter`
`\addstarredsection` `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}`



command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the `minitoc` auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:

```

\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}

```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

`\addcontentsline` `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}`

for example, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```

\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}

```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):
`\adjustmtc` the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`
`\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to
increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or
`\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff`
package (see section 1.11 on page 51) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others),
but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic
commands of L^AT_EX, not `minitoc` specific commands. Syntax:

```

\adjustptc[n]
\adjustmtc[n]
\adjuststc[n]

```

where n is the increment (default: 1).

Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[⟨title⟩]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[⟨title⟩]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[⟨title⟩]</code>

`\decrementptc` There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters:
`\decrementmtc` `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`,
`\decrementstc` and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.
`\incrementptc`
`\incrementmtc`
`\incrementstc`

`\mtcaddpart` A more clever way to solve this problem is to use commands similar to:
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcaddsection` `\mtcaddchapter[⟨title⟩]`



This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 67 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.

1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily`
`\mtcSfont` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof
`\mtcSSfont` or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are
`\mtcSSSfont` typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default. For subsections,
`\mtcPfont` subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`,
`\mtcSPfont` `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the
`\mlffont` use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont`
`\mltfont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont`
`\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. Tables 1.5 on the following page
`\mltSfont` and 1.6 on page 34 summarize these many commands⁹.

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
*for document classes with <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., book, report).			
**for document classes with no <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., article).			
[†] default for english; changed by the language definition files or <code>\renewcommand</code> .			
All these fonts use <code>\rmfamily</code> , <code>\upshape</code> , and <code>\mdseries</code> by default.			



Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed ¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can eventually be adjusted by changing some fonts.

¹⁰This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [132]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [201]), by example, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 66.

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	<i>(like \ptcfont)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like \ptcfont)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	<i>(like \ptcfont)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	<i>(like \ptcfont)</i>
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<i>(like \mtcfont)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like \mtcfont)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<i>(like \mtcfont)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<i>(like \mtcfont)</i>
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like \stcfont)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	<i>(like \stcfont)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	<i>(like \stcfont)</i>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).
**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

<code>\mtifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\mtifont</code> (<code>\large\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text strings
<code>\mtctitle</code>	of the titles are defined by <code>\mtctitle</code> , <code>\mlftitle</code> and <code>\mltttitle</code> , which are the strings
<code>\mlftitle</code>	“Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined
<code>\mltttitle</code>	by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	The language option files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (the suffix <code>.mld</code> means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on the next page and section 1.4.12 on page 40) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 65). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

1. afrikaan (afrikaans)	28. dutch	50. greek- polydemo ^{c,e}	80. magyar (hungarian)	107. russian-cca1 ^{c,g,h}
2. albanian	29. english (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	51. greek- polykatha ^{c,e}	81. magyar2	108. russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
3. arab (arabic) ^c		52. guarani ^h	82. magyar3	109. russian- lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
4. arab2 ^{a,c}		53. hangul1 ^{c,d,g}	83. malayalam-keli ^c	110. russian- lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
5. arabi ^{c,j}		54. hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	84. malayalam- omega ^{c,e,g,h}	111. russian- lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
6. armenian ^c		55. hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	85. malayalam- rachana ^c	112. samin
7. bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	30. english1	56. hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	86. malayalam- rachana2 ^c	113. scottish
8. bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	31. english2	57. hangul-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	87. mongol ^c	114. serbian
9. bangla ^c	32. esperant (esperanto)	58. hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	88. ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	115. serbianc ^c
10. basque	33. estonian	59. hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	89. ngermanb2	116. slovak
11. bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	34. ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	60. hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	90. norsk	117. slovene
12. bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	35. ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	61. hebrew ^{c,h}	91. norsk2	118. spanish (castillan, castillian)
13. bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	36. farsi1 ^{c,f,g}	62. hebrew2 ^{c,h}	92. nynorsk	119. spanish2
14. bithe (manju) ^c	37. farsi2 ^{c,f,g}	63. hindi-modern ^c	93. nynorsk2	120. spanish3 ^{e,f}
15. brazil (brazilian)	38. farsi3 ^{c,j}	64. icelandic ^f	94. polish	121. spanish4
16. breton	39. finnish	65. interlingua	95. polish2 ^{c,e}	122. swedish
17. bulgarian ^c	40. finnish2	66. irish	96. polski ^c	123. swedish2
18. bulgarianb ^c	41. french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	67. italian	97. portuguese (portuges)	124. thai ^{c,d,f,g}
19. buryat ^c		68. italian2	98. romanian	125. turkish
20. buryat2 ^c	42. french1	69. japanese ^{c,d,g}	99. romanian2	126. ukrainian (ukraineb) ^{b,c}
21. catalan	43. french2	70. japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	100. romanian3	127. uppersorbian (usorbian)
22. chinese1 ^{c,g}	44. galician	71. japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	101. russian ^{b,c}	128. vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
23. chinese2 ^{c,g}	45. german (austrian)	72. japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	102. russianb ^{b,c}	129. welsh
24. croatian	46. germanb	73. japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	103. russianc ^{b,c}	130. xalx (khalkha) ^c
25. czech	47. germanb2	74. kannada ^c	104. russian2m ^{c,e}	131. xalx2 ^c
26. danish	48. greek ^c	75. latin	105. russian2o ^{c,e}	132. xalx3 ^c
27. devanagari (hindi) ^c	49. greek-mono ^{c,e}	76. latin2	106. russian-cca ^{c,g,h}	
		77. latvian (letton) ^e		
		78. lithuanian		
		79. lowersorbian (lsorbian)		

The languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

^a The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [143, 144].

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [35, 36], but russianb [149] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [156, 157].

^e Requires Lambda (Λ), the version of L^AT_EX for Omega (Ω).

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The bicig language is also known as uighur.

^j The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the Arabi package [125].

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `parttoc`, `partlof` or `partlot`. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.

`\ptcCfont` Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default.

`\ptcSfont` Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\plffont` and `\pltfont`, which are `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

`\ptifont` Titles are typeset in the `\ptifont` (`\LARGE\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\ptctitle`, `\plftitle` and `\plttitle`, which are the strings “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and many others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the preceding page) are available. Read also section 1.4.12 on page 40. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 65). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot`. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.

`\stcSSfont` Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default.

`\stcSSSfont` Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\slttitle`, which are

`\stctitle`

`\slftitle`

`\slttitle`

`\mtcsettitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage`

the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english. The language option files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on page 35 and explained in section 1.4.12 on page 40) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 65). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

<code>\doparttoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> and
<code>\dopartlof</code>	<code>\dopartlot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dopartlot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
<code>\parttoc</code>	The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for
<code>\partlof</code>	only one parttoc (or partlof or partlot), just use such an optional argument with the command
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\parttoc</code> (or <code>\partlof</code> or <code>\partlot</code>).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

<code>\dominitoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> and
<code>\dominilof</code>	<code>\dominilot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dominilot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for “empty” (“no”
<code>\minitoc</code>	title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the
<code>\minilof</code>	title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the
<code>\minilot</code>	command <code>\minitoc</code> (or <code>\minilof</code> or <code>\minilot</code>).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

<code>\dosecttoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> and
<code>\dosectlof</code>	<code>\dosectlot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dosectlot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
<code>\secttoc</code>	The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for
<code>\sectlof</code>	only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\secttoc</code> (or <code>\sectlof</code> or <code>\sectlot</code>).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:

`\dopartlof`

`\dopartlot`

`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,

`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,

`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,

`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`

`\dosectlof`

`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positioning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\mtcprepare`

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`

`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,

`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,

`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`

`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positioning only for the title of the current mini-table.

`\sectlof`

`\sectlot`

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\tightmtctrue`

`\tightmtcfalse`

But with the KOMA-Script classes [180] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set `\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends of the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option, `parskip` option and variants).

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\ktightmtctrue`

`\ktightmtcfalse`

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:

`\mtcsetttitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlofs`) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language option files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [35, 36] of Johannes BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [143, 144], `Arabi` [125], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [97], `BangTeX` (bangla) [185], `Devanāgarī for TeX` [186], `ethiop` [26], `guarani` [29], `Malayalam` [3, 4], `MonTeX` (mongol) [93, 96], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangŭl/hanja, japanese, thai) [156, 157], `PLaTeX` [184, 224] (polish), `SLaTeX` [167] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam.sty` — latvian (letton), greek-mono, greek-polydemo, greek-polykatha, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need `Lambda (Λ)`, i.e., the `Omega (Ω)` version of `LATeX`, (see [139]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome. See table 1.7 on page 35.



But for some oriental languages¹¹, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹², not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of `minitoc` package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.

1.4.13 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.5 on the next page (this figure is adapted from [227]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but `LATeX` commands, created by `\newcommand`, modifiable via `\renewcommand`).

¹¹Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangŭl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹²The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

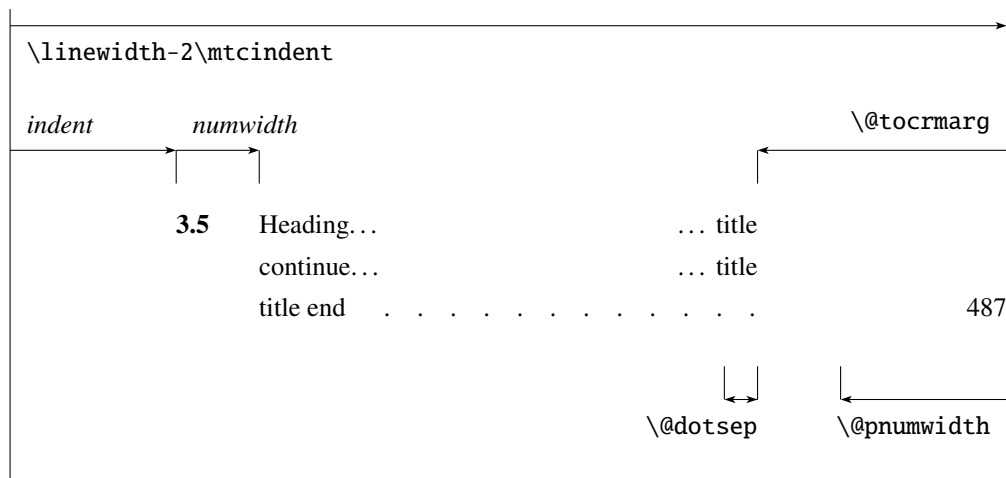


Figure 1.5: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

- `\dotsep`, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- `\pnumwidth`, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a \LaTeX command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- `@tocrmarg`, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than `\pnumwidth`, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

`\mtcsetformat` As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on specific mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the `\mtcsetformat` command:

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for `\dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long.

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
rules in		no rules in		book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.5 on the preceding page).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³ :

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, and `0`.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³ :

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON` and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.13 on page 40.

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a `parttoc` (or a `partlof` or a `partlot`), in a `book-` or `report-`class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10 on the following page, whose meaning is obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

¹³ `0` and `o` are the letter O, `0` is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	\beforeparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\afterparttoc	\cleardoublepage
parttoc	\thispageparttocstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlof	\beforepartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\afterpartlof	\cleardoublepage
partlof	\thispagepartlofstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
partlot	\beforepartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\afterpartlot	\cleardoublepage
partlot	\thispagepartlotstyle	\thispagestyle{empty}
minitoc	\beforeminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\afterminitoc	\empty
minitoc	\thispageminitocstyle	\empty
minilof	\beforeminilof	\empty
minilof	\afterminilof	\empty
minilof	\thispageminilofstyle	\empty
minilot	\beforeminilot	\empty
minilot	\afterminilot	\empty
minilot	\thispageminilotstyle	\empty
secttoc	\beforesecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\aftersecttoc	\empty
secttoc	\thispagesecttocstyle	\empty
sectlof	\beforesectlof	\empty
sectlof	\aftersectlof	\empty
sectlof	\thispagesectlofstyle	\empty
sectlot	\beforesectlot	\empty
sectlot	\aftersectlot	\empty
sectlot	\thispagesectlotstyle	\empty
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{command} Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

\mtcsetfeature The command:

\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: parttoc... sectlot. *keyword* is one of the followings: before, after or pagestyle.

commands is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁴



The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}`, because in document classes defining the `\chapter` command, the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages. If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour comes from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short example¹⁵:

```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{thispagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

1.5.4.1 Before version #23 (1994/11/08)

`\firstpartis`
`\firstchapteris`
`\firstsectionis`

To make the `minitoc` package work with such documents, you must insert the command:

```
\firstchapteris{<N>}
```

¹⁴This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [16], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the `minitoc` package.

¹⁵This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands. $\langle N \rangle$ is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a

```
\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}
```

command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis` commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

1.5.4.2 Since version #23 (1994/11/08)



These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

1.5.5 Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index



If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the `tocbibind` package [230] by Peter R. WILSON (this package is available from the CTAN archives).

`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the `.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl.cls` KOMA-Script classes [180] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`, `bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxTOTOC`). The solutions are the same.

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the involved commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.

`\listoffigures`
`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography` command.

`\bibliography`

`\printindex` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just after the `\printglossary` command:

`\addcontentsline`
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcfixglossary`

```
\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
\addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
\mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



<pre>\printindex \addcontentsline \mtcaddchapter \mtcfixindex</pre>	<p>For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the <code>\printindex</code> command:</p> <pre>\addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{} \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{} \mtcaddchapter</pre>
---	---

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.

And proceed with extreme care, tracking in the `.log` file the insertion of `.mtc(N)` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.3 on page 85) and `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 90) files distributed with `minitoc`. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.

1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the `notoccite` package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run `BIBTEX` using the `unsorted` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The `notoccite` package prevents this. As `minitoc` prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `<document>.maf`. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the \LaTeX run. Under Unix or Linux, you can use something like:

```
cat document.maf | xargs -i -t \rm {}
```

The `listfiles` package option is now (version #48) the default (list created).

1.8 The hints option



This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with `minitoc`, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file. *Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following problems and potential problems are currently detected:

- `\part` • Alteration of some of the following commands¹⁶: `\part`, `\@part`, `\@spart`, `\chapter`, `\@chapter`, `\@schapter`, `\section`, `\@sect`, and `\@ssect`. Note that the `hyperref` (see section 2.17 on page 58) package alters these commands at `\begin{document}`, hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the `hyperref` must be loaded *before* `minitoc`.
 - `\@chapter` • Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: `amsbook` (class), `memoir` (class), `appendix`, `placeins` (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), `scrbook` (class), `scrreprt` (class), `scrartcl` (class), `tocbibind`, and `tocloft`.
 - `\@ssect` • Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are incompatible with the `minitoc` package: `amsart` (class), `amsproc` (class), `alphanum`, `jura` (class), `titlesec`, and `titletoc`¹⁷.
- `\parttoc` • Usage of `\parttoc` without calling `\doparttoc`, ... , usage of `\sectlot` without calling `\dosectlot`. Or the reverse.
- `\sectlot`
- `\dosectlot`

¹⁶The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of \LaTeX , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

¹⁷The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard \LaTeX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally incompatible, and it is very sad.

- Usage of `\parttoc` without calling `\[fake]tableofcontents`, ... , of `\sectlot` without calling `\[fake]listoftables`.
- `\tableofcontents`
`\listoftables` Usage of `\sectlof` and/or `\sectlot` without using the `insection` package option of `minitoc` (or the `placeins` package without its `section` option).
- `\sectlof`
`\sectlot` • If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the `shorttext` package option, see section 1.9 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the `hints` package option displays a warning.
- `abstract` • If the `abstract` package [228] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your `abstract` environment.
- `\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcaddsection`
- If the `sectsty` package [168] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `varsects` package [208] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `fncychap` package [159] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `quotchap` package [212] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `romannum` package [236] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `sfheaders` package [161] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `alnumsec` package [141] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `captcont` package [91] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If one of the `caption` [204], `caption2`¹⁸ [203], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [232] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [122] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the `hints` option gives a global warning (except if you used also the `nocheckfiles` option, see section 1.3.3 on page 27).
- `\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global hint as reminder.
- `\firstchapteris`
`\firstsectionis`
- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

¹⁸This package is obsolete; now use the `caption` package.

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$.V $\langle N \rangle$

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS



Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The .mtc $\langle N \rangle$ extensions will become .M $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. The extensions .mlf $\langle N \rangle$ and .mlt $\langle N \rangle$ become .F $\langle N \rangle$ and .T $\langle N \rangle$. The .ptc $\langle N \rangle$ extensions become .P $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute part number. The extensions .plf $\langle N \rangle$ and .plt $\langle N \rangle$ become .G $\langle N \rangle$ and .U $\langle N \rangle$. The .stc $\langle N \rangle$ extensions become .S $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute section number. The extensions .slf $\langle N \rangle$ and .slt $\langle N \rangle$ become .H $\langle N \rangle$ and .V $\langle N \rangle$. All these extensions are listed in table 1.11. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 48) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 55.

1.10 Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first L^AT_EX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third L^AT_EX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 54).

1.11 The `mtcoff` package

If a document has been prepared with the `minitoc` package, it contains many `minitoc` specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the `minitoc` package by the `mtcoff` package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the `.log` file. At least two \LaTeX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files from `minitoc` specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	53
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after the mini-table	53
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	54
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error	54
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	54
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	55
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	55
2.7	Supported document classes	55
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	55
2.9	Other mini-tables	56
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	56
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	57
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	57
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	58
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	58
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	58
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	58
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	58
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	59
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	59
2.20	Use with the appendix package	59
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	60
2.22	Use with the memoir class	61
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	62
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	62
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	62
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	65
2.27	Use with the abstract package	66
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	66
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	66
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands	67
2.31	Use with packages for captions	68
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	68

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	68
2.34	Initial font settings	68
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	70
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanum</code> package	70
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	70
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	71
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	71
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	71
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	71
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	71
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	72
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before and after <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	72
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	73

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	54
-----	---	----

Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	73
-----	---	----

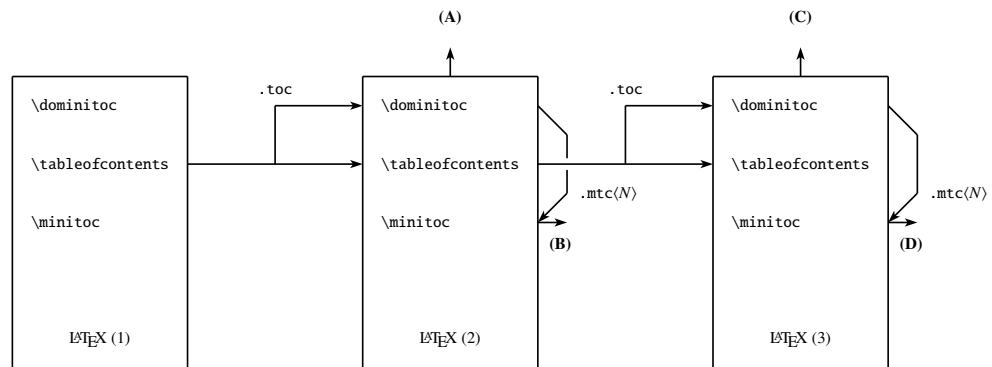
2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about `minitoc.sty`. If the version has a number less than 48, please upgrade to version #48. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 48), which is activated by default, and b) read the `<document>.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last ressort (please join a minimal but complete example reproducing the problem).

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after the mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 adds better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [145]. The `needspace` package [226] may also be useful.



- (A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.
 (B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.
 (C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.
 (D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.13 on page 40.

2.3 Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error

Use `\protect\linebreak`.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

If you reorder chapters, havoc follows. . . mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute \LaTeX at least three times (yes, it is time consuming. . .). See figure 2.1. Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute \LaTeX at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc\N`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

2.6 Playing with the chapter number



Do not cheat with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the `minitoc` package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index”, section 1.5.5 on page 46.

The same remark applies to the `part` and `section` counters.

2.7 Supported document classes

The `minitoc` package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article”. There are “parttocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter”, which have not the classical sectioning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectioning commands with other names are not supported¹. See also section 2.24 on page 62.

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make `minitoc` to work. They got a message like:

¹ This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectioning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The `minitoc` package relies on the names of the standard sectioning commands and on the syntax of these commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have `minilof`, `minilot` and `minibbl`. First, “`minibbl`” is another problem, strongly related to the `TeX`’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [7], `bibunits` [113], `multibib` [114], and `bibtopic` [13] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic `minilofs` and `minilots`. `Minibbls` are not the aim of this package².

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all `minitocs`, one for all `minilofs`, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 27) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the `TeX` run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and `siblings`) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 48.

² See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=multibib>

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the \LaTeX run. If you run \LaTeX via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 50 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a $\langle document \rangle$.mtc auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber script [19] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are parttocs, partlofs and partlots for the part level in book|report-like and article-like documents, secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots for the section level in article-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$

`\protect` The more recent version of $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,
`\contentsline` `.lof` and `.lot` files. The version #17 of minitoc attempts to be compatible with $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$
and $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$. This will be the *last* version usable with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$. Versions #18 and later are
 $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ specific, and no more compatible with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [180] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.13 on page 40.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc



Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [196], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who used the work of Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA. *Hence the `minitoc-hyper.sty` package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.* If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the \LaTeX run, then re- \LaTeX the document. There will be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from `minitoc` #30 to `minitoc` #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with `minitoc` #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* `minitoc`. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`.

2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the .aux, .toc, .lof, .lot files of the document, else the first L^AT_EX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

2.19 A local table of contents for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:
---	---

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 62.

2.20 Use with the appendix package

<code>appendices</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\adjustmtc</code> <code>\adjuststc</code>	If you use the appendix package [229] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with minitocs in the <code>appendices</code> environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening <code>\begin{appendices}</code> hides a <code>\addcontentsline</code> command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of minitocs or secttocs. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a <code>\adjustmtc</code> or <code>\adjuststc</code> command (depending if the appendices are at the chapter or section level) after <i>each</i> <code>\begin{appendices}</code> command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble <i>after</i> the loading of the <code>appendix</code> package:
--	---

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
```

```
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section.

A rather elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [227].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction³, which fortunately can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the minitoc section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the minitoc section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

³ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

```

\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}

```

To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the minitoc section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The `memoir` class [234, 235] offers basically the functionalities of the `appendix`, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. WILSON), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on page 59, 1.5.5 on page 46, and 2.21 on the page before respectively). If your version of the `memoir` class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the `memoir` class *could be no more compatible* with the `minitoc` package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the `memoir` is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the `memoir` class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsettitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package).

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the `memoir` class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the `memoir/tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```

\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax

```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

<code>\mtcsetfont</code> <code>\mtcsettitlefont</code>	Since version #41, the <code>\mtcsetfont</code> and <code>\mtcsettitlefont</code> commands are available. You do not need anymore to know <code>\mtcSSSfont</code> , <code>\ptifont</code> , etc.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	Since version #42, the <code>\mtcsettitle</code> command is available. You do not need anymore to know <code>\mtctitle</code> , <code>\slttitle</code> , etc.
<code>\mtcsetdepth</code>	Since version #43, the <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters <code>minitocdepth</code> , <code>sectlotdepth</code> , etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>	Unfortunately, the <code>amsart.cls</code> and <code>amsproc.cls</code> document classes are incompatible with <code>minitoc</code> . The <code>amsbook.cls</code> document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:
-----------------------------	---

```

\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added

```

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

<code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> <code>mtchideinmainlof</code> <code>mtchideinmainlot</code>	It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 59. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (<code>\minitoc</code>) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment:
---	---

```

\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}

```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```

1 (*mtc – apx)
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
4 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
5 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
6 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}
7 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
8 \begin{document}
9 \doparttoc
10 \dominitoc
11 \tableofcontents
12 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
13 \chapter{First}
14 \minitoc
15 First chapter
16 \section{First section}
17 \lipsum[1]
18 \section{Second section}
19 \lipsum[2]
20 \chapter{Second}
21 \minitoc
22 Second
23 \section{First section of second chapter}
24 \lipsum[3]
25 \section{Second section of second chapter}
26 \lipsum[4]
27 \appendix % begins the appendices
28 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
29 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
30 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
31 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the
32 % % appendices in the main TOC, but chapter-level
33 % % entries would be still visible if you use 0
34 % % in place of -1 as optional argument.
35 \chapter{First appendix}
36 \minitoc
37 First appendix
38 \section{First section}
39 \lipsum[5]
40 \section{Second section}
41 \lipsum[6]
42 \chapter{Second appendix}
43 \minitoc
44 Second appendix
45 \section{First section of second appendix}
46 \lipsum[7]
47 \section{Second section of second appendix}
48 \lipsum[8]
49 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding
50 \end{document}
51 \end{mtc – apx}

```

Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.



Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted to early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):

```

52 (*mtc - hi1)
53 \documentclass{report}
54 \usepackage%
55 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
56 \begin{document}
57 \dominilof
58 \dominilot
59 \listoffigures
60 \listoftables
61 \chapter{First}
62 \minilof
63 \minilot
64 \begin{figure}
65 \caption{AAAA1}
66 \end{figure}
67 \begin{figure}
68 \caption{AAAA2}
69 \end{figure}
70 \begin{table}
71 \caption{TAAAA1}
72 \end{table}
73 \begin{table}
74 \caption{TAAAA2}
75 \end{table}
76 \chapter{Second}
77 \minilof
78 \minilot
79 %%-----

```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```

80 \begin{mtchideinmainlof}
81 \begin{mtchideinmainlot}
82 \begin{figure}

```

```

83 \caption{BBBB1}
84 \end{figure}
85 \begin{figure}
86 \caption{BBBB2}
87 \end{figure}
88 \begin{table}
89 \caption{TBBBB1}
90 \end{table}
91 \begin{table}
92 \caption{TBBBB2}
93 \end{table}
94 \chapter{Third}

```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```

95 \end{mtchideinmainlot}
96 \end{mtchideinmainlof}
97 %%-----
98 \minilof
99 \minilot
100 \begin{figure}
101 \caption{CCCC1}
102 \end{figure}
103 \begin{figure}
104 \caption{CCCC2}
105 \end{figure}
106 \begin{table}
107 \caption{TCCCC1}
108 \end{table}
109 \begin{table}
110 \caption{TCCCC2}
111 \end{table}
112 \end{document}
113 \end{mtc - hi1}

```

But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):


```

114 (*mtc – hi2)
115 \documentclass{report}
116 \usepackage%
117 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
118 \begin{document}
119 \dominilof
120 \dominilot
121 \listoffigures
122 \listoftables
123 \chapter{First}
124 \minilof
125 \minilot
126 \begin{figure}
127 \caption{AAAA1}
128 \end{figure}
129 \begin{figure}
130 \caption{AAAA2}
131 \end{figure}
132 \begin{table}
133 \caption{TAAAA1}
134 \end{table}
135 \begin{table}
136 \caption{TAAAA2}
137 \end{table}
138 \chapter{Second}
139 \minilof
140 \minilot

```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.

```

141 \begin{figure}
142 \mtchideinmainlof
143 \caption{BBBB1}
144 \end{figure}
145 \begin{figure}
146 \caption{BBBB2}
147 \endmtchideinmainlof

```

```

148 \end{figure}
149 \begin{table}
150 \mtchideinmainlot
151 \caption{TBBBB1}
152 \end{table}

```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.

```

153 \begin{table}
154 \caption{TBBBB2}
155 \endmtchideinmainlot
156 \end{table}
157 \chapter{Third}
158 \minilof
159 \minilot
160 \begin{figure}
161 \caption{CCCC1}
162 \end{figure}
163 \begin{figure}
164 \caption{CCCC2}
165 \end{figure}
166 \begin{table}
167 \caption{TCCCC1}
168 \end{table}
169 \begin{table}
170 \caption{TCCCC2}
171 \end{table}
172 \end{document}
173 \end{mtc – hi2}

```

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own .mld file

`\mtcsettitle` First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via `\renewcommand` or better via `\mtcsettitle`. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing

.mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via `\mtcselectlanguage`. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the `<language>[.mld-.mlo]` pairs of language definition files.

2.27 Use with the abstract package

`abstract` If the `abstract` package [228] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a
`\mtcaddchapter` “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class
`\mtcaddsection` defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option
`\chapter` and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your
`abstract` environment.

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [168] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like `\l@part`, `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, etc.

The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the `report` and `book` classes) and lower levels, these commands are (`book` class, `book.cls`) by default:

```
\newcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
\newcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\newcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
```

which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of `\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes, the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends of the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 34), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section ... \l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a `@` in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [227] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 60.
- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 38) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 34), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is necessary to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages.
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectionning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence

```
\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]
```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [204], `caption2` [203]⁴, (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [232] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [122] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.32 Bad interaction `minitoc`/`hyperref`/`memoir`

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [196] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [234, 235], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

2.33 Use with the `varsects` package

If the `varsects` package [208] (by Daniel TAUPIN⁺) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the `parttoc`s as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁵:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the `minitoc` package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`, `partlof` or `partlot` to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like `\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the `parttoc`s, `partlofs`, and `partlots`. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.

⁴ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

⁵ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.



In the initialization of the `minitoc` package, we have a sequence of commands:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a `parttoc` (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the `parttocs`, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

Note that if you say:

```
\def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont}    % (subsections)
\def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont}   % (subsubsections)
\def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont}     % (paragraphs)
\def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont}    % (subparagraphs)
\def\plffont{\ptcfont}      % (figures)
\def\plfSfont{\ptcfont}     % (subfigures)
\def\pltfont{\ptcfont}      % (tables)
\def\pltSfont{\ptcfont}     % (subtables)
```

after loading the `minitoc` package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a `minitoc` font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectioning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
```

```
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [180], compatible with minitoc (`scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl`), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 46. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are incompatible with minitoc.

2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [35, 36], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%
\addto\captionslanguageI{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for `babel` and *language2* the language name for `minitoc`; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized `.mld` file, by example).

2.38 Use with the `fncychap` package

If the `fncychap` package [159] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.39 Use with the `quotchap` package

If the `quotchap` package [212] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.40 Use with the `romannum` package

If the `romannum` package [236] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.41 Use with the `sfheaders` package

If the `sfheaders` package [161] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [141] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [91] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.44 Vertical space (gap) before and after `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles



These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the `book` and `report` document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. These are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (*not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:

```
174 \*mtc-gap
175 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
176 \usepackage{vruler} % to have a vertical graduation to note positions
177 \usepackage{txfonts}
178 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
179 \begin{document}
180 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][] % with vruler package
181 \doparttoc
182 \faketableofcontents
183 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
184 \parttoc
185 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
186 \part{Second part}
```

We set large gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

```
187 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
188 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
189 \parttoc
190 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
191 \part{Third part}
```

We set small gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

```
192 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
193 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
```



```

194 \parttoc
195 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
196 \end{document}
197 </mtc – gap>

```

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the minitable. The values should depend of the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined by macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables	
3.1	Package options 74
3.2	General commands 75
3.3	Commands: part level 76
3.4	Commands: chapter level 77
3.5	Commands: section level 78
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules 79
3.7	Commands for page numbers 79
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features 80
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands 80
3.10	Adjustment commands 81
3.11	Obsolete commands 81

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into document.maf.
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the .log file. Useful to detect some problems.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 35. Default: english.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <i>language.mld</i> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a parttoc is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a partlof is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a partlot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following parttocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on partlofs and partlots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on partlofs and partlots.
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for parttoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for parttoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for partlof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for partlof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for partlot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for partlot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of parttocs. Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of partlofs. Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of partlots. Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for partXXX titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mltttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code> Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominilof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\minilof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument p , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument p has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by n .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by n .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by n .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for index in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main table of contents.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of tables.

Table 3.11: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	N is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first section.

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

4.1	The <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> document file	83
4.2	The <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> document file	84
4.3	The <code>mtc-add.tex</code> document file	85
4.4	The <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> document file	90
4.5	The <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> document file	96
4.6	The <code>mtc-art.tex</code> document file	96
4.7	The <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> document file	102
4.8	The <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> document file	108
4.9	The <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> document file	113
4.10	The <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> document file	114
4.11	The <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> document file	115
4.12	The <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> document file	116
4.13	The <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> document file	117
4.14	The <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> document file	118
4.15	The <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> document file	119
4.16	The <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> document file	120
4.17	The <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> document file	124
4.18	The <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> document file	125
4.19	The <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> document file	126
4.20	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	128
4.21	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	129
4.22	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	131
4.23	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	132
4.24	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	133
4.25	The <code>mtc-tsf.tex</code> document file	134

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 62, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 64, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 64, and `mtc-gap.tex` on page 72.

4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [171] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a minitoc is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

```
198 <*mtc - 2c>
199 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
200   {report}
201 \usepackage{multicol}
202 \usepackage{lipsum}
203 \usepackage%
204   [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc}
205 \usepackage[latin]{babel}
206 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
207 \begin{document}
208 \dominitoc
209 \tableofcontents
```

Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a minitoc on one full width column, then the body of the chapter on two columns:

```
210 \chapter{Primum capitulum}
211 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
212 \section{Prima sectio}
213 \lipsum[1-2]
214 \section{Secunda sectio}
215 \lipsum[3-4]
216 \end{multicols}
217 \chapter{Secundum capitulum}
218 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
219 \section{Prima sectio}
220 \lipsum[5-6]
```

```
221 \section{Secunda sectio}
222 \lipsum[7-8]
223 \section{Tertia sectio}
224 \lipsum[9-10]
225 \end{multicols}
```

A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the minitoc are in the first column:

```
226 \begin{multicols}{2}
227 \chapter{Tertium capitulum}
228 \minitoc
229 \section{Prima sectio}
230 \lipsum[11-12]
231 \section{Secunda sectio}
232 \lipsum[13-14]
233 \section{Tertia sectio}
234 \lipsum[15-16]
235 \end{multicols}
```

A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the minitoc and the chapter body on two columns (the minitoc is in the first column):

```
236 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum}
237 \begin{multicols}{2}
238 \minitoc
239 \section{Prima sectio}
240 \lipsum[16-17]
241 \section{Secunda sectio}
242 \lipsum[18-19]
243 \section{Tertia sectio}
244 \lipsum[20-21]
245 \end{multicols}
246 \end{document}
247 </mtc - 2c>
```

4.2 The `mtc-2nd.tex` document file

This document tests the `french2.mld` minitoc language definition file (section 13.60 on page 445) and its supporting code in the `minitoc` package. First, the preamble of the document uses the `french2` minitoc package language option¹:

```

248 \*mtc - 2nd
249 %% Test de french2.mld:
250 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
251 %% compilez 3 fois.
252 \documentclass{report}
253 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
254 \usepackage[french]{babel}
255 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
256 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
257 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
258 \usepackage{mypatches}
259 \begin{document}

```

We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (zero, one, three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

260 \ifmtcsecondpart
261 Il n'y a que 2 parties: seconde.
262 \else
263 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
264 \fi
265 \clearpage

```

The body of the document, with two parts:

```

266 \doparttoc
267 \faketableofcontents
268 \part{P1}
269 \parttoc
270 \chapter{P1C1}
271 \chapter{P1C2}
272 \part{P2}
273 \parttoc
274 \chapter{P2C1}
275 \chapter{P2C2}

```

If you want also a third part, comment out this line and recompile 3 times:

```

276 %% Commentez la ligne suivante puis recompilez 2 ou 3 fois.
277 \end{document}
278 \part{P3}
279 \parttoc

```

¹ The `franc`, `frnew` and `mypatches` packages are local additions, provided with the `minitoc` package.

Observe the titles of the parttocs when the document has two then three parts. Note the changes after each compilation. You can play by adding and removing parts. It would be interesting to add a starred part, with starred chapters, at the beginning of the document, this part and these chapters having their entries in the TOC. By example, try to add the following lines after `\faketableofcontents`:

and you will see how the parttoc of the new starred part is titled.

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the `tocbibind` package [230].

Load the minitoc package, or mtcoff.

```
297 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
298 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

```

299 \makeindex
300 \begin{document}

```

We call the mini-table preparation commands:

```

301 \dominitoc
302 \dominilof
303 \dominilot

```

We are using the `tocbibind` package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 46:

```

304 \tableofcontents
305 \mtcaddchapter
306 \listoffigures
307 \mtcaddchapter
308 \listoftables
309 \mtcaddchapter

```

For a chapter, we want a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

310 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
311 \minitoc
312 \mtcskip
313 \minilof
314 \mtcskip
315 \minilot

```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

316 \section{First section}
317
318 \begin{figure}[tp]
319 \caption{First figure}
320 \end{figure}
321 \begin{table}[tp]
322 \caption{First table}
323 \end{table}
324
325 \section{Second section}
326 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\!
327 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
328 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
329 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
330 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
331 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
332 \index{would}\index{yes}%
333 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
334 But I imagine that he would, yes.\!
335 \hbox{}\hfill
336 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%

```

```

337 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
338
339 \begin{figure}[tp]
340 \caption{Second figure}
341 \end{figure}
342 \begin{table}
343 \caption{Second table}
344 \end{table}

```

A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

345 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
346 \index{chapter!starred}
347 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
348 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
349 %%\mtcaddchapter[~] % produce a (strange) correct result. OK
350 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
351 %%%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
352 %%\mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
353 %%\mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
354 %%%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
355 \index{tests}
356
357 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
358 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
359 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
360 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
361 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
362 and at this chapter.
363 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
364 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
365 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
366 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
367 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
368 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
369 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
370 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
371 \index{variations}\index{you}%
372 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
373
374 \chapter{Third chapter}
375 \index{chapter!normal}
376 \minitoc
377 \mtcskip
378 \minilof
379 \mtcskip
380 \minilot
381 \section{Third section}
382
383 \begin{figure}

```

```

384 \caption{Third figure}
385 \end{figure}
386 \begin{table}
387 \caption{Third table}
388 \end{table}
389
390 \section{Fourth section}
391
392 \begin{figure}
393 \caption{Fourth figure}
394 \end{figure}
395 \begin{table}
396 \caption{Fourth table}
397 \end{table}

```

As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

```

398 \nocite*
399 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
400 \bibliographystyle{plain}
401 \bibliography{mtc-add}
402 \adjustmtc

```

As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

```

403 \printindex
404 %%\mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
405 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
406 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
407 \mtcaddchapter
408 %%
409
410 \appendix
411 \chapter{App.~1}
412 \index{chapter!appendix}
413 \minitoc
414 \mtcskip
415 \minilof
416 \mtcskip
417 \minilot
418 \section{Fifth section}
419
420 \begin{figure}
421 \caption{Fifth figure}
422 \end{figure}
423 \begin{table}
424 \caption{Fifth table}
425 \end{table}
426

```



```

427 \section{Sixth section}
428
429 \begin{figure}
430 \caption{Sixth figure}
431 \end{figure}
432 \begin{table}
433 \caption{Sixth table}
434 \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

435 \chapter{App.~2}
436 \index{chapter!appendix}
437 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
438 \minitoc
439 \mtcskip
440 \minilof
441 \mtcskip
442 \minilot
443 \section{Seventh section}
444 \begin{figure}
445 \caption{Seventh figure}
446 \end{figure}
447 \begin{figure}
448 \caption{Eighth figure}
449 \end{figure}
450
451 \section{Eighth section}
452
453 \begin{figure}
454 \caption{Ninth figure}
455 \end{figure}
456 \begin{figure}
457 \caption{Eleventh figure}
458 \end{figure}
459
460 \end{document}
461 </mtc – add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [101]:

```

462 <*mtc – addbib>
463 @MISC{minitoc,
464       TITLE="The {\texttt{minitoc}} package",
465       AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
466       ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
467       NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
468       MONTH=aug,
469       YEAR=2006}
470

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [100]:

```

471 @MISC{fminitoc,
472     TITLE="Le paquetage {\texttt{minitoc}}",
473     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
474     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
475     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
476     MONTH=aug,
477     YEAR=2006}
478

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [99]:

```

479 @MISC{shorttoc,
480     TITLE="The {\texttt{shorttoc}} package",
481     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
482     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
483     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx}}",
484     MONTH=aug,
485     YEAR=2002}

```

- a novel [12] from which a short citation is taken:

```

486 @BOOK{dark,
487     TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
488     AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
489     PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
490     ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
491     YEAR=1993}
492 </mtc – addbib>

```

But the database created this way must be trimmed of some spurious lines; on Unix-like systems, do²:

```
cat mtc-add.bib | grep -v '^%' > addbib;mv addbib mtc-add.bib
```

4.4 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the `article` class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the `tocbibind` package [230] for the first ones and the `minitoc` `insection` package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

493 <*mtc – ads>
494 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
495 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
496 \makeatletter

```

² Note that we use no preamble for this file in `minitoc.ins`; nevertheless, some lines of percent characters were still generated. This problem is corrected now, but we keep the solution.

```

497 \newif\ifscan@allowed
498 \scan@allowedtrue
499 \makeatother
500 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
501 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
502         \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
503 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection,listfiles]{minitoc}
504 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
505 \makeindex

```

The preparation commands:

```

506 \begin{document}
507 \doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot
508 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot

```

The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the `tocbibind` package, we must add some `\mtcaddsection` commands:

```

509 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
510 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
511 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
512 \tableofcontents
513 \mtcaddsection
514 \listoffigures
515 \mtcaddsection
516 \listoftables
517 \mtcaddsection

```

The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.

```

518 \part{Part~1}
519 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
520
521 \section{First section}
522 \index{section!normal}
523 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
524 \subsection{First subsection}
525
526 \begin{figure}[tp]
527 \caption{First figure}
528 \end{figure}
529 \begin{table}[tp]
530 \caption{First table}
531 \end{table}
532
533 \subsection{Second subsection}
534 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
535 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
536 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
537 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%

```

```

538 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
539 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
540 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
541 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
542 But I imagine that he would, yes.\\
543 \hbox{}\hfill
544 Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
545 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}%
546 \index{background}
547 \begin{figure}[tp]
548 \caption{Second figure}
549 \end{figure}
550 \begin{table}
551 \caption{Second table}
552 \end{table}

```

Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several solutions (good or bad).

```

553 \section*{Second section, starred}
554 \index{section!starred}
555 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
556 \mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
557 %%\mtcaddsection[] % BAD
558 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produce a (strange) correct result.
559 %%\mtcaddsection % BAD
560 %%%%%%%%%%%
561 \index{tests}
562
563 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
564 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
565 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
566 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
567 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
568 and at this section.
569 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
570 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
571 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
572 \index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
573 \index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
574 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
575 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
576 \index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
577 \index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
578 \index{variations}\index{you}%
579 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
580
581 \section{Third section}
582 \index{section!normal}
583 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
584 \subsection{Third subsection}
585
586 \begin{figure}

```

```

587 \caption{Third figure}
588 \end{figure}
589 \begin{table}
590 \caption{Third table}
591 \end{table}
592
593 \subsection{Fourth subsection}
594
595 \begin{figure}
596 \caption{Fourth figure}
597 \end{figure}
598 \begin{table}
599 \caption{Fourth table}
600 \end{table}
601
602 \subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
603 \subsubsection{And yet another one}
604
605 \part{Part~2}
606 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
607
608 \section{Fourth section}
609 \index{section!normal}
610 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
611 \subsection{Fifth subsection}
612
613 \begin{figure}[tp]
614 \caption{Fifth figure}
615 \end{figure}
616 \begin{table}[tp]
617 \caption{Fifth table}
618 \end{table}
619
620 \subsection{Sixth subsection}
621 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\!
622 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
623 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
624 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
625 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
626 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
627 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
628 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
629 But I imagine that he would, yes.\!
630 \hbox{}\hfill
631 Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
632 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}%
633 \index{dark}\index{background}
634
635 \begin{figure}[tp]
636 \caption{Sixth figure}
637 \end{figure}
638 \begin{table}
639 \caption{Sixth table}
640 \end{table}

```

```

641
642 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
643 \index{section!starred}
644 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
645 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
646 %%\mtcaddsection[] % OK
647 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produce a (strange) correct result.
648 %%\mtcaddsection % OK
649 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
650 \index{tests}
651
652 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
653 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
654 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
655 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
656 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
657 and at this section.\index{a}%
658 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
659 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
660 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
661 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
662 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
663 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
664 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
665 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
666 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
667 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
668 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
669
670 \section{Sixth section}
671 \index{section!normal}
672 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
673 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
674
675 \begin{figure}
676 \caption{Seventh figure}
677 \end{figure}
678 \begin{table}
679 \caption{Seventh table}
680 \end{table}
681
682 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
683
684 \begin{figure}
685 \caption{Eighth figure}
686 \end{figure}
687 \begin{table}
688 \caption{Eighth table}
689 \end{table}

```

The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [230] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

690 \nocite*
691 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
692 \bibliographystyle{plain}
693 \bibliography{mtc-add}
694 \adjuststc

```

The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [230] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```

695 \printindex
696 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 2 following lines
697 %%\addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
698 %%\addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
699 %%\mtcaddsection
700
701 \appendix
702 \section{App.~1}
703 \index{section!appendix}
704 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
705 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
706
707 \begin{figure}
708 \caption{Ninth figure}
709 \end{figure}
710 \begin{table}
711 \caption{Ninth table}
712 \end{table}
713
714 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
715
716 \begin{figure}
717 \caption{Tenth figure}
718 \end{figure}
719 \begin{table}
720 \caption{Tenth table}
721 \end{table}
722
723 \section{App.~2}
724 \index{section!appendix}
725 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
726 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
727 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
728
729 \begin{figure}
730 \caption{Eleventh figure}
731 \end{figure}
732 \begin{figure}
733 \caption{Twelfth figure}
734 \end{figure}
735
736 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
737
738 \begin{figure}

```

```

739 \caption{Thirteenth figure}
740 \end{figure}
741 \begin{figure}
742 \caption{Fourteenth figure}
743 \end{figure}
744
745 \end{document}
746 </mtc – ads>

```

4.5 The mtc-amm.tex document file

This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

```

747 (*mtc – amm)
748 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
749 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
750 \usepackage%
751   [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
752 \begin{document}
753 \dominitoc
754 \tableofcontents
755 \adjustmtc
756 \chapter{First chapter}
757 \minitoc
758 \lipsum[1]
759 \section{First section}
760 \lipsum[2]

```

The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can

add an entry in the TOC with `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

```

761 \begin{appendices}
762 \addappheadtotoc
763 \chapter{Afterthought}
764 \minitoc
765 \lipsum[3]
766 Afterthought appendix
767 \section{Further remarks}
768 \lipsum[4]
769 \end{appendices}
770 \chapter{Conclusion}
771 \minitoc
772 \section{Bye}
773 \lipsum[5]
774 \end{document}
775 </mtc – amm>

```

4.6 The mtc-art.tex document file

This is a basic document using the `minitoc` package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it must use an `article`-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

776 (*mtc – art)
777 %%% A example file (may differ from previous versions)
778 %% mtc-art.tex
779 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #47

```



```

780%% style option file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
781%% article (\section must be defined)
782\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
783\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
784%%\usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
785\usepackage[tight,insection,listfiles]{minitoc}
786\setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
787\setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
788\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
789%% % font for secttocs, default
790\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
791%% % font for secttocs, subsections
792%%\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sfont}%
793%% you can make experiments with \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
794%% but it is ‘fontomania’...
795\raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent of the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

796%% TEST: uncomment the 3 next lines to test
797%% resetting section number in each part
798%%\makeatletter
799%%\addtoreset{section}{part}
800%%\makeatother
801%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

802\begin{document}

```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

803\dosecttoc
804\dosectlof[c] % center title of sectlof's
805\dosectlot
806\doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
807\dopartlof % added in version #15
808\dopartlot % added in version #15

```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

809\faketableofcontents % or \faketableofcontents
810\fakeistoffigures % to check compatibility
811\fakeistoftables % to check compatibility

```

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:

```
812 \part{First Part}
813 \parttoc
814 \partlof[r]
815 \partlot
```

A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).

```
816 \twocolumn\sloppy           % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
817                             % but works. Ideas to make it better?
818 \section{AAAAA}             % a section with a lot of sections
819 \secttoc[r]                 % secttoc title on the right
820 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
821 \lipsum[1]
822 \subsection{S1}
823 \lipsum[2]
824 \subsection{S2}
825 \lipsum[3]
826 \subsection{S3}
827 \lipsum[4]
828 \subsection*{S4}
829 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}
830 \lipsum[5]
831 \subsection{S5}
832 \lipsum[6]
833 \subsection{S6}
834 \lipsum[7]
835 \subsection{S7}
836 \lipsum[8]
837 \subsection{S8}
838 \lipsum[9]
839 \subsection{S9}
840 \lipsum[10]
841 \subsection{S10}
842 \lipsum[11]
843 \subsection{S11}
844 \lipsum[12]
845 \subsection{S12}
846 \lipsum[13]
847 \subsection{S13}
848 \lipsum[14]
849 \subsection{S14}
850 \lipsum[15]
851 \subsection{S15}
852 \lipsum[16]
853 \subsection{S16}
854 \lipsum[17]
855 \subsection{S17}
856 \lipsum[18]
857 \subsection{S18}
```

```

858 \lipsum[19]
859 \subsection{S19}
860 \lipsum[20]
861 \subsection{S20}
862 \lipsum[21]
863 \subsection{S21}
864 \lipsum[22]
865 \subsection{S22}
866 \lipsum[23]
867 \subsection{S23}
868 \lipsum[24]
869 \subsection{S24}
870 \lipsum[25]
871 \subsection{S25}
872 \lipsum[26]
873 \subsection{S26}
874 \lipsum[27]
875 \subsection{S27}
876 \lipsum[28]
877 \subsection{S28}
878 \lipsum[29]
879 \subsection{S29}
880 \lipsum[30]
881 \subsection{S30}
882 \lipsum[31]

```

We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are subsections and figures). The insection package option should ensure that floating objects (like figures) do not drift outside their section.

```

883 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
884 \section{BBBBB}
885 \secttoc
886 \mtcskip                   % put some skip here
887 \sectlof                   % a sectlof
888 \lipsum[32]
889 \subsection{T1}
890 \lipsum[33]
891 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
892 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
893 \begin{picture}(100,50)
894 \end{picture}
895 \caption{F1}               % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
896 \end{figure}
897 \FloatBarrier
898 \subsubsection[t1]{T1} % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
899 \lipsum[34]
900 \paragraph{TTT1}
901 \lipsum[35]
902 \subparagraph{TTTT1}
903 \lipsum[36]
904 \begin{figure}[t]
905 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}

```

```

906 \begin{picture}(100,50)
907 \end{picture}
908 \caption[f2]{F2}           % tests optional arg. of a caption
909 \end{figure}
910 \FloatBarrier
911 \subsection{T2}
912 \lipsum[37]
913 \section*{CCCCC}           % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
914 %%\addstarredsection{CCCCC}
915 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
916 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
917 \lipsum[38]
918 \subsection{U1}
919 \lipsum[39]
920 \subsubsection{UU1}
921 \lipsum[40]
922 \paragraph{UUU1}
923 \lipsum[41]
924 \subparagraph{UUUU1}
925 \lipsum[42]
926 \subsection{U2}
927 \lipsum[43]
928 \part{Second Part}
929 \parttoc
930 \partlof[c]
931 \partlot
932 %%                          % the following section should have no secttoc,
933 \section{DDDDD}             % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
934 %%\secttoc
935 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
936 %                          % the secttoc appears
937 \lipsum[44]
938 \subsection{V1}
939 \lipsum[45]
940 \subsubsection{VV1}
941 \lipsum[46]
942 \paragraph{VVV1}
943 \lipsum[47]
944 \subparagraph{VVVV1}
945 \lipsum[48]
946 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
947 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
948 \begin{picture}(100,50)
949 \end{picture}
950 \caption{F3}               % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
951 \end{figure}
952 \FloatBarrier
953 \lipsum[49]
954 \subsection{V2}
955 \lipsum[50]

```

We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

956 \section{EEEEEE}           % this section should have a secttoc
957 {%                         % left brace, see below
958 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
959                             % try with different values.
960 \secttoc
961 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
962 }                           % right brace
963 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
964 %% on secttocdepth.
965 \lipsum[51]
966 \subsection{W1}             % with the given depth
967 \lipsum[52]
968 \subsubsection{WW1}
969 \lipsum[53]
970 \paragraph{WWW1}
971 \lipsum[54]
972 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
973 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
974 \begin{picture}(100,50)
975 \end{picture}
976 \caption{F4}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
977 \end{figure}
978 \FloatBarrier
979 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
980 \subparagraph{WWW1}
981 \lipsum[55]
982 \subsection{W2}
983 \lipsum[56]
984 \chapter*{}
985 \part{Appendices}
986 \parttoc
987 \mtcskip
988 \partlof
989 \mtcskip
990 \partlot
991 \FloatBarrier
992 \appendix
993 \section{Comments}
994 \lipsum[57]
995 \secttoc
996 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
997 \subsection{C1}
998 \lipsum[58]
999 \subsection{C2}
1000 \lipsum[59]
1001 \subsection{C3}
1002 \lipsum[60]
1003 \begin{figure}[hb]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1004 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1005 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1006 \end{picture}
1007 \caption{F5}                % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1008 \end{figure}
1009 \FloatBarrier

```

```

1010 \subsection{C4}
1011 \lipsum[61]
1012 \FloatBarrier
1013 \section{Evolution}
1014 \secttoc
1015 \sectlof % empty
1016 \sectlot % empty
1017 \lipsum[62]
1018 \subsection{D1}
1019 \lipsum[63]
1020 \subsection{D2}
1021 \lipsum[64]
1022 \subsection{D3}
1023 \lipsum[65]
1024 \subsection{D4}
1025 \lipsum[66]
1026 \end{document}
1027 </mtc - art>

```

4.7 The mtc-bk.tex document file

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

1028 (*mtc - bk)
1029 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
1030 %% mtc-bk.tex
1031 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #48
1032 %% package file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
1033 %% book/report (\chapter must be defined).
1034 %% You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc
1035 %% commands and parameters.
1036 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
1037 %%\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
1038 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
1039 %%\usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
1040 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
1041 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
1042 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
1043 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
1044 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
1045 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
1046 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
1047 %%\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
1048 %% you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
1049 %% but it is "fontomania"...
1050 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent of the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```
1051%% TEST: uncomment the 3 next lines to test
1052%% resetting chapter number in each part
1053%%\makeatletter
1054%%\@addtoreset{chapter}{part}
1055%%\makeatother
1056%% END TEST
```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
1057\begin{document}
1058\mtcpagenumbers
1059\noptcrule
1060%% \nomtcrule                % suppresses minitoc rules
1061%% \nomtcpagenumbers          % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1062%% \nomlfpagenumbers          % ----- minilof ----
1063%% \nomltpagenumbers          % ----- minilot ----
```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```
1064\dominitoc
1065\dominilof[c]                % centers title of minilof's
1066\dominilot
1067\doparttoc                    % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
1068\dopartlof                    % added in version #15
1069\dopartlot                    % added in version #15
```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```
1070\tableofcontents            % or \faketableofcontents
1071\listoffigures               % or \fakelistoffigures
1072\fakelistoftables            % or \listoftables
```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```
1073%%\addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0
```

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:

```
1074\part{First Part}
1075\parttoc
1076\partlof[r]
1077\partlot[r]
```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```

1078 \twocolumn\sloppy           % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1079 \chapter{AAAAA}             % a chapter with a lot of sections
1080 \minitoc[r]                  % minitoc title on the right
1081 \lipsum[1]
1082 \section{S1}
1083 \lipsum[2]
1084 \section{S2}
1085 \lipsum[3]
1086 \section{S3}
1087 \lipsum[4]

```

A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:

```

1088 \section*{S4}
1089 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
1090 \lipsum[5]
1091 \section{S5}
1092 \lipsum[6]
1093 \section{S6}
1094 \lipsum[6]
1095 \section{S7}
1096 \lipsum[7]
1097 \section{S8}
1098 \lipsum[9]
1099 \section{S9}
1100 \lipsum[10]
1101 \section{S10}
1102 \lipsum[11]
1103 \section{S11}
1104 \lipsum[12]
1105 \section{S12}
1106 \lipsum[13]
1107 \section{S13}
1108 \lipsum[14]
1109 \section{S14}
1110 \lipsum[15]
1111 \section{S15}
1112 \lipsum[16]
1113 \section{S16}
1114 \lipsum[17]
1115 \section{S17}
1116 \lipsum[18]
1117 \section{S18}
1118 \lipsum[19]
1119 \section{S19}
1120 \lipsum[20]
1121 \section{S20}
1122 \lipsum[21]
1123 \section{S21}
1124 \lipsum[22]
1125 \section{S22}

```



```

1126 \lipsum[23]
1127 \section{S23}
1128 \lipsum[24]
1129 \section{S24}
1130 \lipsum[25]
1131 \section{S25}
1132 \lipsum[26]
1133 \section{S26}
1134 \lipsum[27]
1135 \section{S27}
1136 \lipsum[28]
1137 \section{S28}
1138 \lipsum[29]
1139 \section{S29}
1140 \lipsum[30]
1141 \section{S30}
1142 \lipsum[31]
1143 \subsection{SS1}
1144 \lipsum[32]
1145 \section{S31}
1146 \lipsum[33]

```

We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

1147 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
1148 \chapter{BBBBB}
1149 \minitoc
1150 \mtcskip                    % put some skip here
1151 \minilof                    % a minilof
1152 \mtcskip                    % put some skip here
1153 \minilot                    % a minilot
1154 \lipsum[34]
1155 \section{T1}
1156 \lipsum[35]
1157 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1158 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1159 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1160 \end{picture}
1161 \caption{F1}                % (tables are similar)
1162 \end{figure}
1163 \begin{table}[b]            % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1164 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1165 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1166 \end{picture}
1167 \caption{T1}                % (tables are similar)
1168 \end{table}
1169 \clearpage
1170 \subsection[t]{TT1}         % tests optional arg. of a sectioning command
1171 \lipsum[36]
1172 \subsubsection{TTT1}
1173 \lipsum[37]
1174 \paragraph{TTT1}
1175 \lipsum[38]

```

```

1176 \begin{figure}
1177 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1178 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1179 \end{picture}
1180 \caption[f2]{F2}          % tests optional arg. of a caption
1181 \end{figure}
1182 \section{T2}
1183 \lipsum[39]

```

A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning commands must also be starred.

```

1184 \chapter*{CCCCC}        % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
1185 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
1186 \lipsum[40]
1187 \section*{U1}
1188 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1189 \lipsum[41]
1190 \subsection*{UU1}
1191 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
1192 \lipsum[42]
1193 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
1194 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1195 \lipsum[43]
1196 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1197 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1198 \lipsum[44]
1199 \section*{U2}
1200 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1201 \lipsum[45]
1202 \part{Second Part}
1203 \parttoc
1204 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1205 %%                      % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1206 \chapter{DDDDD}          % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1207 %%\minitoc               % the minitoc appears
1208 \lipsum[46]
1209 \section{V1}
1210 \lipsum[47]
1211 \subsection{VV1}
1212 \lipsum[48]
1213 \subsubsection{VVV1}
1214 \lipsum[48]
1215 \paragraph{VVVV1}
1216 \lipsum[49]
1217 \begin{figure}[t]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1218 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1219 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1220 \end{picture}
1221 \caption{F3}             % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)

```

```

1222 \end{figure}
1223 \lipsum[50]
1224 \section{V2}
1225 \lipsum[51]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1226 \chapter{EEEE}           % this chapter should have a minitoc
1227 {%                       % left brace, see below
1228 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} % depth of mini table of contents;
1229                             % try with different values.
1230 \minitoc
1231 }                         % right brace
1232 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1233 %% on minitocdepth.
1234 \lipsum[52]
1235 \section{W1}              % with the given depth
1236 \lipsum[53]
1237 \subsection{WW1}
1238 \lipsum[54]
1239 \subsubsection{WWW1}
1240 \lipsum[55]
1241 \begin{figure}[t]         % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1242 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1243 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1244 \end{picture}
1245 \caption{F4}              % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1246 \end{figure}
1247 \lipsum[56]
1248 \paragraph{WWW1}
1249 \lipsum[57]
1250 \subparagraph{WWWWW1}
1251 \lipsum[58]
1252 \section{W2}
1253 \lipsum[59]

```

Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, and to hide these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its parttoc:

```

1254 \appendix
1255 \part{Appendices}
1256 \parttoc

```

Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional argument:

```

1257 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1258 \chapter{Comments}
1259 \minitoc
1260 \section{C1}
1261 \lipsum[60]

```

```

1262 \section{C2}
1263 \lipsum[61]
1264 \section{C3}
1265 \lipsum[62]
1266 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1267 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1268 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1269 \end{picture}
1270 \caption{F5}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1271 \end{figure}
1272 \section{C4}
1273 \chapter{Evolution}
1274 \minitoc
1275 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1276 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1277 \section{D1}
1278 \lipsum[62]
1279 \section{D2}
1280 \lipsum[63]
1281 \section{D3}
1282 \lipsum[64]
1283 \section{D4}

```

We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1284 %% this line closes the omitted part
1285 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1286 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
1287 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1288 \lipsum[65]
1289 \end{document}
1290 </mtc - bk>

```

4.8 The `mtc-bo.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the `tocloft` package [227]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a `minitoc` and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads some useful packages for the french language, the `geometry` package [215], which defines the global page layout, the `multicol` package [171], the `color` package [87], because we want a colored background for the `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package [227], to change some parameters of the `minitoc`, and, at least, the `minitoc` package.

```

1291 <*mtc - bo>
1292 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1293 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in, paperheight=11in,%
1294             lmargin=1.25in, rmargin=1.25in, tmargin=1in, bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1295 \usepackage[francais]{babel}

```

```

1296 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1297 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1298 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
1299 \usepackage{mypatches}
1300 \usepackage{multicol}
1301 \usepackage{color}

```

We use the `tocloft` package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the minitoc:

```

1302 \usepackage{tocloft}
1303 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
1304 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
1305 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
1306 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1307 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1308 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1309 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands from `tocloft`:

```

1310 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1311 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

We load the `minitoc` package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the minitoc title. The `hyperref` package [197] can also be loaded (*after minitoc*).

```

1312 \usepackage[francais,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
1313 \usepackage{hyperref}
1314 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1315 \nomtcrule % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1316 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1317 % (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1318 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```

1319 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1320 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT RENCONTRE AU LIEU DE CHAPITRE
1321 % Sans saut de ligne
1322 % (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ)
1323 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
1324 \makeatletter
1325 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1326   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1327   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1328     \interlinepenalty\M
1329     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1330       \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1331       \fi

```

```

1332 \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1333 \vskip 10\p@
1334 }}
1335 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1336 \vspace*{10\p@}%
1337 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1338 \interlinepenalty\@M
1339 \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1340 \vskip 10\p@
1341 }} \makeatother

```

We define an environment (`pageUn`) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a `multicols` environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```

1342 %%%%%%%%%%%
1343 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES
1344 %%%%%%%%%%%
1345 % param1: date de la rencontre
1346 % param2: nombre de périodes
1347 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1348 % param4: messages
1349 % param5: lecture
1350 % param6: exercices
1351 %%%%%%%%%%%
1352 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1353 \parindent = 0.0in
1354 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1355 \begin{multicols}{2}
1356 {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1357 \textit{(#2)}}
1358 \vfill\columnbreak
1359 \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1360 #1
1361 \end{multicols}
1362 \vspace{-18pt}
1363 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1364
1365 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt}
1366 \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1367 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1368
1369 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1370 \colorbox{cmyk}{.1,0,0,0}{%
1371 \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1372 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1373 \minitoc%
1374 }}
1375 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1376
1377 \mtcskip
1378

```

```

1379 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1380
1381 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1382 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1383
1384 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1385
1386 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1387 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1388
1389 %: LECTURE
1390 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1391
1392 % EXERCICES
1393 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1394
1395 %\newpage
1396 \end{multicols}%
1397 }
1398 %{\newpage}
1399 {\hrule}
1400
1401 %\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1402
1403 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1404 %\parindent = 0.0in
1405 \parskip = 0.1in
1406
1407 %%%%%%%%%%%
1408 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS
1409 %%%%%%%%%%%
1410 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1411 %\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1412

```

The body of the document:

```

1413 %%%%%%%%%%%
1414 %: BEGIN
1415 %%%%%%%%%%%
1416 \begin{document}
1417 \dominitoc
1418 \faketableofcontents
1419 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1420 %\minitoc
1421 \begin{pageUn}
1422     {%1    Date du cours
1423           lundi 25 août
1424           }
1425     {%2    Durée du cours
1426           2 périodes
1427           }
1428     {%3    Liste des documents à distribuer

```

```

1429          \item Plan de cours
1430          \item Fiche d'identification
1431          \item Grille horaire
1432          \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1433      }
1434      {%4      Ne pas oublier
1435          \item Acheter le livre de référence
1436          \item Apporter une disquette
1437      }
1438      {%5      Lecture
1439          Lire les pages ppp à ppp et ppp à ppp
1440      }
1441      {%6      Exercice
1442          Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1443      }
1444 \end{pageUn}
1445
1446 %%%%%%%%%%%
1447 \section{Titre de la section}
1448 %%%%%%%%%%%
1449
1450 Texte dans la section
1451
1452 %%
1453 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1454 %%
1455 Bla bla bla
1456
1457 %%
1458 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1459 %%
1460 Bla bla bla
1461
1462
1463 %%%%%%%%%%%
1464 \section{Titre d'une autre section}
1465 %%%%%%%%%%%
1466
1467 Texte dans la section
1468
1469 %%
1470 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1471 %%
1472 Bla bla bla
1473
1474 %%
1475 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1476 %%
1477 Bla bla bla
1478
1479
1480 %%%%%%%%%%%
1481 \section{Encore une autre section}
1482 %%%%%%%%%%%

```



```

1483
1484 Texte dans la section
1485
1486 \end{document}
1487 </mtc – bo>

```

4.9 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

```

1488 (*mtc – ch0)
1489 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1490 \usepackage[tight,english,listfiles]{minitoc}
1491 \begin{document}
1492 \dominitoc
1493 \tableofcontents

```

The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:

```

1494 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1495 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1496 \minitoc
1497 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1498 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1499 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0 release, we want to organize
1500 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1501
1502 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1503 Mozilla Party Webtool 2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1504 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool 1.0,
1505 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1506 organize a celebration in any of 243 countries, principalities,
1507 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1508 things by halves around here.
1509
1510 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1511 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1512 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0 release, we want to organize
1513 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1514
1515 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1516 Mozilla Party Webtool 2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1517 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool 1.0,
1518 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1519 organize a celebration in any of 243 countries, principalities,
1520 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1521 things by halves around here.

```

The second chapter is normal:

```

1522 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1523 \minitoc
1524 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1525 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1526 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0 release, we want to organize
1527 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1528
1529 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1530 Mozilla Party Webtool 2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1531 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool 1.0,
1532 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1533 organize a celebration in any of 243 countries, principalities,
1534 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1535 things by halves around here.
1536 \end{document}
1537 </mtc - ch0>

```

4.10 The mtc-cri.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file.

```

1538 (*mtc - cri)
1539 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
1540 {report}
1541 \usepackage[français]{babel}
1542 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1543 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1544 \usepackage%
1545 [french2,tight,listfiles]%
1546 {minitoc}
1547
1548 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}
1549
1550 \begin{document}
1551 \doparttoc
1552 \dominitoc
1553 \tableofcontents
1554 \part*{Présentation générale}
1555 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale]
1556 \adjustptc[-2]
1557 \parttoc

```

```

1558
1559 Texte de la
1560 présentation générale\ldots
1561
1562 \chapter*{Les auteurs}
1563 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs]
1564 Présentation des auteurs\ldots
1565
1566 \chapter*{Les lecteurs}
1567 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs]
1568 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots
1569
1570 \part{Première partie}
1571 \parttoc
1572 \chapter*{Introduction}
1573 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
1574 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
1575 \minitoc
1576 \section{Première section~A}
1577 \section{Deuxième section~A}
1578 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
1579 \minitoc
1580 \section{Première section~B}
1581 \section{Deuxième section~B}
1582
1583 \part{Deuxième partie}
1584 \parttoc
1585 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
1586 \minitoc

```

<pre> 1587 \section{Première section~C} 1588 \section{Deuxième section~C} 1589 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre} 1590 \minitoc </pre>	<pre> 1591 \section{Première section~D} 1592 \section{Deuxième section~D} 1593 \end{document} 1594 </mtc - cri> </pre>
---	--

4.11 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

```

1595 <*mtc - fo1>
1596 \documentclass{report}
1597 \usepackage{lipsum}
1598 \usepackage{txfonts}
1599 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
1600 \begin{document}
1601 \doparttoc
1602 \dominitoc
1603 \tableofcontents
1604 \part{Introduction}
1605 \clearpage

```

A first copy, with default fonts:

```

1606 \parttoc

```

A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

```

1607 \clearpage
1608 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1609 \parttoc

```

A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

```

1610 \clearpage
1611 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1612 \parttoc

```

A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

```

1613 \clearpage
1614 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1615 \parttoc
1616 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1617 \minitoc
1618 \lipsum[1]

```

```

1619 \section{First section}
1620 \lipsum[2]
1621 \subsection{Alpha}
1622 \lipsum[3]
1623 \subsection{Beta}
1624 \lipsum[4]
1625 \section{Second section}
1626 \lipsum[5]
1627 \subsection{Gamma}
1628 \lipsum[6]
1629 \subsection{Delta}
1630 \lipsum[7]
1631 \end{document}
1632 </mtc – fo1>

```

4.12 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of mtc-fo1.tex (see section 4.11 on the preceding page).

```

1633 < *mtc – fo2>
1634 \documentclass{report}
1635 \usepackage{lipsum}
1636 \usepackage{txfonts}
1637 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}

```

We declare the fonts with the old method:

```

1638 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
1639 \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
1640 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
1641 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
1642 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
1643 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
1644 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
1645 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
1646 \begin{document}
1647 \doparttoc
1648 \dominitoc
1649 \tableofcontents
1650 \part{Introduction}
1651 \clearpage

```

A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```

1652 \parttoc
1653 \clearpage

```

A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```
1654 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1655 \parttoc
1656 \clearpage
```

A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```
1657 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1658 \parttoc
1659 \clearpage
```

A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```
1660 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1661 \parttoc
1662 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1663 \minitoc
1664 \lipsum[1]
1665 \section{First section}
1666 \lipsum[2]
1667 \subsection{Alpha}
1668 \lipsum[3]
1669 \subsection{Beta}
1670 \lipsum[4]
1671 \section{Second section}
1672 \lipsum[5]
1673 \subsection{Gamma}
1674 \lipsum[6]
1675 \subsection{Delta}
1676 \lipsum[7]
1677 \end{document}
1678 </mtc – fo2>
```

4.13 The mtc-hia.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class.

```
1679 <*mtc – hia>
1680 \documentclass%
1681 [oneside,a4paper]{article}
1682 \usepackage{lipsum}
1683 \usepackage%
1684 [tight,insection,listfiles]%
```

```
1685 {minitoc}
1686 \dosectlot
1687 \begin{document}
1688 \listoftables
1689 \section{First section}
1690 \sectlot
1691 \lipsum[1]
1692 \begin{table}[hb]
1693 \caption{My first visible table}
1694 \end{table}
1695 \lipsum[2]
1696 \begin{table}[ht]
1697 \caption{A second visible table}
```

```
1698 \end{table}
1699 \lipsum[3]
```

For the *first* hidden table, we add
`\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```
1700 \begin{table}[hb]
1701 \mtchideinmainlot
1702 \caption{My first hidden table}
1703 \end{table}
1704 \lipsum[4-6]
1705 \begin{table}[ht]
1706 \caption{A second hidden table}
1707 \end{table}
1708 \lipsum[7]
1709 \section{Second section}
1710 \sectlot
1711 \lipsum[8]
```

For the *last* hidden table, we add
`\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its
caption:

```
1712 \begin{table}[hb]
1713 \caption{My last hidden table}
1714 \endmtchideinmainlot
1715 \end{table}
1716 \lipsum[9]
1717 \begin{table}[ht]
1718 \caption{A third visible table}
1719 \end{table}
1720 \lipsum[10]
1721 \begin{table}[hb]
1722 \caption{A fourth visible table}
1723 \end{table}
1724 \lipsum[11]
1725 \end{document}
1726 </mtc - hia>
```

4.14 The mtc-hir.tex document file

This document shows the use of the
`minitoc` package in a document where
the entries for some tables must be hidden
in the main list of tables. The document
uses the `report` class.

```
1727 <*mtc - hir>
1728 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
1729 \usepackage{lipsum}
1730 \usepackage%
1731 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
1732 \dominilot
1733 \begin{document}
1734 \listoftables
1735 \chapter{First chapter}
1736 \minilot
1737 \lipsum[1]
1738 \begin{table}[hb]
1739 \caption{My first visible table}
1740 \end{table}
1741 \lipsum[2]
1742 \begin{table}[ht]
1743 \caption{A second visible table}
1744 \end{table}
1745 \lipsum[3]
```

For the *first* hidden table, we add
`\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```
1746 \begin{table}[hb]
1747 \mtchideinmainlot
1748 \caption{My first hidden table}
1749 \end{table}
1750 \lipsum[4-6]
1751 \begin{table}[ht]
1752 \caption{A second hidden table}
1753 \end{table}
1754 \lipsum[7]
1755 \chapter{Second chapter}
1756 \minilot
1757 \lipsum[8]
```

For the *last* hidden table, we add
`\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its
caption:

```
1758 \begin{table}[hb]
1759 \caption{My last hidden table}
1760 \endmtchideinmainlot
1761 \end{table}
1762 \lipsum[9]
1763 \begin{table}[ht]
```

1764 \caption{A third visible table}	1769 \end{table}
1765 \end{table}	1770 \lipsum[11]
1766 \lipsum[10]	1771 \end{document}
1767 \begin{table}[hb]	1772 </mtc – hir>
1768 \caption{A fourth visible table}	

4.15 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class scrbook.

```

1773 <*mtc – hop>
1774 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1775 \usepackage{lipsum}
1776 \usepackage[hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
1777 \begin{document}

```

We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF file is prepared):

```

1778 \dominitoc
1779 \dominilof
1780 \tableofcontents
1781 \fakelistoffigures

```

A starred part with its entry in the TOC:

```

1782 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1783 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:

```

1784 \chapter{Chapter 1}
1785 \minitoc
1786 \minilof
1787 \section{Section one of first chapter}
1788 \lipsum[1]
1789 \begin{figure}
1790     \centering
1791     Test
1792     \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1793 \end{figure}
1794
1795 \section{Section two of first chapter}
1796 \lipsum[2]
1797 \begin{figure}
1798     \centering
1799     Test

```

```

1800 \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1801 \end{figure}
1802
1803 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1804 \minitoc \minilof
1805
1806 \section{Section one of second chapter}
1807 \lipsum[3]
1808 \begin{figure}
1809 \centering
1810 Test
1811 \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1812 \end{figure}
1813 \cleardoublepage
1814 \section{Section two of second chapter}
1815 \lipsum[4]
1816 \begin{figure}
1817 \centering
1818 Test
1819 \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1820 \end{figure}
1821 \end{document}
1822 </mtc - hop>

```

4.16 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1823 <*mtc - liv>
1824 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}

```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine \cleardoublepage:

```

1825 \makeatletter
1826 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1827 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
1828 \if@twoside
1829 \ifodd\c@page\else
1830 \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
1831 \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
1832 \fi
1833 \fi
1834 }%
1835 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1836 \makeatother

```


We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```
1837 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1838 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
```

We load two packages, `tocloft` [227], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [168], to customize the sectionning commands:

```
1839 \usepackage{tocloft}
1840 \usepackage{sectsty}
```

We load the `minitoc` package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```
1841 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
1842 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
1843 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1844 \usepackage{mypatches}
1845 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}
```

We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:

```
1846 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
1847 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
1848 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
1849 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
1850 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
1851 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
1852 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
1853 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)
```

Some informations for the title page:

```
1854 \title{Systèmes d'occultation}
1855 \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}
```

And the document body³:

```
1856 \begin{document}
1857
1858 \maketitle
1859
1860 \dominitoc
1861 \tableofcontents
1862
1863 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}
```

³ The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

```

1864 \label{chap+controle}
1865 \minitoc
1866
1867 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
1868 \index{taylorisme}
1869 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
1870 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
1871 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
1872 industrielle.
1873
1874 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
1875 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
1876 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
1877 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
1878 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
1879 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
1880
1881 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
1882 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
1883 son destinataire.
1884
1885 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
1886 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
1887 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
1888 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
1889 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
1890 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
1891 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
1892
1893 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
1894 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
1895 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
1896
1897 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
1898 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
1899 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
1900 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
1901
1902 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}
1903 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
1904 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
1905 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]
1906
1907 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
1908 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
1909 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
1910 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
1911
1912 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}
1913 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
1914 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
1915 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
1916 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les
1917 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]

```

1918
1919 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}
1920 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un
1921 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de
1922 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent
1923 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]
1924
1925 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}
1926 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne
1927 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]
1928
1929 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}
1930 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion
1931 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]
1932
1933 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}
1934
1935 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons
1936 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup
1937 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du
1938 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]
1939
1940 \chapter{Le travail informatique}
1941 \minitoc
1942
1943 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}
1944
1945 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}
1946 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin
1947 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des
1948 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,
1949 on pensait~[...]
1950
1951 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}
1952 J'aimerais à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du
1953 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus
1954 au sujet de la programmation.
1955
1956 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
1957 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres
1958 principes. Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la
1959 préserver~[...]
1960
1961 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}
1962 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}
1963
1964 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
1965 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
1966 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre
1967 préoccupation.
1968
1969 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
1970 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
1971 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires

```

1972 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
1973 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]
1974
1975 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
1976 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
1977 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
1978 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
1979
1980 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
1981 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
1982 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
1983 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
1984 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
1985
1986 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
1987 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
1988 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
1989 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
1990
1991 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
1992 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
1993 modèle~[...]
1994 \end{document}
1995 </mtc – liv>

```

4.17 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a `memoir` class document. First, the preamble:

```

1996 <*mtc – mem>
1997 \documentclass%
1998   [oneside]{memoir}
1999 \usepackage{lipsum}
2000 %%\usepackage{hyperref}
2001 %%\usepackage{memhfixc}
2002 \usepackage%
2003   [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
2004 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
2005 \begin{document}

```

We use the starred form `\tableofcontents*` specific of the `memoir` class. Note that the `\chapter` command has *two* optional arguments in the `memoir` class.

```

2006 \dominitoc

```

```

2007 \tableofcontents*
2008
2009 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC}
2010 \minitoc
2011 \lipsum[1]
2012 \newpage
2013 \lipsum[2]
2014 \section{S-1-one}
2015 \lipsum[3]
2016 \section{S-1-two}
2017 \lipsum[4]
2018
2019 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC}
2020 \minitoc
2021 \lipsum[4]
2022 \newpage
2023 \lipsum[5]
2024 \section{S-2-one}
2025 \lipsum[6]
2026 \section{S-2-two}
2027 \lipsum[7]
2028 \end{document}
2029 </mtc – mem>

```

4.18 The `mtc-mm1.tex` document file

This example shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a `memoir` class document and shows some of the adaptations necessary for fonts. First, the preamble:

```
2030 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
2031 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
2032 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
```

We inhibit some font commands of the `memoir` class:

```
2033 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2034 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
```

Then we redefine them:

```
2035 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
2036 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
```

We load the `minitoc` package and try to use some `minitoc` font commands, without success:

```
2037 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
2038 %% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref} \usepackage{memhfixc}
2039 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
2040 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
2041 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape
```

But if we use the font commands of the `memoir` class, it works!

```
2042 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2043 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
2044 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
2045 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
```

But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the `minitoc` commands:

```
2046 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
2047 %% this is working beautifully ->
2048 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}
```

The document body:

```
2049 \begin{document}
2050 \dominitoc
2051 \tableofcontents*
2052
2053 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
2054 \minitoc
```

```

2055 \section{This section}
2056 \lipsum[1]
2057 \section{Second section}
2058 \lipsum[2]
2059 \section{Third section}
2060 \lipsum[3]
2061 \end{document}
2062 </mtc – mm1>

```

4.19 The mtc-mu.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted in the text with the wrapfig package [6].

```

2063 <*mtc – mu>
2064 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2065 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
2066 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
2067 \usepackage{wrapfig}
2068 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
2069 \begin{document}
2070 \dominitoc
2071 \tableofcontents

```

A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:

```

2072 \chapter{Mulspren}\label{chapter+mulspre}
2073 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
2074 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
2075 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
2076 \minitoc
2077 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
2078 \end{minipage}
2079 \end{wrapfigure}

```

The remaining of the text:

```

2080 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
2081 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
2082 These gulfs were often created when programming environments used
2083 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
2084 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
2085 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
2086 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
2087 notations helped users understand programs.
2088 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2089 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2090 programming gulfs.

```

2091 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
 2092 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
 2093 programming gulfs.

2094

2095 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
 2096 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
 2097 benefits of multiple notations.

2098 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
 2099 similar to conventional code.

2100 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
 2101 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.

2102 This is programming using dual notations.

2103 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.

2104 Mulspren's language signature is `\LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}`.

2105

2106 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
 2107 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.

2108

2109 \section{section 1}
 2110 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
 2111 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
 2112 \section{section 3}
 2113 \section{section 4}
 2114 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
 2115 bla bla bla bla bla}

I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

2116 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
 2117 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
 2118 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.

2119 \newblock Mulspren: a multiple language simulation programming
 2120 environment.

2121 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
 2122 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
 2123 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.

2124

2125 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
 2126 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.

2127 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.

2128 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
 2129 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
 2130 Australia, 2005.

2131 Australian Computer Society, Inc.

2132 \end{thebibliography}
 2133 \end{document}
 2134 </mtc - mu>

4.20 The `mtc-sbf.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package with a document containing subfigures (here with the `subfigure` package [90]). We show how to use `minilofs` and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the `subfigure` package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
2135 \*mtc - sbf
2136 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2137 \usepackage{subfigure}
2138 \makeatletter
2139 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{%
2140   \@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2141 \makeatother
```

We load the `varioref` package (to have nice cross-references) and the `minitoc` package:

```
2142 \usepackage{varioref}
2143 \usepackage%
2144   [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
```

We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:

```
2145 \newcommand{\goodap}{%
2146   \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
2147   \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
2148 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2149 \begin{document}
```

We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:

```
2150 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2151 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2152 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2153 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2154 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2155 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2156 %% no tables in this document
2157 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2158 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2159 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2160 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

We prepare the `minilofs`, the table of contents and the list of figures:

```
2161 \dominilof
2162 \tableofcontents
```



```
2163 \listoffigures
```

A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:

```
2164 \chapter{First Chapter}
2165 \minilof
2166 \mtcskip
2167 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2168 \minilof
```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```
2169 \begin{figure}
2170 \centering
2171   \fbox{%
2172     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2173       \raggedright
2174       \begin{center}
2175         \subfigure[First]{%
2176           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2177           \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2178         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2179           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\
2180         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2181           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\
2182         \caption{Three subfigures.}%
2183         \label{3figs}%
2184       \end{center}
2185       \vspace{4pt}%
2186       This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2187       Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2188     \end{minipage}}
2189 \end{figure}
2190 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
2191 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2192 \end{document}
2193 </mtc – sbf>
```

4.21 The mtc-scr.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class, `scrreprt`. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interface with the TOC (package options and commands).

```
2194 <*mtc – scr>
2195 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2196 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2197 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2198 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
```

```
2199 \usepackage{longtable}
```

The `hyperref` package, if used, must be loaded *before* `minitoc`:

```
2200 \usepackage{hyperref}
```

With a KOMA-Script class, use the `k-tight` package option in place of `tight`; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:

```
2201 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb,listfiles]{minitoc}
2202 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2203 \begin{document}
2204 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2205 \dominitoc
2206 \tableofcontents
```

In this document class, with the `liststotoc` class option, `\listoftables` adds a chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```
2207 \listoftables
2208 \mtcaddchapter
```

With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the `tocbibind` package.

```
2209 \clearpage
2210 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits
2211 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1
2212
2213 \chapter[Test 1]\label{cha:test-1}
2214
2215 Text.
2216
2217 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}
2218
2219 \begin{table}
2220   \centering
2221   \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2222     \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} & \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft \\
2223   \\
2224     \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2225     Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort \\
2226   \end{longtable}
2227   \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2228 \end{table}
2229
2230 Text.
2231
2232 \appendix
2233 \chapter{Dokumente}
```

```

2234 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2235
2236 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2237 Text.\
2238 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2239 \end{document}
2240 </mtc – scr>

```

4.22 The mtc-syn.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

We have the preamble, then we invoke \dominitoc to prepare the minitocs:

```

2241 (*mtc – syn)
2242 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2243 \usepackage{minitoc}
2244 \begin{document}
2245 \dominitoc

```

Some starred chapters, with calls to \mtcaddchapter to synchronize. The optional argument is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2246 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2247 \mtcaddchapter          % Added for a starred chapter
2248                        % without entry in the ToC
2249 Dedication goes here
2250
2251 \chapter*{Abstract}
2252 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2253                        % with an entry in the ToC
2254 Abstract goes here
2255
2256 \chapter*{Declaration}
2257 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2258                        % with an entry in the ToC
2259 Declaration goes here

```

The table of contents comes here. Looking at the .log file shows that the minitoc files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```

2260 \tableofcontents
2261 \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

```

The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

```

2262 \chapter{Chapter One}
2263 \minitoc
2264
2265 \section{Section 1}
2266 Some text.
2267
2268 \section{Section 2}
2269 Some text.
2270
2271 \chapter{Chapter Two}
2272 \minitoc
2273
2274 \section{Another Section 1}
2275 Some more text.
2276
2277 \section{Another Section 2}
2278 Some more text.
2279
2280 \end{document}
2281 </mtc – syn>

```

4.23 The mtc-tbi.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [230].

```

2282 < *mtc – tbi>
2283 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}

```

We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option nottoc for the tocbibind package:

```

2284 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind}
2285 \usepackage%
2286 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
2287 \begin{document}
2288 \dominitoc
2289 \tableofcontents

```

As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction ⁴:

```

2290 %% tocbibind compatibility
2291 %% not used if nottoc option :

```

```

2292 %% \mtcaddchapter[]

```

A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;

```

2293 \chapter*{Introduction}
2294 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]

```

Some normal chapters:

```

2295 \chapter{Title of chapter~1}
2296 \minitoc
2297 \section{as1}
2298 \section{as2}
2299 \chapter{Title of chapter~2}
2300 \minitoc
2301 \section{bs1}
2302 \section{bs2}
2303 \chapter{Title of chapter~3}
2304 \minitoc
2305 \section{cs1}
2306 \section{cs2}
2307 \chapter{Title of chapter~4}
2308 \minitoc

```

⁴ It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

```
2309 \section{ds1}
2310 \section{ds2}
```

Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:

```
2311 \chapter*{Conclusion}
2312 \mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]
```

Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC:

```
2313 \chapter*{Appendices}
2314 \mtcaddchapter[Appendices]
2315 \minitoc
2316 \section*{first appendix}
2317 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
2318 {first appendix}
2319 \section*{second appendix}
2320 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
```

```
2321 {second appendix}
```

The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the `tocbibind` package), so a correction must be applied:

```
2322 \listoffigures
2323 %% tocbibind compatibility
2324 \mtcaddchapter
```

The `tocbibind` package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the recommended correction:

```
2325 \begin{thebibliography}{3}
2326 \bibitem {s1}{title ...}
2327 \end{thebibliography}
2328 %% tocbibind compatibility
2329 \adjustmtc
2330 \end{document}
2331 \</mtc - tbi>
```

4.24 The `mtc-tlc.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of the `article` class. It is the example of [174, page 58], modernized.

```
2332 \<*mtc - tlc>
2333 \documentclass{article}
```

Dimensions of the text on the page:

```
2334 \setlength{\textwidth}%
2335 {124.20126pt}
2336 \setlength{\textheight}%
2337 {19\baselineskip}
```

We load the `minitoc` package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for the `secttocs`:

```
2338 \usepackage[listfiles]{minitoc}
2339 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}
2340 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%
```

```
2341 {\footnotesize}
2342 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}
```

We prepare the `secttocs`, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:

```
2343 \begin{document}
2344 \dosecttoc[e]
2345 \faketableofcontents
2346
2347 \section{Afghanistan}
2348 \secttoc
2349 \subsection{Geography}
2350 \subsubsection{Total area}
2351 647,500 km2
2352 \subsubsection{Land area}
2353 647,500 km2
2354 \subsection{History} \ldots
2355
2356 \section{Albania}
2357 \secttoc
2358 \subsection{Geography}
2359 \subsubsection{Total area}
```

2360	28,750 km2	2363 \subsection{History} \ldots
2361	\subsubsection{Land area}	2364 \end{document}
2362	27,400 km2	2365 </mtc – tsf>

4.25 The mtc-tsf.tex document file

This document⁵ shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfig package [92]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the subfig package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2366 <*mtc – tsf>
2367 \documentclass{report}
2368 \usepackage{fullpage}
2369 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2370 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}

```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2371 \newdimen\testtemp
2372 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2373   \testtemp #1%
2374   \advance\testtemp .5pt%
2375   \divide\testtemp 2%
2376   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2377     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2378   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2379   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2380     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}}
2381 %%
2382 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2383 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2384   \fbox{%
2385     \vbox to 1in{%
2386       \vfil
2387       \hbox to 2in{%
2388         \parbox{2in}{%
2389           \centering
2390           #1}}}%
2391     \vfil
2392     \vbox to 0pt{%
2393       \vss
2394       \hbox to 2in{%
2395         \hfil
2396         \ru{1.1in}%
2397         \hfil}}}}

```

⁵ It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the subfig package [92].

The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and the list of figures:

```

2398 \begin{document}
2399 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2400 \dominilof
2401 \listoffigures
2402 \newpage

```

A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print a minilof twice, with different depths:

```

2403 \chapter{Reference Test}
2404 \minilof
2405 \mtcskip
2406 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2407 \minilof
2408
2409 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2410   \centering
2411   \subfigure{%
2412     \label{fig+A}%
2413     \figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\
2414             (no opt)}}
2415   \quad
2416   \subfigure[][%
2417     \label{fig+B}%
2418     \figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\
2419             (empty opt)}}\\
2420
2421   \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2422     \label{fig+C}%
2423     \figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\
2424             (opt)}}
2425   \quad
2426   \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2427     \label{fig+D}%
2428     \figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\
2429             (empty opt and opt)}}
2430   \quad
2431   \subfigure[][][%
2432     \label{fig+E}%
2433     \figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\
2434             (both empty opt)}}\\
2435
2436   \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2437     \label{fig+F}%
2438     \figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\
2439             (both opt)}}
2440   \quad
2441   \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][][][%
2442     \label{fig+G}%
2443     \figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\
2444             (opt and empty opt)}}

```

```
2445
2446 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2447 \label{fig+main}%
2448 \end{figure}
2449
2450 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2451 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2452 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2453 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2454 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2455
2456 \section{Centering Test}
2457 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2458 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2459 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2460 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2461 have centered labels.
2462 \end{document}
2463 </mtc - tsf>
```


Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

5.1	Introduction	137
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	139
5.2.1	Informative messages	139
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	147
5.2.2	Warning messages	149
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	154
5.2.3	Error messages	170
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	182
5.3.1	Warning messages	182
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	184

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the `minitoc` package, and is associates, `mtcoff` and `mtcpatchmem`¹.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation, but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).
- Informative messages are written only in the `document.log` file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the `mtcoff` package and M for the informative message from the `mtcpatchmem` package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally `LATEX` does not stop for warnings) and written in the `document.log` file.

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain some variable elements and the layout may differ.

- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but \LaTeX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.
 - *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
 - *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
 - *counter* The name of a \LaTeX counter.
 - *document* The name of your document, without its *.tex* extension.
 - *extension* The extension part of the name of a file.
 - *file* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the *document.toc* file, the *document.lof* file, or the *document.lot* file).
 - *internal_name* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
 - *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
 - *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
 - *new_title* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsettitle`.
 - *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
 - *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
 - *sequence* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
 - *value* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 410.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

```
Package: minitoc 2006/09/13 v48 Package minitoc (JPFD)
```

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFD” are my initials. This message has no identifier because it is emitted by \ProvidesPackage.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0001>
(minitoc)             *** minitoc package, version 48 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0002>
(minitoc)             Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0003>
(minitoc)             chapter level macros available.
```

The \chapter sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0004>
(minitoc)             chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The \chapter sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the \section sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0005>
(minitoc)           compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the hyperref package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0006>
(minitoc)           document.extension is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0007>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0008>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0009>
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the *document.maf* file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 48. This option is the default since version #48.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0010>
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0011>
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0012>
(minitoc)                Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0013>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)                "counter" as "value" on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *value*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0014>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)                "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)                "\sequence" on input line LINE.

```

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *internal_name* with the given *sequence*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0015>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "macro" as "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *sequence* of font commands.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0016>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0017>
(minitoc)           \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "new_title" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0018>
(minitoc)           \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\internal_name` macro which the given *sequence*.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0019>
(minitoc(hints))           No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))           in the document.log file.

```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0020>
(minitoc)             old version of the memoir class.

```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0021>
(minitoc)             Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0022>
(minitoc)             Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0023>
(minitoc)             part level macros available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0024>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINITOCs FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0025>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0026>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0027>
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0028>
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0029>
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0030>
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.

```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0031>
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0032>
(minitoc)             This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)             a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)             incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)             We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the \chapter command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0033>
(minitoc)             Writing document.extension.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like \dominitoc).

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0034>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A \dominilof command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0035>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dopartlof command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0036>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dosectlof command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0037>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dominilot command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0038>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dopartlot command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0039>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dosectlot command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *file*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0040>
(minitoc(hints))           The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))           loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))           You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))           documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.27 on page 66.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0041>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.24 on page 62.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0042>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 59.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0043>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 46. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrarcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [180] compatible with `minitoc`.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0044>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using the `memoir` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 61.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0045>
(minitoc(hints))          The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))          has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))          on input line LINE.

```

A `minitoc` preparation command has been invoked more than once.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0046>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the `tocbibind` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 46.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0047>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the `tocloft` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 60.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0048>
(minitoc(hints))           Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))           hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))           because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))           commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))           without any previous check.

```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0049>
(minitoc(hints))           ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))           Some hints are eventually given below.

```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

5.2.2 Warning messages

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0001>
(minitoc)                 \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                 Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                 optional argument [part].

```

The sectioning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0002>
(minitoc)                 \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                 Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                 optional argument [part].

```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0003>
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0004>
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0005>
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0006>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0007>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0008>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0009>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0010>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0011>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0012>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0013>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0014>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0015>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0016>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0017>
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.
```


The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the `minitoc` package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0018>
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.
```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the `minitoc` package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0019>
(minitoc)           Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)           ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)           (8+3) file names.
```

The autofiguration has found that the operating systems use file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0020>
(minitoc)           You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more that 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
(minitoc)           Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)           Trying to continue...
```

You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the `minitoc` package will try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                  Trying to continue... crossing fingers.

```

Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation.

5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0023>
(minitoc(hints))              --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))              of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.

```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 58.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0024>
(minitoc(hints))              Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))              in the document.log file.

```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the *document.log* file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0025>
(minitoc(hints))              --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))              It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))              with the minitoc package.

```

You are using the alphanum package which is incompatible with the minitoc package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0026>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsart` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0027>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0028>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \chapter command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0029>
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0030>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \part command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The hyperref package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the hyperref package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0031>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))          without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))          but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))          which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))          loading order and use coherent options.
(minitoc(hints))          You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))          ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.
```

You are using the placeins package, but without its section options, while minitoc is called with its insection option which implies it. See page 28, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0032>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))          too old. It should have a version
(minitoc(hints))          date of 2005/04/18 at least.
```

You are using an obsolete version of the placeins package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0033>
(minitoc(hints))          The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))          loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The caption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 68.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0034>
(minitoc(hints))               The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The caption2 package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 68.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0035>
(minitoc(hints))               The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 68.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0036>
(minitoc(hints))               The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 68.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0037>
(minitoc(hints))               The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 66.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0038>
(minitoc(hints))               The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 68.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0039>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \section command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0040>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. See note 17 on page 48.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0041>
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0042>
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0043>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0044>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0045>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0046>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0047>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0048>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0049>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0050>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                           command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0051>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                           command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0052>
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete
                              command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (\firstsectionis). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0053>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 50.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0054>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 50.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0055>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 50.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0056>
(minitoc(hints))              You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))              \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))              option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page [28](#).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0057>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0058>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0059>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0060>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0061>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0062>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0063>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0064>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0065>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0066>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))               \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0067>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))               \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0068>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0069>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0070>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0071>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0072>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0073>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0074>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0075>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))               but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0076>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))               but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0077>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))               but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0078>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))               but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0079>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0080>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0081>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0082>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never use one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0083>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never use one of them.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0084>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))      use coherent options.

```

You are using the placeins package, but with its above options, while minitoc is called with its insection option which is incompatible with it. See page 28, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0085>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use coherent options.

```

You are using the placeins package, but with its below options, while minitoc is called with its insection option which is incompatible with it. See page 28, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0086>
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The fncychap package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.38 on page 71.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0087>
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The quotchap package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.39 on page 71.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0088>
(minitoc(hints))               The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `romannum` package alters the numbering of some sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.40 on page 71.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0089>
(minitoc(hints))               The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `sfheaders` package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.41 on page 71.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0090>
(minitoc(hints))               The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `alnumsec` package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.42 on page 71.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0091>
(minitoc(hints))               The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `captcont` package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.43 on page 72.

5.2.3 Error messages

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0001>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixglossary` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0002>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixindex` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0003>
(minitoc)                Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0004>
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0005>
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0006>
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0007>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0008>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0009>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0010>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0011>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0012>
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a feature param
(minitoc)          (before, after, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, or `thispagestyle`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0013>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0014>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0015>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, `...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0016>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
(minitoc)                It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)                pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0017>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)                argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0018>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)                argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, and 0.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0019>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)                (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0020>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists:

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, and 0.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0021>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0022>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0023>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are incompatible. You should verify them.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0024>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0025>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are incompatible. One is likely to be misspelt.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0026>
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0027>
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0028>
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.

```

Your version of the memoir class is really incompatible with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0029>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0030>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0031>
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0032>
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0033>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0034>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0035>
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The `insection` package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for `book`-like or `report`-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0036>
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue

```

The `english.mld` language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

5.3 Messages from the `mtcoff` package

The `mtcoff` package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

5.3.1 Warning messages

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0001>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0002>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0003>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0004>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0005>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0006>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0007>
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the `document.log` file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0008>
(mtcoff)                The macro \string\kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macro with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

```
Package mtcpatchmem Info: <M0001>
Package mtcpatchmem Info: mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class.
```

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter 12 on page 411.

Chapter 6

Jargon

Figures

6.1 Some systems derived from \TeX and \LaTeX	208
---	-----

Tables

6.1 Category codes	191
6.2 Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	191
6.3 Document classes	192
6.4 Depths for sectionning commands	193
6.5 Most common font encodings	205
6.6 Most common font families	206
6.7 Most common font series	206
6.8 Most common font shapes	206
6.9 The five font parameters for some fonts	206
6.10 Author commands for fonts	207

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages, and from [3, 4, 93, 96, 136, 146, 152, 153, 154, 163, 164, 166, 174, 180, 182, 183, 221].

- .aux** The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a \LaTeX document. It carries some information from a \LaTeX run to the next.
- .cls** The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via `\documentclass`.
- .dtx** The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a \LaTeX package or class. This file is often associated with a `.ins` file to generate the package or class. Compiling a `.dtx` file with \LaTeX generates the documentation.
- .F** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Fnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.

.G	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Gnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.H	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Hnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.ins	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a \LaTeX package or class. When compiled with \LaTeX , it extracts the files of the package or class from an <i>.dtx</i> file.
.lof	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
.log	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
.lot	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
.M	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Mnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.maf	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
.mld	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
.mlf	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mlfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
.mlo	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <i>.mld</i> file; hence the <i>.mld</i> file must load a <i>.mlo</i> file.
.mlt	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mltnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
.mtc	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mtcnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
.P	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Pnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.plf	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.plfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
.plt	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.plttnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
.ptc	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.ptcnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
.S	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Snn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
.slf	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.slfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
.slt	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.sltnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.

- .stc** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.stcnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.
- .sty** The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.
- .T** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Tnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .tex** The suffix of the name of a \TeX or \LaTeX normal source file.
- .toc** The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
- .U** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Unn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
- .V** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Vnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.

absolute numbering The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

abstract The abstract package [228] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

adjustment Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`, `\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



after A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 44.

alnumsec The alnumsec package [141] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. It’s output is similar to the alphanum package (part of the jura class [82]), but you can use the standard \LaTeX sectionning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.42 on page 71).

alphanum The alphanum package, which is part of the specialized jura class [82], by Felix BRAUN, is incompatible with the minitoc package.

\mathcal{AMS} the American Mathematical Society. This society has developped some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with the minitoc package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.

amsart, amsart.cls A document class for articles, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is incompatible with the `minitoc` package.

amsbook, amsbook.cls A document class for books, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the `minitoc` package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 62.

amsproc, amsproc.cls A document class for conference proceedings, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is incompatible with the `minitoc` package.

Antomega Antomega [139] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for **Lambda** (Λ), based on the original `omega.sty` file of the Omega project (Ω). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (`.mld`) use titles taken from Antomega: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The appendix package [229] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for example, for per chapter/section appendices. If this package is used with `minitoc`, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 59).

Arabi **Arabi** [125] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` come from the `arabic.ldf` and `farsi.ldf` files of this system.

ArabTeX **ArabTeX** [143, 144] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in `arab.mld` (or `arabic.mld`), `arab2.mld` and `hebrew.mld` come from **ArabTeX**, while those of `hebrew2.mld` come from **Babel** [35, 36].

ArmTeX **ArmTeX** [97] is a package (by Serguei DACHIAN and others) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the armenian language. The titles in `armenian.mld` come from **ArmTeX**.

article A standard \LaTeX document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

\AtBeginDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

\AtEndDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

autoconfiguration Since version #28, `minitoc` detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

auxiliary During the preparation of a document, the \LaTeX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are `document.aux` (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), `document.toc` for the table of contents, `document.lof` for the list of figures, and `document.lot` for the list of tables. The `minitoc` package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are `document.extension`, the table 1.11 on page 50 lists the possible extensions.

babel The `babel` package [35, 36] (by Johannes BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write \LaTeX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the `babel` package.

BangTeX A package for typesetting documents in the Bangla language using the \TeX/\LaTeX systems; see [185].

before A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 44.

BibTeX A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in \LaTeX documents. Distributed with \LaTeX . See [166, 188, 189].

bibtopic A \LaTeX package [13] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.

bibunits The `bibunits` package [113] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `natbib`, `overcite` and KOMA-Script classes [180].

book A standard \LaTeX document class. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

cappuccino See “minutes” below.

captcont The `captcont` package [91] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [92] in particular.

caption The `caption` package [204] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages.

caption2 The¹ `caption2` package [203] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular `caption` package [204] and has been superseed by the new release of the regular `caption` package version 3.0 in December 2003. `caption2` is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the `caption` package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the `caption2` package should be used instead of the `caption` package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

catalog A plain text file which contains basic infos about the `minitoc` package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

catcode Short for “category code”. In² the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that \TeX might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1 on the next page. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that \TeX responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The \TeX book*” led you to believe that there were just two types—the escape character and the others—and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols `{` and `}`. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The `ccaption` package [232] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the `minitoc` package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and `co.`). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in `minitoc` version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 45.

chapterbib The `chapterbib` package [7] allows multiple bibliographies in a \LaTeX document, including items `\cite'd` in more than one bibliography. Despite the name

¹ This text comes from the documentation of the `caption` package. The `caption` and `caption2` packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

² This definition is taken from “*The \TeX book*” [133].

Table 6.1: Category codes

Category	Meaning
0	Escape character (<code>\</code> usually)
1	Beginning of group (<code>{</code> usually)
2	End of group (<code>}</code> usually)
3	Math shift (<code>\$</code> usually)
4	Alignment tab (<code>&</code> usually)
5	End of line (<code>\return</code> usually)
6	Parameter (<code>#</code> usually)
7	Superscript (<code>^</code> usually)
8	Subscript (<code>_</code> usually)
9	Ignored character (<code>\null</code> usually)
10	Space (<code>_</code> usually)
11	Letter (<code>A, ..., Z</code> and <code>a, ..., z</code>)
12	Other character (none of the above or below)
13	Active character (<code>~</code> usually)
14	Comment character (<code>%</code> usually)
15	Invalid character (<code>\delete</code> usually)

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xFF	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

“`chapterbib`”, the bibliographies are for each included file, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.74.2 on page 364.

CJK The CJK system [156, 157] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare \LaTeX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some files CJK files and inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into \TeX since some of the

Table 6.3: Document classes

Class	Usage
<code>article</code>	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, ...
<code>report</code>	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, ...
<code>book</code>	For real books
<code>slides</code>	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using Beamer \TeX ^a instead. Do not use <code>minitoc</code> with these classes.

^a <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

values used for the encodings' second bytes are reserved for control characters: '{', '}', and '\'. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in \LaTeX ; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [163, 164]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the `minitoc` package uses the `.mlo` files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.12 on page 40.

class The `class`³ is the first information \LaTeX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here `class` specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes. The $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the `minitoc` package has not been tested with all these classes. The `options` parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the `minitoc` package are listed in section 2.7 on page 55.

CMR For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about \TeX and \LaTeX , in english.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [132] designed by Donald KNUTH for \TeX . Initially they were built with METAFONT [134] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

counter A \TeX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in \TeX , but \LaTeX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from \TeX , $\epsilon\text{-}\TeX$ [83], allows more counters. Omega (Ω) also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the \TeX related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages).

³ This note is extracted from [183], then adapted.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are:

- `ftp.dante.de` (Hamburg, Germany)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/>
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.dante.de/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de>
- `ftp.tex.ac.uk` (Cambridge, UK)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on <rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/>
 - NFS mountable from <nfs.tex.ac.uk/tex-archive>
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.tex.ac.uk/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk>
- `tug.ctan.org` (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/archive)`
 - World Wide Web access on <http://www.ctan.org/>
 - Administrator: <mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org>

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the `secnumdepth` counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the `parttocs`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For \TeX (and \LaTeX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for \TeX* (devnag) package [186] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with \TeX . Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The devnag package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for \TeX .

duplex2v.pro A PostScript header file, which tries to activate recto-verso printing. It works with some HP and Canon PostScript printers.

em A length unit equal (approximately) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the minitoc package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 217.

en-bst.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [110] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for \TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended \TeX). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode), etc. See [155].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env} ... \end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

ethiop A \LaTeX package [26] giving the ethiopian language support for the Babel package [35, 36].

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 50 and 2.5 on page 55. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

farsi.sty See Farsi \TeX below.

Farsi \TeX A package to typeset a document in the farsi (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for \LaTeX 2.09. See also sections 13.52 on page 441 and 13.53 on page 442.

features A feature (for the `minitoc` package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Three features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the mini-table), and a “thispagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 44.

filecontents A special \LaTeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.12 on page 40) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporary used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 45.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above

\FloatBarrier A macro from the `placeins` package [9]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

fminitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

fminitoc.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `minitoc.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

fminitoc.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `fmk` and `pmk` scripts).

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 217.

- fncychap** The `fncychap` package [159] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.38 on page 71).
- fr.comp.text.tex** The Usenet newsgroup about \TeX and \LaTeX , in french.
- franc.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- frbib.sty** A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- fr-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [110] tool to add an URL field.
- frnew.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- guarani** A \LaTeX package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [29] and section 13.72 on page 452.
- hangcaption** The `hangcaption` package [128] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, \LaTeX 2.09).
- Hindi** For the Hindi language, see the `devanagari` package [186] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available.
- hint** An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).
- hints** An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the coherence between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).
- H \LaTeX** A system to write documents in the Korean language, using Lambda (Λ) (see below). Written by KOAUNGH \LaTeX Un [136, in korean]. It uses special Hang \LaTeX ul or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.
- hyperlink** In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.

hyperref The `hyperref` package [196] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in \LaTeX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for HyperTeX dvi processors, for embedded `pdfmark` commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (`dvips` and `dvipsone`), for `dviwindo`, for `pdfTeX`, for `TeX4ht`, and for VTeX 's pdf and HTML backends.

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperTeX project, described at <http://xxx.lanl.gov/hypertex/>. It extends the functionality of all the \LaTeX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

ifmtarg The `ifmtarg` package [237] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty (“empty” meaning zero or more spaces only).

imk An example of shell script, which prepares the `minitoc` package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 9 on page 217.

insection The `insection` package option loads the `placeins` package [9] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use `sectlofs` or `sectlots` in your document. See section 1.2 on page 27.

insertion The insertion commands of the `minitoc` package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are:

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

INSTALL A text file describing the installation of the `minitoc` package. See chapter 7 on page 215.

\jobname A \TeX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by \TeX (or \LaTeX), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.

jura The `jura` class [82], by Felix BRAUN, is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. It is used for german judicial documents.

k-loose A `minitoc` package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `loose` package option for standard classes.

k-tight A `minitoc` package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `tight` package option for standard classes.

KOMA-Script KOMA-Script [180] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (`scrartcl.cls`, `scrbook.cls`, `scrletter.cls`, `scrletter2.cls`,

and `scrreprt.cls`) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

The `scrbook.cls`, `scrreprt.cls`, and `scrartcl.cls` classes are compatible with the `minitoc` package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 46). The `scrletter.cls` and `scrletter2.cls` have no sectioning commands, so the `minitoc` package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the \LaTeX kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard \LaTeX classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes `book`, `report`, and `article`. There is also a replacement for the standard class `letter`.

Lambda The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega (Ω) is called “Lambda” (Λ).

Lamed The \LaTeX format (in the \TeX meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Aleph (\aleph) is called *Lamed* (\daleth).

\LaTeX \LaTeX [145] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books. \LaTeX uses \TeX [133, 135] as its formatting engine (from [183]).

In fact, \LaTeX is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout. \LaTeX was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [145]. It uses the \TeX formatter as its typesetting engine. These days \LaTeX is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the \LaTeX package was (deeply) updated by the $\text{\LaTeX}3$ team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$.

\LaTeX is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to \LaTeX in an ASCII environment, you type `LaTeX`. $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed `LaTeX2e`.

$\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ An obsolete version of the \LaTeX program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it⁴. Use the current version of $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$, which is supported and much more efficient.

$\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ The current version of the \LaTeX program, after 1994; it is supported.

$\text{\LaTeX}3$ The future version of \LaTeX , whose development is still in progress.

leaders A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regularly spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

⁴ Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.

letter A standard document class to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectioning commands nor structure, the `minitoc` package is pointless (hence incompatible) with them.

lipsum The `lipsum` package [115] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).

listfiles An option of the `minitoc` package. It creates a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the \LaTeX run) in the `document.maf` file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 48.

LOF An acronym for “list of figures”.

lofdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

loose An option of the `minitoc` package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is `tight`.

LOT An acronym for “list of tables”.

lotdepth This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

LPPL The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The `minitoc` package is distributed under this license.

\makeatletter and **\makeatother** Many⁵ internal commands of \LaTeX , of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these commands should never be used in a package or class file.

makefile A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

mcaption The `mcaption` package [122] provides a `margincap` environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

memoir, **memoir.cls** A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [234, 235]); this class is compatible with the `minitoc` package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 61.

mini-bibliography See `minibbl` below.

⁵ Informations from [174, page 843].

mini-list Synonym for “mini-table” below.

mini-lof See “minilof” below.

mini-lot See “minilot” below.

mini-table This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the `minitoc` package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only table of contents for chapters.

mini-toc See “minitoc” below.

minibbl Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the `minitoc` package. See section 2.9 on page 56.

minilof A list of figures for a chapter.

minilofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

minilot A list of tables for a chapter.

minilotdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

minitoc A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

minitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the `minitoc` package.

minitoc.bug A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the `minitoc` package. See chapter 2 on page 52.

minitocdepth This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

minitoc.dtx The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the `minitoc` package.

minitoc-hyper.sty A special version of the `minitoc` package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA to work with the powerful `hyperref` package [196]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, `minitoc` is compatible with `hyperref`. *Hence the `minitoc-hyper.sty` package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*



minitoc.ins The installation file for the `minitoc` package. Compiling it with \LaTeX produces most of the files of the `minitoc` package.

minitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.l A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the `minitoc` package. Files not listed in `minitoc.l` are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.

minitoc.lan A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.pdf The english documentation in PDF format.

minitoc.pre This file contains a \LaTeX preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.ps The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `emk` and `pmk` scripts).

minitoc.sty This file contains the main part of the `minitoc` package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

minitoc.sum A plain text file containing a commented list of the `minitoc` commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 74.

minutes The `minutes` package [158] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The `minitoc` package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter!

MonTeX `MonTeX` [93, 96] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russian). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [95]. The following description is extracted from [96].

`MonTeX` is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

Mongolian The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

Buryat is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call

them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, `\xa1x{H/h}`) for marking the difference to /s/.

Bicig (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the name of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root *bicig* whereas the Manju commands have the name root *bithe*.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

Manju Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [94] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles.

MS-DOS (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the `minitoc` point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

mtc-2c.tex An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a two columns page layout.

mtc-2nd.tex An example of document using the `minitoc` package and its `french2` language option.

mtc-add.bib A small bibliographic data base for the `mtc-add.tex` and `mtc-ads.tex` example documents.

mtc-add.tex An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the `tocbibind` package [230] with `minitoc`. See section 4.3 on page 85.

mtc-ads.tex An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the `tocbibind` package [230] with `minitoc`. See section 4.4 on page 90. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.

- mtc-amm.tex** An example file showing the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document with the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-apx.tex** An example file showing the use of the `\mtchideinmaintoc` environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices.
- mtc-art.tex** An example of document (`article` class) using the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-bk.tex** An example of document (`book` or `report` class) using the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-bo.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a two columns page layout and using the `tocloft` package [227].
- mtc-ch0.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a starred first chapter.
- mtc-cri.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with starred parts and chapters.
- mtc-fo1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-fo2.tex** Another example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-gap.tex** An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- mtc-hi1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments.
- mtc-hi2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:
- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
 - `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.
- mtc-hia.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an `article` class document.
- mtc-hir.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a `report` class document.
- mtc-hop.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `scrbook` document class.
- mtc-liv.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a book with customized table of contents an `minitocs`.
- mtc-mem.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `memoir` class.
- mtc-mm1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `memoir` class, if you want to change some fonts.

- mtc-mu.tex** A document using a minitoc set in a wrapfigure environment with the wrapfig package [6].
- mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [90].
- mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class, scrreprt.
- mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters.
- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocbibind package [230].
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [174, page 58], modernized.
- mtc-tsfs.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [92].
- mtcmess, mtcmess.sty** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for an unique message identifier.
- mtcoff, mtcoff.sty** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem, mtcpatchmem.sty** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version incompatible with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode (mu means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.
- multibib** The multibib package [114] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [113] or chapterbib [7], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.
- needspace** The needspace package [226] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.
- NFSS** The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ font selection system [154] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Table 6.5: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L ^A T _E X extended text (“Cork”)
TS1	L ^A T _E X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L ^A T _E X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L ^A T _E X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L ^A T _E X text (African languages)
T5	L ^A T _E X text (Vietnamien)
T7	L ^A T _E X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T _E X text (as defined by Donald K _N UTH)
OT2	T _E X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T _E X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T _E X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T _E X math italic (Donald K _N UTH)
OMS	T _E X math symbols (Donald K _N UTH)
OMX	T _E X math large symbols (Donald K _N UTH)
X2	L ^A T _E X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some V _T eX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software

Every text font in L^AT_EX has five *attributes*:

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L^AT_EX are K_NUTH’s “T_EX text” encoding, and the “T_EX text extended” encoding developed by the T_EX Users Group members during a T_EX Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [155].

family The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For example, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K_NUTH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

series How heavy or expanded a font is. For example, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

shape The form of the letters within a font family. For example, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

size The design size of the font, for example “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L^AT_EX. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.5.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for example a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

Table 6.6: Most common font families

Family	Description
<code>cmr</code>	Computer Modern Roman
<code>cmss</code>	Computer Modern Sans
<code>cmtt</code>	Computer Modern Typewriter
<code>cmm</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic
<code>cmsy</code>	Computer Modern Math Symbols
<code>cmex</code>	Computer Modern Math Extensions
<code>ptm</code>	Adobe Times
<code>phv</code>	Adobe Helvetica
<code>pcr</code>	Adobe Courier

Table 6.7: Most common font series

Series	Description
<code>m</code>	Medium
<code>b</code>	Bold
<code>bx</code>	Bold extended
<code>sb</code>	Semi-bold
<code>c</code>	Condensed

Table 6.8: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
<code>n</code>	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
<code>it</code>	Italic
<code>sl</code>	Slanted (or “oblique”)
<code>sc</code>	Caps and small caps

Table 6.9: The five font parameters for some fonts

L ^A T _E X specification					Font	T _E X name
OT1	<code>cmr</code>	<code>m</code>	<code>n</code>	<code>10</code>	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	<code>cmr10</code>
OT1	<code>cmss</code>	<code>m</code>	<code>sl</code>	<code>1pc</code>	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	<code>cmssi12</code>
OML	<code>cmm</code>	<code>m</code>	<code>it</code>	<code>10pt</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	<code>cmmi10</code>
T1	<code>ptm</code>	<code>b</code>	<code>it</code>	<code>1in</code>	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	<code>ptmb8t at 1in</code>

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.6. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.7. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.8.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for example `10pt` or `1.5in` or `3mm`; if no unit is specified, `pt` is assumed. These five parameters specify every L^AT_EX font, see table 6.9, for example.

These five parameters are displayed whenever L^AT_EX gives an overfull box warning, for example:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 6.10: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	cmr
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	cmss
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	cmtt
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	m
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	bx
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	n
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	it
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	sl
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	sc
<code>\tiny</code>	size	5pt
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	7pt
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	8pt
<code>\small</code>	size	9pt
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	10pt
<code>\large</code>	size	12pt
<code>\Large</code>	size	14.4pt
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	17.28pt
<code>\huge</code>	size	20.74pt
<code>\Huge</code>	size	24.88pt

The table 6.10 lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes⁶.

nocheckfiles A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the checkfiles package option (see above).

nohints A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the hints package option (see above).

nolistfiles An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the listfiles above. See section 1.7 on page 48.

notoccite This option of the minitoc package loads the notoccite package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 47.

Omega The Omega typesetting system⁷ (Ω) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of T_EX that is aimed primarily at improving T_EX's multilingual abilities.

When the T_EX program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then T_EX has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze T_EX, mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the T_EX code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

⁶ The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

⁷ Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} & \longrightarrow & \Omega & + & \mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} & \longrightarrow & \Lambda \\
& & + & & + & & \\
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} & + & \mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-}\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} \\
& \hline
& & \aleph & + & \mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X} & \longrightarrow & \beth
\end{array}$$

Figure 6.1: Some systems derived from $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ and $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ format (in the $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “Lambda” (Λ). Extending Omega with the $\varepsilon\text{-}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ extensions is a separate project, known as Aleph (\aleph) [31, 111] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ for Aleph is known as *Lamed* (\beth).

package Packages⁸ are a very important feature of $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$. These are extensions to the basic $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ commands that are written to files with names that end with `.sty` and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}3$ Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- **$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society, should be in any installation⁹.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard $\mathrm{L}^{\mathrm{A}}\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ usage, but all are useful.

partlof A list of figures for a part.

partlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

⁸ This info is taken from [137, page 12–13] and adapted.

⁹ They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

- partlot** A list of tables for a part.
- partlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.
- parttoc** A table of contents for a part.
- parttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the parttocs.
- PDF** Portable Document Format [107]. A descendant of the Postscript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.
- placeins** The `placeins` package [9] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flafter` package (described in [151] and [174, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 27.
- placeins.txt** A plain text file containing the documentation of the `placeins` package [9].
- PLATEX** A version of \LaTeX customized for the polish (polski) language. See [184, 224]. But the same name refers also to a version of \LaTeX customized for the japanese language, $\text{\LaTeX}_{2\epsilon}$ [124].
- pmk** An example of shell script to prepare the `minitoc` package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 9 on page 217.
- PostScript** A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.
- preamble** In the main file of a \LaTeX source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.
- preparation** The preparation commands of the `minitoc` package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are:
- ```
\doparttoc, \dopartlof, \dopartlot,
\dominitoc, \dominilof, \dominilot,
\dosecttoc, \dosectlof, \dosectlot,
\mtcprepare
```
- proc** A standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the `minitoc` package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.
- pseudo-chapter** Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the `minitoc` package. See section 1.3.4 on page 31.

**quotchap** The quotchap package [212] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.39 on page 71).

**README** is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

**report** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

**rmk** An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 9 on page 217.

**romannum** The romannum package [236] changes the numbers (for sectionning commands) generated by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [225]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.40 on page 71).

**rubber** Rubber [19] is a wrapper for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B<sub>u</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X**, `makeindex`, `Metapost`, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

**scrartcl** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrbook** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrreprt** See KOMA-Script above.

**sectionning commands** These are the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the minitoc package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the minitoc commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the minitoc commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the minitoc package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the minitoc commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 24. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the minitoc package.

**sectlof** A list of figures for a section.

**sectlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlofs.

**sectlot** A list of tables for a section.

**sectlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlots.

**sectsty** The `sectsty` package [168] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.28 on page 66).

**secttoc** A table of contents for a section.

**secttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the secttocs.

**sfheaders** The `sfheaders` package [161] (for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub>) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.41 on page 71).

**shell** In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**csh**), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

**shorttext** An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 55.

**shorttoc** The `shorttoc` package [99] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other depth and an other title than the main table of contents.

**SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [156, 157].

**S $\text{\LaTeX}$**  A version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  customized for the swedish language. See [167].

**stdclsdv** The `stdclsdv` package [225] is intended to be used by the authors of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.

**strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.

**subfig** The `subfig` package [92] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.

**subfigure** The `subfigure` package [90] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the `subfig` package [92].

- suffix** See “extension” above.
- T<sub>E</sub>X** T<sub>E</sub>X is a computer program created by Donald KNUTH [133]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T<sub>E</sub>X as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T<sub>E</sub>X is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T<sub>E</sub>X is converging to  $\pi$  and is now at 3.141592.
- T<sub>E</sub>X is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T<sub>E</sub>X becomes TeX.
- thailatex** The thailatex package [207] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [156, 157].
- thispagestyle** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 44.
- tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is loose.
- titlesec** The titlesec package [30] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.
- titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.
- The titletoc.sty file is not part of the titlesec package; it’s an independent package, but it’s described in the titlesec package documentation [30].
- TOC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The tocbibind package [230] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 46.
- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.
- tocloft** The tocloft package [227] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 60 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.
- TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.



- token** A token<sup>10</sup> is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “category code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T<sub>E</sub>X’s tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T<sub>E</sub>X to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For example, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{<sub>1</sub>’ already inside token lists of T<sub>E</sub>X would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{<sub>12</sub>’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. T<sub>E</sub>X’s digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.
- UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).
- UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.
- UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with T<sub>E</sub>X. See table 6.2 on page 191.
- varsects** The varsects package [208] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 49 and section 2.33 on page 68).
- wrapfig** The wrapfig package [6] provides the `wrapfigure` and `wraptable` environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.
- xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.
- xr** The xr package [85] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of its code in the minitoc package to implement the preparation commands (like

<sup>10</sup>This definition is taken from “The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook” [133].

`\dominitoc`). If you use also the `hyperref` package [196], use `xr-hyper` [86] in place of the `xr` package.

# Chapter 7

## Installation

### Tables

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 7.1 List of files ( <code>minitoc.l</code> ) . . . . . | 216 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #48).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.l`. See table 7.1 on the following page. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.



- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself<sup>1</sup>.

The table 1.7 on page 35 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds the `.sty` files.

- (2) Informative text files:

- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).

<sup>1</sup> The large number `*.mld` files is (partialy) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one); the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk).

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1)

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>class (0) :</b><br>-minitoc.ins<br>-minitoc.dtx<br>-fminitoc.dtx<br><br><b>class (1) :</b><br>-minitoc.sty<br>-mtcoff.sty<br>-mtcmess.sty<br>-mtcpatchmem.sty<br>-acadian.mld<br>-acadien.mld<br>-afrikaan.mld<br>-afrikaans.mld<br>-albanian.mld<br>-american.mld<br>-arab.mld<br>-arab2.mld<br>-arabi.mld<br>-arabic.mld<br>-armenian.mld<br>-australian.mld<br>-austrian.mld<br>-bahasa.mld<br>-bahasai.mld<br>-bahasam.mld<br>-bangla.mld<br>-basque.mld<br>-bicig.mld<br>-bicig2.mld<br>-bicig3.mld<br>-bithe.mld<br>-brazil.mld<br>-brazilian.mld<br>-breton.mld<br>-british.mld<br>-bulgarian.mld<br>-bulgarianb.mld<br>-buryat.mld<br>-buryat2.mld<br>-canadian.mld<br>-canadien.mld<br>-castillan.mld<br>-castillian.mld<br>-catalan.mld<br>-chinese1.mld, and<br>chinese1.mlo<br>-chinese2.mld, and<br>chinese2.mlo<br>-croatian.mld<br>-czech.mld<br>-danish.mld<br>-devanagari.mld<br>-dutch.mld<br>-english.mld<br>-english1.mld<br>-english2.mld<br>-esperant.mld<br>-esperanto.mld<br>-estonian.mld<br>-ethiopia.mld<br>-ethiopian.mld<br>-ethiopian2.mld<br>-farsi1.mld, and farsi1.mlo<br>-farsi2.mld, and farsi2.mlo<br>-farsi3.mld<br>-finnish.mld | -finnish2.mld<br>-français.mld<br>-french.mld<br>-french1.mld<br>-french2.mld<br>-frenchb.mld<br>-frenchle.mld<br>-frenchpro.mld<br>-galician.mld<br>-german.mld<br>-germanb.mld<br>-germanb2.mld<br>-greek.mld<br>-greek-mono.mld<br>-greek-polydemo.mld<br>-greek-polykatha.mld<br>-guarani.mld<br>-hangul1.mld, and<br>hangul1.mlo<br>-hangul2.mld, and<br>hangul2.mlo<br>-hangul3.mld, and<br>hangul3.mlo<br>-hangul4.mld, and<br>hangul4.mlo<br>-hangul-u8.mld, and<br>hangul-u8.mlo<br>-hanja1.mld, and hanja1.mlo<br>-hanja2.mld, and hanja2.mlo<br>-hanja-u8.mld, and<br>hanja-u8.mlo<br>-hebrew.mld<br>-hebrew2.mld<br>-hindi.mld<br>-hindi-modern.mld<br>-hungarian.mld<br>-icelandic.mld<br>-indon.mld<br>-indonesian.mld<br>-interlingua.mld<br>-irish.mld<br>-italian.mld<br>-italian2.mld<br>-japanese.mld, and<br>japanese.mlo<br>-japanese2.mld, and<br>japanese2.mlo<br>-japanese3.mld, and<br>japanese3.mlo<br>-japanese4.mld, and<br>japanese4.mlo<br>-japanese5.mld, and<br>japanese5.mlo<br>-kannada.mld<br>-khalkha.mld<br>-latin.mld<br>-latin2.mld<br>-latvian.mld<br>-letton.mld<br>-lithuanian.mld<br>-lowersorbian.mld<br>-lsorbian.mld<br>-magyar.mld<br>-magyar2.mld<br>-magyar3.mld<br>-malay.mld<br>-malayalam-keli.mld | -malayalam-omega.mld, and<br>malayalam-omega.mlo<br>-malayalam-rachana.mld<br>-malayalam-rachana2.mld<br>-manju.mld<br>-meyalu.mld<br>-mongol.mld<br>-naustrian.mld<br>-newzealand.mld<br>-ngerman.mld<br>-ngermanb.mld<br>-ngermanb2.mld<br>-norsk.mld<br>-norsk2.mld<br>-nynorsk.mld<br>-nynorsk2.mld<br>-polish.mld<br>-polish2.mld<br>-polski.mld<br>-portuges.mld<br>-portuguese.mld<br>-romanian.mld<br>-romanian2.mld<br>-romanian3.mld<br>-russian.mld<br>-russianb.mld<br>-russianc.mld<br>-russian2m.mld<br>-russian2o.mld<br>-russian-cca.mld, and<br>russian-cca.mlo<br>-russian-cca1.mld, and<br>russian-cca1.mlo<br>-russian-lh.mld, and<br>russian-lh.mlo<br>-russian-lhcyralt.mld, and<br>russian-lhcyralt.mlo<br>-russian-lhcyrkoi.mld, and<br>russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo<br>-russian-lhcyrwin.mld, and<br>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo<br>-samin.mld<br>-scottish.mld<br>-serbian.mld<br>-serbianc.mld<br>-slovak.mld<br>-slovene.mld<br>-spanish.mld<br>-spanish2.mld<br>-spanish3.mld<br>-spanish4.mld<br>-swedish.mld<br>-swedish2.mld<br>-thai.mld, and thai.mlo<br>-turkish.mld<br>-uighur.mld<br>-uighur2.mld<br>-uighur3.mld<br>-UKenglish.mld<br>-ukraineb.mld<br>-ukrainian.mld<br>-uppersorbian.mld<br>-USenglish.mld<br>-usorbian.mld<br>-vietnam.mld<br>-vietnamese.mld<br>-welsh.mld | -xalx.mld<br>-xalx2.mld<br>-xalx3.mld<br><br><b>class (2) :</b><br>-INSTALL<br>-minitoc.1<br>-README<br>-catalog<br>-TODO<br><br><b>class (3) :</b><br>-mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex,<br>mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex,<br>mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex,<br>mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex,<br>mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex,<br>mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex,<br>mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex,<br>mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hil.tex,<br>mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex,<br>mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex,<br>mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex,<br>mtc-mml.tex, mtc-mu.tex,<br>mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex,<br>mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex,<br>mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tsfx.tex<br><br><b>class (4) :</b><br>-minitoc.bug<br>-minitoc.sum<br><br><b>class (5) :</b><br>-minitoc.ins<br>-minitoc.dtx<br>-minitoc.bib<br>-minitoc.ist<br>-minitoc.lan<br>-minitoc.pre<br>-en-mtc.bst<br>-lamed.eps, lamed.pdf,<br>lamed.tex<br><br><b>class (6) :</b><br>-minitoc.dtx<br>-fminitoc.dtx<br>-fminitoc.bib<br>-fminitoc.ist<br>-fminitoc.lan<br>-minitoc.pre<br>-franc.sty<br>-frbib.sty<br>-frnew.sty<br>-fr-mtc.bst<br><br><b>class (7) :</b><br>-minitoc.pdf<br><br><b>class (8) :</b><br>-fminitoc.pdf<br><br><b>class (9) :</b><br>-pmk<br>-imk<br>-emk<br>-fmk<br>-rmk<br>-xmk<br>-duplex2v.pro |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



- `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See table 7.1 on the preceding page.
  - `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
  - `catalog` contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
  - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mm1.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tsf.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (short) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 52) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 74).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english, `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` are images to include, `lamed.tex` is the source code<sup>2</sup>.
- (6) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french<sup>3</sup>. `fminitoc.pre` is the preamble code for the documentation.
- (7) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (8) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and source files must not be omitted.
- (9) `pmk` is a shell script<sup>4</sup> to prepare the package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. There are also four partial scripts (to be adapted):
- `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are not to be installed;
  - `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;

<sup>2</sup> Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package (both obsolete), plus conversion into EPS or PDF. I prefer to provide also the image files.

<sup>3</sup> This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

<sup>4</sup> You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

- `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
- `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class),
- `xmk`, which typesets the example files (into PDF).

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but there are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN sites, but these scripts prepare it (using the `duplex2v.pro` PostScript header file to try printing recto-verso).

- The files of (0) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files.
- The files of (1) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds `.sty` files.
- The files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (9) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be omitted.
- The files of (7) and (8) must be installed as on-line documentation.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using `minitoc` (with `hyperref`).

# Chapter 8

## Postface

### Contents

|      |                         |     |
|------|-------------------------|-----|
| 8.1  | The origins             | 219 |
| 8.2  | New design in 1993      | 220 |
| 8.3  | Developments in 1994    | 220 |
| 8.4  | No developments in 1995 | 221 |
| 8.5  | Developments en 1996    | 221 |
| 8.6  | Developments in 1997    | 221 |
| 8.7  | Developments in 1998    | 221 |
| 8.8  | Developments in 1999    | 221 |
| 8.9  | Developments in 2000    | 222 |
| 8.10 | Developments in 2001    | 222 |
| 8.11 | Developments in 2002    | 222 |
| 8.12 | Developments in 2003    | 222 |
| 8.13 | Developments in 2004    | 223 |
| 8.14 | Developments in 2005    | 223 |
| 8.15 | Developments in 2006    | 225 |

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the `minitoc` package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 524. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

### 8.1 The origins

The `minitoc` package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But `minitoc` suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

No room for a new `\write`.

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: `minitoc` used a `\newwrite` command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under  $\LaTeX$  (in fact, by the underlying  $\TeX$  program itself). As some descriptors are already used by  $\LaTeX$ , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

## 8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (`minitocoff` at this time) package and a rewrite of `minitoc` to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

## 8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the formatting of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ , replacing the ageing  $\LaTeX 2.09$ , some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *minitoc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [35, 36], by Johannes BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, with avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

## 8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with an other project.

## 8.5 Developments en 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectionning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectionning commands continues.

The `minitocoff` companion package is renamed `mtcoff` to keep its name short.

## 8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for files names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectionning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` commande is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

## 8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

## 8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

## 8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [196], and I must thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA and Bernd JAEHNE.

Some corrections about the starred sectioning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectioning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [230] is documented.

Aliases for some languages are added.

## 8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

## 8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

## 8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [9] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [234, 235].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [8].

## 8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the .mld files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [229].

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

## 8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the  $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (insection package, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about coherence of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [228].

The `minitoc` package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (`sectsty` package [168], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [180] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [234, 235].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files, which can be removed after the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir` used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [208].



Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

## 8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “\*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [180], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [110]).

Added `mtcmess.sty` to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

Added a hint about the `fncychap` package [159].

Added a hint about the `quotchap` package [212].

Added a hint about the `romannum` package [236].

Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package [161].

Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package [141].

Added a hint about the `captcont` package [91].

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 82.

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

# Acknowledgments

I need to thank the following peoples<sup>1</sup>, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups<sup>2</sup>, and/or for their packages, classes and documents:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Alex AJ, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Donald ARSENEAU, David ASPINALL, Gonvcal BADENES, Philipp BACHMANN, Marin BALGARENSKY, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Claudio BECCARI, Emmanuel BEFFARA, József BÉRCES, Karl BERRY, Javier BEZOS, Árpád BÍRÓ, Giuseppe BILOTTA, Denis BITOUZÉ, Laurent BLOCH, Georgi BOSNAKOV, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Victor BOYKO, Johannes BRAAMS, Mustafa BURC, Olivier CARDI, David CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, David CARELLA, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, CHANOPD Silpa-Anan, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jana CHLEBIKOVA, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Serguei DACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Dorjpalam DORJ, Lyndon DUDGING, Marko ÈEHAJA, Victor EIJKHOUT, Behdad ESFAHDOD, Thomas ESSER, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Jeff FESSLER, Ulrike FISCHER, Daniel FLIPO, Jim FOX, Diego GARCIA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Mohammad GHODSI, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, Norman GRAY, Loïc GRENON, Sébastien GROT, Marion GUNN, Hans HAGEN, Boumediene HAMZI, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Alexander HARIN, Danny HEAP, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Haavard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Dave W. HUSEBY, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Youssef JABRI, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANISH, Regnor JERNSLETTEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSEN, Robert JUHASZ, JUNGSHIK Shin, Dan JURAFSKY, Mikko KANERVA, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Jörg KNAPPEN, KOAUNGHU Un, Markus KOHM, Attila KOPPANYI, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Markus G KUHN, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Toshiki KUMAZAWA, Frank KÜSTER, Klaus LAGALLY, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Pierre LOBEL, Milos LOKAJICEK, Maurizio LORETI,

---

<sup>1</sup> And I apologize to whose I forgot.

<sup>2</sup> Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well).

Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Dan LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina MAKHOVAYA, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Terry MART, Ruiz-Altaba MARTI, Vadim MASLOV, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben McKAY, Sébastien MENGIN, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACH, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAOUMOV, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Mariusz OLKO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Alan Paić, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Oren PATASHNIK, Matthias PELGER, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Bruno PIGUET, John PLAICE, POONLAP Veerathanabutr, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, CV RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, Tony ROBERTS, Denis ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Jan Michel RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SANCHEZ, Elmar SCHALUECK, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Martin SCHRÖDER, Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij SHVAIKA, Janković SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Arjen STEINER, D.P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, SURAPANT Meknavin, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Dung TA QUANG, Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Hàn Thế THÀNH, THEPPITAK Karoonboonyanan, Karsten TINNEFELD, Sigitas TOLUSIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE, Vincent VAQUIN, Didier Verna, Sylvain VESCO, Alexandre VIAL, Vladimir VOLOVITCH, Zdeněk WAGNER, Nigel WARD, Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Peter R. WILSON, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Dominik WUJASTYK, Tim WRIGHT, Damien WYART, C.S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.

## **Part II**

# **Implementation**

## Contents of the Second Part

---

|           |                                                                                         |            |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code></b>                                       | <b>231</b> |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Commented code of <code>mtcoff.sty</code></b>                                        | <b>396</b> |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Commented code of <code>mtcmess.sty</code></b>                                       | <b>410</b> |
| <b>12</b> | <b>Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class</b>                                          | <b>411</b> |
| <b>13</b> | <b>The language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files</b> | <b>413</b> |

---

## Chapter 9

# Commented code of `minitoc.sty`

### Contents

|             |                                                                                |            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>9.1</b>  | <b>Introduction</b>                                                            | <b>234</b> |
| <b>9.2</b>  | <b>Identification code</b>                                                     | <b>235</b> |
| <b>9.3</b>  | <b>A file descriptor to write</b>                                              | <b>235</b> |
| <b>9.4</b>  | <b>Indentation and skip</b>                                                    | <b>235</b> |
| <b>9.5</b>  | <b>Tests and flags</b>                                                         | <b>236</b> |
| 9.5.1       | Flags for the <code>hints</code> option                                        | 236        |
| 9.5.2       | Use of section-level mini-lists of floats                                      | 237        |
| 9.5.3       | Presence of some packages and classes                                          | 237        |
| 9.5.4       | Presence or absence of some sectioning commands                                | 238        |
| 9.5.5       | Flags to check if some commands are used                                       | 239        |
| 9.5.6       | Check if the document has exactly 2 parts                                      | 240        |
| <b>9.6</b>  | <b>Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option</b>                       | <b>241</b> |
| <b>9.7</b>  | <b>Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options</b> | <b>241</b> |
| <b>9.8</b>  | <b>Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code></b>                          | <b>241</b> |
| <b>9.9</b>  | <b>Checking the presence of some packages</b>                                  | <b>242</b> |
| 9.9.1       | Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when                  | 242        |
| 9.9.2       | Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 242        |
| 9.9.3       | Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 242        |
| 9.9.4       | Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 242        |
| 9.9.5       | Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 243        |
| 9.9.6       | Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when                | 243        |
| 9.9.7       | Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 243        |
| 9.9.8       | Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 243        |
| 9.9.9       | Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when                  | 244        |
| 9.9.10      | Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 244        |
| 9.9.11      | Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 244        |
| 9.9.12      | Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when                 | 244        |
| <b>9.10</b> | <b>Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?</b>                                | <b>245</b> |
| <b>9.11</b> | <b>Testing the emptiness of a file</b>                                         | <b>245</b> |
| <b>9.12</b> | <b>Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters</b>              | <b>247</b> |
| <b>9.13</b> | <b>Patching the <code>\part</code> command</b>                                 | <b>247</b> |
| <b>9.14</b> | <b>Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part</b>                           | <b>248</b> |
| <b>9.15</b> | <b>Section level macros</b>                                                    | <b>248</b> |

|        |                                                                                                       |     |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.16   | Corrections for numbering                                                                             | 249 |
| 9.17   | Patching the <code>\section</code> command                                                            | 249 |
| 9.18   | Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section                                                      | 249 |
| 9.19   | Chapter level macros                                                                                  | 250 |
| 9.20   | Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command                                                            | 250 |
| 9.21   | Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter                                                      | 250 |
| 9.22   | Miscellaneous declarations                                                                            | 251 |
| 9.23   | Autoconfiguration of extensions                                                                       | 252 |
| 9.24   | Detecting obsolete versions of $\LaTeX$                                                               | 253 |
| 9.25   | A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers                                          | 253 |
| 9.26   | Default values for the page-number customizations                                                     | 254 |
| 9.27   | “Features” for the mini-tables                                                                        | 256 |
| 9.28   | Fake tables of contents                                                                               | 259 |
| 9.29   | Depth counters for minilofs and minilots                                                              | 259 |
| 9.30   | Chapter level commands                                                                                | 260 |
| 9.31   | Starred parts, chapters or sections                                                                   | 260 |
| 9.32   | Font commands for the mini-tables                                                                     | 261 |
| 9.33   | Internal commands to position the mini-table titles                                                   | 262 |
| 9.34   | The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment                                                                | 263 |
| 9.35   | The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands                | 263 |
| 9.35.1 | The <code>\minitoc</code> command                                                                     | 263 |
| 9.35.2 | The <code>\minilof</code> command                                                                     | 266 |
| 9.35.3 | The <code>\minilot</code> command                                                                     | 269 |
| 9.36   | Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued                                                 | 272 |
| 9.37   | The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands                                                              | 273 |
| 9.38   | TOC entries without leaders                                                                           | 273 |
| 9.39   | Mini-tables with or without leaders                                                                   | 274 |
| 9.40   | The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings                                                  | 275 |
| 9.40.1 | Analysis and splitting of the TOC file                                                                | 278 |
| 9.41   | Mini-lists of figures                                                                                 | 282 |
| 9.41.1 | Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file                                                    | 282 |
| 9.42   | Mini-lists of tables                                                                                  | 284 |
| 9.42.1 | Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file                                                     | 285 |
| 9.43   | Macro to write a contents line                                                                        | 287 |
| 9.44   | Depth counters for partlofs and partlots                                                              | 288 |
| 9.45   | Part level commands                                                                                   | 289 |
| 9.46   | Fonts for the parttocs                                                                                | 289 |
| 9.47   | Default titles for part-level mini-tables                                                             | 290 |
| 9.48   | The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment                                                                | 292 |
| 9.49   | The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code> | 293 |
| 9.49.1 | The <code>\parttoc</code> command                                                                     | 293 |
| 9.49.2 | The <code>\partlof</code> command                                                                     | 296 |
| 9.49.3 | The <code>\partlot</code> command                                                                     | 299 |
| 9.50   | Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs                                                              | 301 |
| 9.51   | Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued                                                    | 302 |
| 9.52   | The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings                                                  | 302 |
| 9.52.1 | Processing macros for the parttocs                                                                    | 304 |
| 9.52.2 | Processing macros for the partlofs                                                                    | 308 |
| 9.52.3 | Processing macros for the partlots                                                                    | 310 |
| 9.53   | Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots                                                              | 313 |
| 9.54   | Section-level commands                                                                                | 313 |
| 9.55   | Fonts commands for secttocs and co.                                                                   | 314 |
| 9.56   | Internal macros for title positionning                                                                | 314 |



|             |                                                       |            |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>9.57</b> | <b>The stc@verse environment</b>                      | <b>315</b> |
| <b>9.58</b> | <b>The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands</b>  | <b>315</b> |
| 9.58.1      | The \secttoc command                                  | 315        |
| 9.58.2      | The \sectlof command                                  | 318        |
| 9.58.3      | The \sectlot command                                  | 321        |
| <b>9.59</b> | <b>Auxiliary internal commands, section level</b>     | <b>323</b> |
| <b>9.60</b> | <b>Patching the \section command (continued)</b>      | <b>324</b> |
| <b>9.61</b> | <b>The \dosecttoc command and siblings</b>            | <b>325</b> |
| <b>9.62</b> | <b>End of section-level commands</b>                  | <b>334</b> |
| <b>9.63</b> | <b>The \mtcprepare command</b>                        | <b>335</b> |
| <b>9.64</b> | <b>Necessary \l@... commands</b>                      | <b>335</b> |
| <b>9.65</b> | <b>The horizontal rules and their default values</b>  | <b>336</b> |
| <b>9.66</b> | <b>The \mtcset... commands</b>                        | <b>336</b> |
| 9.66.1      | Keywords for the \mtcset... commands                  | 337        |
| 9.66.2      | The \mtcsetfont command                               | 338        |
| 9.66.3      | The \mtcsettitlefont command                          | 342        |
| 9.66.4      | The \mtcsettitle command                              | 343        |
| 9.66.5      | The \mtcsetformat command                             | 345        |
| 9.66.6      | The \mtcsetpagenumbers command                        | 349        |
| 9.66.7      | The \mtcsetrules command                              | 351        |
| 9.66.8      | The \mtcsetfeature command                            | 353        |
| 9.66.9      | The \mtcsetdepth command                              | 356        |
| <b>9.67</b> | <b>The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings</b>  | <b>357</b> |
| <b>9.68</b> | <b>Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC</b>         | <b>359</b> |
| <b>9.69</b> | <b>Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC</b>            | <b>360</b> |
| <b>9.70</b> | <b>The \mtcselectlanguage command</b>                 | <b>362</b> |
| <b>9.71</b> | <b>The \mtcloadmlo internal command</b>               | <b>362</b> |
| <b>9.72</b> | <b>The “coffee breaks”</b>                            | <b>363</b> |
| <b>9.73</b> | <b>Initialization of counters</b>                     | <b>363</b> |
| <b>9.74</b> | <b>Declarations for simple options</b>                | <b>363</b> |
| 9.74.1      | Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose          | 363        |
| 9.74.2      | Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles                   | 364        |
| 9.74.3      | Options dotted and undotted                           | 364        |
| 9.74.4      | Option notoccite                                      | 364        |
| 9.74.5      | Option shorttext                                      | 364        |
| <b>9.75</b> | <b>The insection option</b>                           | <b>364</b> |
| <b>9.76</b> | <b>The listfiles and nolistfiles options</b>          | <b>365</b> |
| <b>9.77</b> | <b>Language options</b>                               | <b>365</b> |
| <b>9.78</b> | <b>The hints option</b>                               | <b>369</b> |
| 9.78.1      | First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc                       | 369        |
| 9.78.1.1    | Hint about the alphanum package                       | 369        |
| 9.78.1.2    | Hint about the appendix package                       | 370        |
| 9.78.1.3    | Hint about the tocbibind package                      | 370        |
| 9.78.1.4    | Hint about the KOMA-Script classes                    | 370        |
| 9.78.1.5    | Hint about the tocloft package                        | 371        |
| 9.78.1.6    | Hint about the titletoc package                       | 371        |
| 9.78.1.7    | Hint about the placeins package                       | 371        |
| 9.78.1.8    | Hint about the memoir class                           | 373        |
| 9.78.1.9    | Hint about the amsart and amspdoc classes             | 373        |
| 9.78.1.10   | Hint about the amsbook class                          | 373        |
| 9.78.1.11   | Hint about the abstract package                       | 373        |
| 9.78.1.12   | Hint about the jura class                             | 374        |
| 9.78.1.13   | Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands | 374        |
| 9.78.1.13.1 | Alteration of \part                                   | 374        |

|                                                                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>                                      | 375        |
| 9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of <code>\section</code>                                      | 375        |
| 9.78.1.14 Hint about the coherence of the calling sequences of some commands         | 376        |
| 9.78.2 Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>                                    | 377        |
| 9.78.2.1 Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option | 377        |
| 9.78.2.2 Final part of the coherence tests                                           | 377        |
| 9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)                    | 379        |
| 9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)                   | 381        |
| 9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions                | 383        |
| 9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package               | 384        |
| 9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package              | 384        |
| 9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package              | 385        |
| 9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package              | 385        |
| 9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package             | 385        |
| 9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package            | 386        |
| 9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package             | 386        |
| 9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package             | 386        |
| 9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package              | 387        |
| 9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package             | 387        |
| 9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package             | 387        |
| 9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package             | 388        |
| 9.78.2.18 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected                              | 388        |
| 9.78.2.19 Check if obsolete commands have been used                                  | 390        |
| 9.78.2.20 Check if some hints have been written                                      | 390        |
| <b>9.79 Processing of options</b>                                                    | <b>391</b> |
| 9.79.1 Processing the <code>insection</code> option                                  | 392        |
| 9.79.2 Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option                                  | 392        |
| 9.79.3 Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option                                  | 392        |
| 9.79.4 Processing the <code>hints</code> option                                      | 393        |
| 9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands                                               | 394        |
| <b>9.80 The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file</b>                                       | <b>394</b> |

## Figures

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.1 Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions | 252 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|

## 9.1 Introduction

This long chapter presents the code of the `minitoc` package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file<sup>1</sup> are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

<sup>1</sup> The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

Most of the `minitoc` external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the `minitoc` internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

## 9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
1 (*minitoc)

\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
\ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
\mtcPackageInfo{2006/09/13 v48 Package minitoc (JPFD)}
\RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
\mtcPackageInfo[<I0001>]{minitoc}%
7 {*** minitoc package, version 48 ***\@gobble}
```

This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is written in the `.log` file. This package will not work with `LaTeX 2.09`.

## 9.3 A file descriptor to write

```
\tf@mtc
\newwrite
8 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is `\tf@mtc`.

## 9.4 Indentation and skip

```
\mtcindent
\mtcskip
\mtcskipamount
\parskip
9 \newlength\mtcindent
10 \newskip\mtcskipamount
11 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
12 % %%%\def\mtcskip{\leavevmode\unskip\removelastskip%
13 % %%%\def\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}
14 \def\mtcskip{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}
```

We define the indentation `\mtcindent` (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command `\mtcskip` to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is `\mtcskipamount` (default: `\bigskipamount`).

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
\mtcgapafterheads

15 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
16 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

\@ifundefined We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
\kernafterparttoc names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
\kernafterpartlof \renewcommand.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 17 \ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 18 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 19 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 20 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 21 }%
\kernafterminilot 22 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
23 \ifundefined{section}{}%
24 }%
25 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
26 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
27 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
28 }%
29 }%
30 }%
31 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
32 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
33 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
34 }%

```

## 9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags<sup>2</sup> (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.78 on page 369) or to allow the definition of some `minitoc` commands).

```

\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

```

### 9.5.1 Flags for the `hints` option

But first, we define some flags for the `hints` option:

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).

<sup>2</sup> Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native  $\text{\TeX}$  engine (much more with  $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$ , but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure than a code programmed with counters,  $\text{\imho}$ .

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `.log` file.

```

35 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
36 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
37 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false

```

## 9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```

\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot
38 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false

```

## 9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```

\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ a recent version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc). We do
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ the same for some caption-related packages and the varsects package and others package
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ altering the sectionning commands.
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ 39 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ 40 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 41 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 42 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 43 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 44 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 45 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 46 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ 47 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ 48 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 49 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 50 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 51 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 52 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 53 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ 54 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 55 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 56 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 57 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 58 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ 59 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ 60 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
61 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false

```

```

62 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
63 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false
64 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
65 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:  
 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@  
 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 66 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 67 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 68 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 69 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 70 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 71 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 72 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false  
 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 73 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false  
 74 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

### 9.5.4 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

\if@mtc@part@def@ The part counter:

```

75 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
76 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ The chapter counter:

```

77 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
78 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ The section counter:

```

79 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
80 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}

```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

\if@mtc@part@undef@ The part counter:

```

81 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
82 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}

```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
83 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
84 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
85 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
86 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

### 9.5.5 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.78 on page 369).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

```
\if@partlof@used@
\if@partlot@used@ 87 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false
\if@doparttoc@used@ 88 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false
\if@dopartlof@used@ 89 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false
\if@dopartlot@used@ 90 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false
91 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false
92 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false
```

`\if@minitoc@used@` For the chapter level:

```
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 93 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 94 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 95 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 96 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
97 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
98 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false
```

`\if@secttoc@used@` For the section level:

```
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 99 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 100 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 101 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 102 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
103 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
104 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false
```

```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 105 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
106 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
107 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

### 9.5.6 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
108 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:  
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

109 \AtBeginDocument{%
110 \ifmtcsecondpart
111 \global\mtcsecondparttrue
112 \else
113 \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
114 \fi}

```

`\AtEndDocument` At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:  
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

\\@mainaux 115 \AtEndDocument{%
116 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
117 \mtcsecondparttrue
118 \else
119 \mtcsecondpartfalse
120 \fi
121 \if@files
122 \ifmtcsecondpart
123 \immediate\write\@mainaux
124 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%
125 \else
126 \immediate\write\@mainaux
127 {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
128 \fi
129 \fi}

```

So we need two  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.60 on page 445) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 84.



## 9.6 Preparation for the notoccite option

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command (redefinable command) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`, used by this option (this has been requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [8]). See section 1.6 on page 47.

`\if@mtc@notoccite@`

```
130 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
131 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
132 {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}%
```

## 9.7 Preparation for the tight and k-tight options

`\iftightmtc` We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and `\ifktightmtc` k-loose options):

```
133 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
134 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
```

## 9.8 Preparation to work with hyperref

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the hyperref package [196]. A flag is defined, then this preparation is performed in a `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This action defines some commands for the hyperref package.

`\if@mtc@hyper@used@`

`\@ifpackageloaded`

```
135 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0005>]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
136 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
137 \AtBeginDocument{%
138 \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
139 \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
140 \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%
141 \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
142 \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
143 \def\toclevel@xsection{1000}%
144 \let\toclevel@starpert\toclevel@part
145 \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
146 \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
147 \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
148 \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
149 \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
150 \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
151 }{}}
```

## 9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

### 9.9.1 Check if the `sectsty` package is loaded, and when

`\AtBeginDocument` We must test if the `sectsty` package [168] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.6 on page 384.

```

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
 \ifpackageloaded
152 \ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}
153 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 9.9.2 Check if the `varsects` package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the `varsects` package [208] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.7 on page 384.

```

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
154 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
155 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 9.9.3 Check if the `fncychap` package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the `fncychap` package [159] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.8 on page 385.

```

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
156 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}
157 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 9.9.4 Check if the `quotchap` package is loaded, and when

`\@ifpackageloaded` We must test if the `quotchap` package [212] is loaded before or after `minitoc`, so we test when `minitoc` is loaded and also in a `\AtBeginDocument` block, when all packages have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.9 on page 385.

```

\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
158 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}
159 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}}
```

### 9.9.5 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [236] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.10 on page 385.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

160 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}
161 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

### 9.9.6 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [161] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.11 on page 386.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

162 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}
163 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

### 9.9.7 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [141] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.12 on page 386.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

164 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}
165 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

### 9.9.8 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [91] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.13 on page 386.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

166 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}
167 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

### 9.9.9 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
We must test if the caption package [204] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
loaded. See section 9.78.2.14 on page 387.
168 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}
169 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.10 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
We must test if the caption2 package [203] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
been loaded. See section 9.78.2.15 on page 387.
170 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}
171 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.11 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
We must test if the ccaption package [232] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
been loaded. See section 9.78.2.16 on page 387.
172 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}
173 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.12 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded
\AtBeginDocument
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
We must test if the mcaption package [122] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
been loaded. See section 9.78.2.17 on page 388.
174 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}
175 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

## 9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

`\ifclassloaded` We test if the memoir [234, 235] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility adjustments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see chapter 12 on page 411). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.cls.

```

176 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
177 \ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
178 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0030>]{minitoc}%
179 {the memoir class is loaded:\MessageBreak
180 compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
181 {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
182 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
183 \ifundefined{@mchapter}%
184 {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[<I0020>]{minitoc}%
185 {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
186 {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[<I0027>]{minitoc}%
187 {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
188 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0032>]{minitoc}%
189 {This version of the memoir class uses \MessageBreak
190 a version of \string\chapter\space which is \MessageBreak
191 incompatible with the minitoc package. \MessageBreak
192 We try to patch\@gobble}%
193 \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
194 \fi

```

`\if@mtcpatchmemoir@` And now the patch:

```

195 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
196 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
197 \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{}{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
198 \mtcPackage[<E0028>]{Error}{minitoc}
199 {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
200 {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
201 \fi

```

## 9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

`\mtc@ifmtarg` Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package `ifmtarg` [237], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from `while.tip`, by Stephan P. von BECHTOLSHEIM [223]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode change of “Q”, hence a `\gdef` is needed for `\mtc@ifmtarg`.

```

\mtc@xifmtarg
\mtc@EndWhile
\mtc@WhilePreCondition
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While
\mtc@WhileNext

```

202 \begingroup  
203 \catcode'\Q=3

```

204 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
205 \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
206 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
207 \endgroup
208 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
209 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
210 \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
211 \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
212 \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
213 \mtc@@While
214 }
215 \def\mtc@@While{%
216 \mtc@WhilePreCondition
217 \mtc@WhileCondition
218 \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
219 \mtc@WhileBody
220 \mtc@@While
221 }%
222 \else
223 \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
224 \fi
225 \mtc@WhileNext
226 }

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the file is not empty. An inexistent file is empty.

\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.

\mtc@While

\mtc@Body **Note:** on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an eternity (33 s for  $10^6$  lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.

\mtc@EndWhile

\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. It is erased after use.

\mtc@CkStr

\mtc@Rline

\tf@mtc

\@inputcheck

```

227 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
228 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
229 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
230 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to
231 \mtc@Rline\relax
232 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
233 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
234 \def\mtc@Rline{}
235 \else
236 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
237 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}%
238 {\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
239 \fi
240 }
241 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
242 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
243 \if@mtc@checkfiles
244 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
245 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
246 \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}%

```

```

247 {\mtc@Body}%
248 \mtc@EndWhile}%
249 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
250 \else
251 \@mtc@FEfalse%
252 \fi}
253 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
254 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
255 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
256 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
257 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
258 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
259 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
260 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

## 9.12 Internal macros to decrement mini toc counters

\mtc@onebackpart \mtc@onebackchapter \mtc@onebacksection

It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These macros are:

```

\addtocounter 261 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
262 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
263 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

## 9.13 Patching the \part command

\part \mtc@svspart \mtc@svpart \@spart \@part

If the \part command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed<sup>3</sup>. Else, we patch its two branches, \@part (for the unstarred version) or \@spart (for the starred version, \part\*): we add \stepcounter{ptc} to increment the parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 302.

\stepcounter

The code of the next section (section 9.14 on the following page) is also skipped if \part is not defined.

```

264 \@ifundefined{part}{%
265 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0018>]{minitoc}%
266 {part level macros NOT available}
267 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
268 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0023>]{minitoc}%
269 {part level macros available\@gobble}
270 \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
271 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}

```

<sup>3</sup> Document classes with sectioning commands but no \part command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

```

272 \let\mtc@svpart\@part
273 \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

## 9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.

`\mtc@ifmtarg`

`\contentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}` line in the .toc file. We always add a `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the ptc counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 289). Using `xpart` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

`\l@xpart`

`\l@part`

```

274 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
275 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
276 {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
277 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
278 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}%
279 \adjustptc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```

280 }%

```

## 9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the `minitoc` package with the class of your document.

`\section`

```

281 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0004>]{minitoc}%
282 {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
283 \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0029>]{minitoc}%
284 {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
285 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0017>]{minitoc}%
286 {no section or chapter level macros available
287 \MessageBreak
288 PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
289 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0028>]{minitoc}%

```



```
290 {section level macros available\@gobble}%
```

## 9.16 Corrections for numbering

```
\mtc@onebacksect As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement
\tableofcontents the secttoc counter (stc) via \mtc@onebacksect when the corresponding commands are
\listoffigures executed. Hence we patch these commands.
\listoftables
\mtcsv@tableofcontents 291 \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 292 \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 293 \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
294 \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
295 \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
296 \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}
```

## 9.17 Patching the \section command

```
\mtc@svsection If the \section command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it
\mtc@svss and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, \@sect (for the unstarred version)
\@ssect or \@ssect (for the starred version, \section*): we add \stepcounter{stc} to increment
\@sect the secttoc counter stc, only in the unstarred case (the version #25 has removed a spurious
\section decrementation of this counter).
\stepcounter
297 \let\mtc@svsection\section
298 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
299 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect
```

## 9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

```
\mtcaddsection To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the \mtcaddsection macro,
\mtc@ifmtarg which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC.
\contentsline By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via \mtc@ifmtarg) or omitted,
\adjuststc we add a \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we
\l@xsect add a \contentsline{section}{title...}... line in the .toc file. We always add a
\l@xsection \contentsline{xsect}{}... line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the
\l@section stc counter, via \adjuststc (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 313). Using
xsect as first argument of \contentsline means that \l@xsect will be invoked in place
of \l@section to print the entry in the TOC, but \l@xsect uses a huge depth (10 000) for
this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).
```

```

300 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\]{%
301 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
302 {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
303 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}}%
304 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}}%
305 \adjuststc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```

306 }}%
307 {%

```

## 9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`.

```

308 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0003>]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}

```

## 9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\mtc@svchapter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 272).

`\stepcounter`

```

309 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter
310 \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}

```

## 9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we `\adjustmtc` add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xchapter` `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment `\l@chapter`

the mtc counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 260). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```

311 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\relax]{%
312 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}{%
313 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
314 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
315 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
316 \adjustmtc}

```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\@ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 248.

```

317 }%

```

## 9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

|                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \newread \mtc@toks \mtc@string \mtc@strut \mtc@strutbox \mtc@hstrut \mtc@hstrutbox \mtc@v \mtc@zrule \mtc@BBR </pre> | <p>The <code>\newread</code> command must be redeclared as being <code>\outer</code> (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).</p> <p>We need a token register (<code>\mtc@toks</code>), a temporary string (<code>\mtc@string</code>), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (<code>\mtc@zrule</code>) and a command discouraging page breaks (<code>\mtc@BBR</code>, for “bad break”).</p> <p>For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to follow the current font.</p> <pre> 318 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n} 319 \newtoks\mtc@toks 320 \def\mtc@string{\relax} 321 \newbox\mtc@strutbox 322 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}} 323 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox 324   \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi} 325 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox 326 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}} 327 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox 328   \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi} 329 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut} 330 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}} 331 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]} </pre> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

| Phase (time runs from left to right): |                              | 1    | 2     | 3 |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|------|-------|---|
| OS with long extensions               | <code>\jobname.mtc1</code>   | TRUE | TRUE  | * |
|                                       | <code>\jobname.mtc</code>    |      | FALSE |   |
| OS with short extensions              | <code>\jobname.mtc(1)</code> | TRUE | FALSE | * |

Figure 9.1: Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions

## 9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a hack to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files<sup>4</sup>. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the `.log` file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The figure 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (\*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

```
\if@longextensions@ (0) First, a message and a new flag:
\tf@mtc
\openout 332 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0002>]{minitoc}%
\write 333 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
\closeout 334 \newif\if@longextensions@\@longextensions@false
\input (1) We write "\@longextensions@true" in \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short
\jobname extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

335 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
336 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@true}
337 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(2) We write "\@longextensions@false" in \jobname.mtc.

338 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
339 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@false}
340 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

(3) We read \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
be truncated to \jobname.mtc.

341 \input{\jobname.mtc1}
```

<sup>4</sup> It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the `minitoc` package. All files written by `minitoc` use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the `.log` file. In fact, `minitoc` writes also in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that `minitoc` itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (T<sub>E</sub>X offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As `minitoc` writes into only one file at a time (and in the `.log` file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The `minitoc` package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectioning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, `\dots`, `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

- (4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from `\jobname.mtc1`, but false if we read from `\jobname.mtc`. The text and the severity of the messages are different.

```

342 \if@longextensions@
343 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0012>]{minitoc}%
344 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used\@gobble}
345 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0031>]{minitoc}%
346 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like \MessageBreak
347 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names\@gobble}%
348 \else
349 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0019>]{minitoc}%
350 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used\MessageBreak
351 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like \MessageBreak
352 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
353 \fi

```

- (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because `\jobname.mtc` is also used later as a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 245).

```

354 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
355 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
356 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
357 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

## 9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

`\@inputcheck`    This code detects old versions of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands, `\@inputcheck` and `\reset@font`. If you get one of these messages, your

`\reset@font`    are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X installation, which is rusting since... many years!



```

358 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
359 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0021>]{minitoc}%
360 {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.\MessageBreak
361 Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
362 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
363 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0022>]{minitoc}%
364 {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.\MessageBreak
365 Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
366 \let\reset@font\relax}{}

```

## 9.25 A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

`\@undottedtocline`    The (internal) macro `\@undottedtocline` is a modified version of the standard command

`\ifundottedmtc`    `\@dottedtocline`. It will be used in customization macros.

`\undottedmtcfalse`

```

367 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
368 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
369 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
370 \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
371 {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
372 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
373 \interlinepenalty\@M
374 \leavevmode
375 \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
376 \hskip -\leftskip
377 #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
378 \null\par}%
379 \fi}

```

## 9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [234, 235] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```

380 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
381 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
382 \cftpagenumberon{section}
383 \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
384 \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
385 \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
386 \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
387 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
388 \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
389 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
390 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
391 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
392 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
393 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
394 \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
395 \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
396 \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
397 \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
398 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
399 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}

```

```

400 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
401 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
402 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:  
\noptcpagenumbers

```

403 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
404 \cftpagenumberson{chapter}
405 \cftpagenumberson{section}
406 \cftpagenumberson{subsection}
407 \cftpagenumberson{subsubsection}
408 \cftpagenumberson{paragraph}
409 \cftpagenumberson{subparagraph}}
410 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
411 \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
412 \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
413 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
414 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
415 \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
416 \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:

```

\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 417 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 418 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 419 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 420 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
421 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{figure}}
422 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

```

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:

```

\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 423 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 424 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 425 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 426 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
427 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberson{table}}
428 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```

429 \else

```

```

\mtcpagenumbers First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 430 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 431 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 432 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 433 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
434 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
435 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mlfpagenumbers Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 436 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 437 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 438 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 439 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
440 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
441 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 442 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 443 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 444 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 445 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
446 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
447 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
448 \fi

```

```

\ptcpagenumbers Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 449 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 450 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 451 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 452 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 453 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 454 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 455 \stcpagenumbers
456 \slfpagenumbers
457 \sltpagenumbers

```

## 9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has three “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature and a “thispagestyle” feature.



A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each parttoc. Usually such features contains only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

A “thispagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “thispagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “thispagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as `article`-like documents are different from the `book`- or `report`-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 458 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 459 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
 460 \let\beforepartlof\empty
 461 \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```

462 {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
463 \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
464 \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

```

\beforeinitoc Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 465 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
 466 \let\beforeminilof\empty
 467 \let\beforeminilot\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 468 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
 469 \let\beforesectlof\empty
 470 \let\beforesectlot\empty

```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof 471 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 472 \let\afterparttoc\empty
 473 \let\afterpartlof\empty
 474 \let\afterpartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```

475 {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
476 \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
477 \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}

```

`\afterminitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\afterminilof
\afterminilot 478 \let\afterminitoc\empty
 479 \let\afterminilof\empty
 480 \let\afterminilot\empty

```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```

\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot 481 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
 482 \let\aftersectlof\empty
 483 \let\aftersectlot\empty

```

`\thispagestyle` By default, all the “thispagestyle” features (at part level) use the `empty` page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If `\chapter` is not defined, there is no default “thispagestyle” features at the part level.

```

\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofstyle
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageminitocstyle 484 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 485 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 486 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 487 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofstyle 488 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 489 \def\thispagepartlofstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
 490 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}}
 491 \def\thispageminitocstyle{\empty}
 492 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
 493 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
 494 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
 495 \def\thispagesectlofstyle{\empty}
 496 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.66.8 on page 353, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

## 9.28 Fake tables of contents

`\faketableofcontents` If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, without inserting it into your document. This `\faketableofcontents` command is a stripped off version of the standard command `\tableofcontents`. We define in the same way the analog commands `\fakelistoffigures` and `\fakelistoftables`, using in fact just a stripped version `\fake@starttoc` of `\starttoc`. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and stc counters now, if they are defined<sup>5</sup>.

```

497 \def\faketableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
498 \ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
499 \ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
500 \ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
501 }
502 \def\fakelistoffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
503 \def\fakelistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
504 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup
505 \makeatletter
506 \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
507 \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
508 \jobname.#1\relax
509 \fi
510 \global\@nobreakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

## 9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the necessary new counters: `\c@lofdepth` `minilofdepth` and `minilofdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

511 \AtBeginDocument{%
512 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
513 {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
514 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
515 {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
516 }

```

---

<sup>5</sup> Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

### 9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

```
\mtc@markboth First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
\@mkboth
517 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
518 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

### 9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

```
\addst@rred We define commands to manage the starred sectionning commands: \part*, \chapter* and
\addcontentsline \section*. The section-level is different depending if \chapter is defined or not. Eventu-
\stepcounter ally, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the .toc file, with the right depth to
\c@ptc print it (see \l@star... later, in section 9.64 on page 335).
```

```
\c@mtc
\c@stc 519 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
520 \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
521 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{%
522 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
523 \stepcounter{ptc}%
524 \fi
525 }%
526 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{%
527 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
528 \stepcounter{mtc}%
529 \fi
530 }%
531 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{%
532 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
533 %% \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
534 \stepcounter{stc}%
535 \fi
536 }%
537 }%
```

```
\addstarredsection If \chapter is not defined, we just define \addstarredsection:
\chapter
\addst@rred 538 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
539 \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
540 }%
```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

541 {%

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
@if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\adjustmtc command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\decrementmtc mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\incrementmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\themtc

\columnwidth We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mtc@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlf@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\mlt@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plf@rule
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 542 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\slt@rule 543 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\mtcindent 544 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0003>]{minitoc}%
545 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete\MessageBreak command}%
546 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
547 \newcounter{mtc}
548 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
549 \newcommand{adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
550 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
551 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
552 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
553 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
554 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}
555 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
556 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
557 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule
558 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
559 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
560 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
561 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
562 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

## 9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

```

\mtcfont We define these commands with full NFSS [154] descriptions. These definitions are effective
\mtcSfont if \chapter is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the \mtcsetfont
\mtcSSfont macro (section 9.66.2 on page 338) and the \mtcsetttitlefont macro later (section 9.66.3 on
\mtcSSSfont page 342).
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 563 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 564 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 565 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont
\mltSfont
\mtifont

```

```

566 \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
567 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont
568 \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
569 \let\mlffont\mtcfont
570 \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
571 \let\mltfont\mtcfont
572 \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
573 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

`\coffeeont` And `\coffeeont` is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [158].

```

574 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}

```

### 9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized in `\df@mtitc`, `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro later (section 9.35.1 on the following page). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti 575 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti 576 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti 577 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
 578 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
 579 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 580 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 581 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 582 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 583 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt 584 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
 585 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

### 9.34 The mtc@verse environment

Each minitoc is placed inside a mtc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: `\mtc@verse` and `\endmtc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to `\mtcindent`. `\endmtc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\mtc@verse
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc
 \
 \list
 \itemsep
 \itemindent
\listparindent
 \topsep
 \parsep
\mtcindent
586 \def\mtc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
587 \list{ }\itemsep\z@
588 \itemindent \z@
589 \listparindent \itemindent
590 \partopsep\z@
591 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
592 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
593 \topsep=1ex
594 \leftmargin\mtcindent
595 \rightmargin\leftmargin}\item[]}
596 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

### 9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

#### 9.35.1 The \minitoc command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call  
`\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the  
`\ifnextchar` `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
597 \def\minitoc{\ifnextchar[{ \minitoc@}{\minitoc@d]}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 377).

```
598 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
599 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix  
`\if@longextensions` `\@tocfile`, which is `mtc` (long extensions) or `M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
600 \if@longextensions@
601 \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
602 \else
603 \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
604 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is  
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

```
605 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
606 \if@mtc@FE
607 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
608 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
609 \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
610 \else
```

`\thispageminicotstyle` We call `\thispageminicotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```
611 \thispageminicotstyle
612 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%
```



```

\beforeminitoc We call \beforeminitoc, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page
samepage breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
\do@mtitc corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules
\e@mti are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
\nc@mti top rule). The font is set to \mtcfont.
\c@mti
\l@mti 613 \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 614 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 615 \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 616 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\nc@mti
\mtctitle 617 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 618 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 619 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 620 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 621 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 622 \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 623 \raggedright
624 \parskip=\z@%
625 \reset@font\mtcfont%
626 \parindent=\z@%
627 \nopagebreak[4]%
628 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
629 \par\noindent %
630 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
631 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
632 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
633 \end{tabular}%
634 \else
635 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
636 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
637 \end{tabular}%
638 \fi

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
\mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 639 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
640 \leftmargin\mtcindent
641 \rightmargin\mtcindent
642 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
643 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
644 \begin{mtc@verse}%

\c@tocdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth
\c@minitocdepth (\c@minitocdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where
\\ tocdepth has been forced to minitocdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low
\mtc@BBR enough. then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```

```

645 \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
646 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the
\@dottedtocline minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by
\@undottedtocline Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [8]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile macro \mtc@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
\mtc@setform \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut
647 \begin{group}
648 \makeatletter
649 \ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
650 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
651 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
652 \mtc@setform%
653 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
654 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
655 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
656 \global\@nobreakfalse\end{group}

```

```

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminitoc. The blank line (\\) is
\\ essential.
samepage
\afterminitoc
657 \end{mtc@verse}%
658 \kernafterminitoc
659 \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
660 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule
661 \end{samepage}%
662 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}

```

```

\mtc@bottom@rule And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:
\mtc@rule
\columnwidth
663 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
664 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
665 \vskip -2.5ex
666 \rule[2.4p@]{\columnwidth}{.4p@}\vspace*{2.6p@}\fi}

```

### 9.35.2 The `\minilof` command

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command is very similar to the `\minitoc` command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic minilof).

`\chapter`

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
667 \def\minilof{\ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 377).

```
668 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
669 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is mlf (long extensions) or F (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```
670 \if@longextensions@%
671 \def\@tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
672 \else
673 \def\@tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
674 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```
675 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
676 \if@mtc@FE
677 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
678 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
679 \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
680 \else
```

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```
681 \thispageminilofstyle
682 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```
\l@mti 683 \beforeminilof
\r@mti 684 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 685 \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 686 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 687 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 688 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 689 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 690 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 691 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 692 \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 693 \raggedright
694 \parskip=\z@
695 \reset@font\mlffont
696 \parindent=\z@
697 \nopagebreak[4]%
698 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
699 \par\noindent
700 \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
701 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
702 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
703 \end{tabular}%
704 \else
705 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
706 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\\hline
707 \end{tabular}%
708 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 709 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
710 \leftmargin\mtcindent
711 \rightmargin\mtcindent
712 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
713 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
714 \begin{mtc@verse}%
```

`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth  
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where  
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low  
`\mtc@BBR` enough. then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
indentation.

```
715 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
716 {}%
717 {c@lofdepth=c@minilofdepth
718 \ifnumc@lofdepth<1\relaxc@lofdepth=1\fi}
719 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the  
`\@dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by  
`\@undottedtocline` Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some  
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 720 \begingroup
721 \makeatletter
722 \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
723 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
724 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
725 \mlf@setform
726 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
727 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
728 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
729 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),  
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilof`. The blank line (`\`) is  
`\` essential.

```
samepage
\afterminilof 730 \end{mtc@verse}%
731 \kernafterminilof
732 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
733 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
734 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi%
```

### 9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic minilot).  
`\chapter`

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call  
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the  
`\ifnextchar` `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
735 \def\minilot{\ifnextchar[{\minilot@}{\minilot@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 377).

```
736 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
737 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix  
`\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is mlt (long extensions) or T (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilot.

```
738 \if@longextensions@%
739 \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
740 \else
741 \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
742 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is  
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```
743 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
744 \if@mtc@FE
745 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
746 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
747 \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
748 \else
```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilot.

```
749 \thispageminilotstyle
750 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mltttitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

```
\c@mti
\l@mti 751 \beforeminilot
\r@mti 752 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 753 \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 754 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 755 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 756 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 757 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 758 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 759 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 760 \mtc@CkStr{\mltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 761 \raggedright
762 \parskip=\z@%
763 \reset@font\mltfont%
764 \parindent=\z@%
765 \nopagebreak[4]%
766 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
767 \par\noindent
768 \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
769 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
770 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
771 \end{tabular}%
772 \else
773 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
774 \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\\hline
775 \end{tabular}%
776 \fi
```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 777 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
778 \leftmargin\mtcindent
779 \rightmargin\mtcindent
780 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
781 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
782 \begin{mtc@verse}%
```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where `\c@minilotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low enough. then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```
783 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
784 {}%
785 {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
786 \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
787 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```
\mtc@pgno
\@dottedtocline
\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mlt@setform
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut
788 \begingroup
789 \makeatletter
790 \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
791 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
792 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
793 \mlt@setform
794 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
795 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
796 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
797 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break), then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\\`) is essential.

```
\\
samepage
\afterminilot
798 \end{mtc@verse}%
799 \kernafterminilot
800 \nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
801 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
802 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi%
```

### 9.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

`\l@xchapter` First, we define `\l@xchapter` which is like `\l@chapter`, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its printing (except if you cheat):

```
\l@chapter
\l@chapter
\l@chapter
\l@chapter
803 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
804 \def\l@xchapter{\l@chapter}
```



`\@chapter` Then we patch `\@chapter` (the non-starred branch of `\chapter`) to add pseudo-chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).

`\sv@chapter`

`\addcontentsline`

`\ignorespaces`

```

805 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
806 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[#1]{#2}\relax%
807 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
808 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
809 \ignorespaces}

```

`\mtc@schapter` We also patch `\@schapter` (the starred branch of `\chapter`) to add marks in the TOC to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to take slices from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as `\relax`, they should not perturbate other packages.

`\@schapter`

`\addtocontents`

`\chapterbegin`

`\chapterend`

```

810 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
811 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
812 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
813 \let\chapterbegin\relax
814 \let\chapterend\relax

```

### 9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

`\addstarredsection` If the command `\chapter` is undefined, we define the command `\addstarredsection` (only if `\section` is defined). If the command `\chapter` is defined, we define the command `\addstarredchapter`. If the command `\part` is defined, we define the command `\addstarredpart`. We use the utility command `\addst@rred` defined in section 9.31 on page 260.

`\chapter`

`\section`

`\part`

`\addst@rred`

```

815 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
816 {\@ifundefined{section}%
817 {}{\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
818 {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
819 \@ifundefined{part}%
820 {}{\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}

```

### 9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro `\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

821 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%

```

```

822 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
823 \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
824 {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
825 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
826 \interlinepenalty\@M
827 \leavevmode
828 \@tempdima #3\relax
829 \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
830 {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak
831 \nobreak\null
832 \par}%
833 \fi}

```

\@Undottedtoclinep The same but with the page number:  
 \coffeeont

```

834 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
835 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
836 \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
837 {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
838 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
839 \interlinepenalty\@M
840 \leavevmode
841 \@tempdima #3\relax
842 \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
843 {\#4}\nobreak
844 \hfill
845 \nobreak\null
846 \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
847 \par}%
848 \fi}

```

### 9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

\minitoc@ This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).  
 \minilof@ We alter the commands \minitoc@, \minilof@, etc., to test the flag \ifundottedmtc and,  
 \minilot@ if true, replace locally \@dottedtocline by its dotless version \@Undottedtoclinep.  
 \@dottedtocline Of course, we must also test the availability of the \chapter, \part and \section  
 \@Undottedtoclinep commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.  
 \sv@minitoc@  
 \sv@minilof@ 849 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%  
 \sv@minilot@ 850 \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@  
 851 \def\minitoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi  
 852 \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%  
 853 \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@  
 854 \def\minilof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi  
 855 \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%  
 856 \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@  
 857 \def\minilot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi

```

858 \sv@minilot@[#1]}}}

\sv@parttoc@ For the part level:
\sv@partlof@
\sv@partlot@ 859 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\ifundottedmtc 860 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@
 \parttoc@ 861 \def\parttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 \partlof@ 862 \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}%
 \partlot@ 863 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@
 864 \def\partlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 865 \sv@partlof@[#1]}}%
 866 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@
 867 \def\partlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 868 \sv@partlot@[#1]}}}

\sv@secttoc@ For the section level:
\sv@sectlof@
\sv@sectlot@ 869 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 870 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
 \secttoc@ 871 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@
 \sectlof@ 872 \def\secttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 \sectlot@ 873 \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}%
 874 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@
 875 \def\sectlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 876 \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}%
 877 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
 878 \def\sectlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
 879 \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}}}
```

## 9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course, very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

`\dominitoc` As `\dominitoc` has an optional argument, whose default value is “1” (left), it calls  
`\dominitoc@` `\dominitoc@` with a argument delimited by brackets.  
`\@@dominitoc`  
`\ifdominitoc@used@` The macros are `\dominitoc` (user interface), which calls `\dominitoc@[1]` (or with the  
optional argument of `\dominitoc`). Then `\dominitoc@[1]` processes its argument and  
calls `\@@dominitoc`. `\@@dominitoc` calls `\@dominitoc` (passing `\jobname` as argument)  
then close the minitoc file written. `\@dominitoc` reset to zero the counter of mini-tables,  
calls `\MTC@next#1.toc` (where #1 is the value of `\jobname`), then reset again to zero  
the counter of mini-tables. Each call to `\dominitoc@` (i.e., to `\dominitoc`) sets the flag  
`\@dominitoc@used@true`. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have  
correctly called `\minitoc after \dominitoc` and that both or neither have been called). See  
section 9.78.2.2 on page 377. The code is similar for `\dominilof` and `\dominilot`.

`\dominitoc` The `\dominitoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and create the minitocs  
`\@dominitoc` files, with the adequate extension.  
`\MTC@next`

```
880 \def\@dominitoc#1{%
881 \makeatletter
882 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
883 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
884 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dominitoc@}{\dominitoc@[1]}}
```

`\dominilof` The `\dominilof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and create the minilofs  
`\@dominilof` files, with the adequate extension.  
`\MLF@next`

```
885 \def\@dominilof#1{%
886 \makeatletter
887 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
888 \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
889 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

`\dominilot` The `\dominilot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and create the minilots  
`\@dominilot` files, with the adequate extension.  
`\MLT@next`

```
890 \def\@dominilot#1{%
891 \makeatletter
892 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
893 \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
894 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}
```

```

\if@dominitoc@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtitc 895 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
\@mti 896 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 897 \if@dominitoc@used@
\c@mti 898 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 899 {The \string\dominitoc \space command\MessageBreak
\r@mti 900 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\@dominitoc 901 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
902 \fi
903 \fi
904 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
905 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\@mti%
906 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
907 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
908 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
909 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
910 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
911 \@dominitoc}

```

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilf 912 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
\@mti 913 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 914 \if@dominilof@used@
\c@mti 915 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 916 {The \string\dominilof \space command\MessageBreak
\r@mti 917 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\@dominilof 918 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
919 \fi
920 \fi
921 \global\@dominilof@used@true
922 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\@mti%
923 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
924 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
925 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
926 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
927 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
928 \@dominilof}

```

```

\if@dominilot@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint
\if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\df@mtilt 929 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\@mti 930 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 931 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 932 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 933 {The \string\dominilot \space command\MessageBreak
\r@mti
\@dominilot

```

```

934 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
935 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
936 \fi
937 \fi
938 \global\@dominilot@used@true
939 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
940 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
941 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
942 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
943 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
944 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
945 \@@dominilot}

```

\@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file  
 \@@dominilof descriptor.  
 \@@dominilot

```

\tf@mtc 946 \def\@@dominitoc{\@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
 947 \def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
 948 \def\@@dominilot{\@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

### 9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros <sup>6</sup>:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 949 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
 950 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
 951 \MTC@loop{#1}%
 952 }

\MTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 953 \def\MTC@toc{%
 954 \ifx\MTC@list@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
 955 }

```

<sup>6</sup> This code is derived from the `xr` package [85], by David CARLISLE, with his permission. The strings “HO”, “DV”, and “BJ” in the comments denote modifications made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of `hyperref`, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the hyperlink argument in the contents lines.

```

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\arabic esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
\chapter but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 956 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0/BJ: 4 instead of 3 parameters
 957 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}% %%H0: space removed
 958 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
 959 \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\themtc it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname
\tf@mtc 960 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 961 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 962 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
 963 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
 964 \else
 965 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
 966 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
 967 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
 968 \fi
 969 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
 970 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
 971 \fi

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register \mtc@toks is used as a verbatim
 memory.

 972 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

\MTC@WriteContentsline Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with
\section the standard sectionning commands, below \chapter:
\subsection
\subsubsection 973 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
\paragraph 974 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 975 \fi
 976 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
 977 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
 978 \fi
 979 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
 980 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
 981 \fi
 982 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
 983 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
 984 \fi
 985 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
 986 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
 987 \fi

```

```

\coffee A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for \coffee:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
988 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
989 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
990 \fi

\starchapter If it is \starchapter (for a starred chapter), we increment the mtc counter, build a new
\stepcounter minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.
\if@longextensions@
\mtcname 991 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\themtc 992 \stepcounter{mtc}%
\tf@mtc 993 \if@longextensions@
\closeout 994 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 995 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
996 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
997 \else
998 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
999 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
1000 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
1001 \fi
1002 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1003 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
1004 \fi

\starsection For starred sectioning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 1005 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 1006 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 1007 \fi
1008 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
1009 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1010 \fi
1011 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
1012 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1013 \fi
1014 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
1015 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
1016 \fi
1017 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
1018 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1019 \fi
1020 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
\MTC@next process the first one:
\MTC@list
1021 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

```



\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
 \openin process the next entry in the list.

\@inputcheck

```
\MTC@toc 1022 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 1023 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1024 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0010>]{minitoc}%
1025 {No file #1.\MessageBreak MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
1026 \expandafter\MTC@toc
1027 \else
1028 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0024>]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
1029 \expandafter\MTC@read
1030 \fi
1031 }
```

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

\read

\@inputcheck 1032 \def\MTC@read{%

\MTC@line 1033 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

\MTC@test The . . . . . make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:

\MTC@line

```
\MTC@ 1034 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line. . . . \MTC% %%H0: . added
1035 }%
```

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit  
 \contentsline chapters:

\MTC@contentsline

```
\mtc@string 1036 %%H0/BJ: now patch \MTC@test,
\@input 1037 %%H0/BJ: call \MTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

\MTC@list

\chapterend Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add  
 \closeout the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process  
 \tf@mtc the next file in the list.

\openout

```
\chapterbegin 1038 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{% %%H0: #6 added
```

```
\addtocounter 1039 \ifx#1\contentsline
```

```
\MTC@toc 1040 \let\mtc@string\string
```

```
\MTC@read 1041 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
```

```
1042 %%H0/BJ: 4. parameter added by Tony Roberts
```

```
1043 \let\mtc@string\relax
```

```
1044 \else\ifx#1\@input
```

```
1045 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
```

```
1046 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
```

```
1047 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

```
1048 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
```

```
1049 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
```

```
1050 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
```

```

1051 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1052 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1053 \expandafter\MTC@toc
1054 \else
1055 \expandafter\MTC@read
1056 \fi
1057 }%

```

## 9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

### 9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLF@list`

`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```

1058 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1059 \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
1060 \MLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLF@list`

```

\MLF@explist 1061 \def\MLF@lof{%
1062 \ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}

```

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new `minilof` file is created.

`\arabic`

`\xchapter`

```

1063 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
1064 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}} %%H0: space removed
1065 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
1066 \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

```

\themtc
\mlfname 1067 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 1068 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 1069 {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc@gobble}
\openout 1070 \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
1071 \else
1072 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1073 {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc@gobble}
1074 \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
1075 \fi
1076 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1077 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
1078 \fi

```

`\figure` If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

```

\subfigure
\mtc@toks 1079 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1080 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1081 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
1082 \fi
1083 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
1084 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1085 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
1086 \fi
1087 }

```

`\MLF@explist` The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLF@next` to process the first one:

```

\MLF@list
1088 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

`\MLF@loop` And now, we scan the `.lof` file:

```

\openin
\@inputcheck 1089 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLF@lof 1090 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLF@read 1091 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0008>]{minitoc}%
1092 {No file #1.\MessageBreak MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
1093 \expandafter\MLF@lof
1094 \else
1095 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0034>]{minitoc}%
1096 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
1097 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

```

```

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:
\read
\@inputcheck 1098 \def\MLF@read{%
1099 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

\MLF@line The make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:
\MLF@test
\MLF@ 1100 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line.....\MLF@% %%H0: . added
1101 }%

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit
 chapters.

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 1102 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\chapterend 1103 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 1104 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 1105 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\openout 1106 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 1107 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 1108 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 1109 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 1110 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1111 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1112 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
1113 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
1114 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1115 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
1116 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

## 9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

**9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file**

`\MLT@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLT@list`

`\MLT@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
1117 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1118 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
1119 \MLT@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLT@lot` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLT@list`

```
\MLT@explist 1120 \def\MLT@lot{%
1121 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}
```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

`\arabic`

`\xchapter`

```
1122 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
1123 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}} %%H0: space removed
1124 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
1125 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

`\themtc`

`\mltname`

`\closeout`

`\tf@mtc`

`\openout`

```
1126 \if@longextensions@
1127 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1128 {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc\@gobble}%
1129 \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
1130 \else
1131 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1132 {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc\@gobble}%
1133 \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
1134 \fi
1135 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1136 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
1137 \fi
```

`\table` If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

`\subtable`

`\mtc@toks`

`\MTC@WriteContentsline`

```
1138 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
1139 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1140 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{\mlt}{#3}{#4}%
1141 \fi
```

```

1142 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
1143 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1144 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
1145 \fi
1146 }

```

\MLT@explist The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLT@next to process the first one:

\MLT@list

```

1147 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}

```

\MLT@loop And now, we scan the .lot file:

\openin

\@inputcheck 1148 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax

\MLT@lot 1149 \ifeof\@inputcheck

\MLT@read 1150 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0009>]{minitoc}%

1151 {No file #1.\MessageBreak MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%

1152 \expandafter\MLT@lot

1153 \else

1154 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0037>]{minitoc}%

1155 {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%

1156 \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:

\read

\@inputcheck 1157 \def\MLT@read{%

1158 \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

\MLT@line The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:

\MLT@test

\MLT@ 1159 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@% %%H0: . added

1160 }%

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 1161 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\chapterend 1162 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 1163 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 1164 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\openout 1165 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 1166 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 1167 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 1168 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 1169 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1170 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1171 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
1172 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
1173 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1174 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
1175 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a `\@ifundefined{chapter}` alternative).

```
1176 }%
```

### 9.43 Macro to write a contents line

```

\mtc@dot The \MTC@WriteContentsline macro makes the definition of \MTC@contentsline shorter.
\MTC@WriteContentsline An extra \edef level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):
\mtc@param
\write The arguments of \MTC@WriteContentsline are:
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont
\mtc@string #1: the #1 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
\contentsline #2: font shorthand =: \csname #2font\endcsname;
\mtc@toks #3: the #3 argument of \MTC@contentsline;
#4: the #4 argument of \MTC@contentsline (hyperlink).

```

```

1177 \def\mtc@dot{.}
1178 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
1179 \def\mtc@param{#4}%
1180 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
1181 {\string\reset@font
1182 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
1183 \string\mtc@string
1184 \string\contentsline{#1}%

```

```

1185 {\the\mtc@toks}%
1186 {\string\reset@font
1187 \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
1188 \space #3%
1189 }%
1190 \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
1191 \else
1192 {#4}% %%H0/BJ: #4 is hyperlink
1193 \fi
1194 }%
1195 }%
1196 }

```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:

```

\write
\tf@mtc
\@resetfont
\coffeeFont
\mtc@string
\mtc@toks

```

#1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;  
#2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.

```

1197 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
1198 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
1199 {\string\reset@font \string\coffeeFont \string\mtc@string
1200 {\the\mtc@toks}%
1201 {\string\reset@font \string\coffeeFont \space #3%
1202 }%
1203 }%
1204 }%
1205 }

```

## 9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the corresponding new counters: `partlofdepth` and `partlotdepth`. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```

\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth

```

```

1206 \AtBeginDocument{%
1207 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
1208 {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
1209 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
1210 {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
1211 }

```



## 9.45 Part level commands

```

\part If \part is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the parttocs and
\theptc related commands (\theptc, \Thepart, \adjustptc, \decrementptc, \incrementptc),
\Thepart the obsolete command \firstpartis, and the depth counter parttocdepth.
\adjustptc
\decrementptc 1212 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
\incrementptc 1213 {%
\firstpartis 1214 \def\part{part}
\firstpartis 1215 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
\if@firstpartis@used@ 1216 \def\firstpartis#1%
\newcounter 1217 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0004>]{minitoc}%
\setcounter 1218 {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete\MessageBreak command}%
1219 \@firstpartis@used@true}
1220 \newcounter{ptc}
1221 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
1222 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
1223 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
1224 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
1225 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}
1226 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
1227 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

```

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is `\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```

1228 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
1229 {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
1230 {\let\ptc@rule\relax}

```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```

1231 \newlength\ptcindent
1232 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}

```

## 9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

```

\ptcfont
\ptcSfont
\ptcSSfont
\ptcSSSfont We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if \chapter is defined
\ptcPfont (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):
\ptcSPfont
\plffont 1233 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\plfSfont
\pltfont
\pltSfont
\ptifont

```

```

1234 \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
1235 \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
1236 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
1237 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
1238 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
1239 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
1240 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
1241 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
1242 \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
1243 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
1244 \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
1245 }%

\ptcfont If \chapter is defined, the fonts are larger and \ptcCfont must be defined:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 1246 {%
\ptcSSfont 1247 \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSSSfont 1248 \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
\ptcPfont 1249 \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
\ptcSPfont 1250 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)
\plffont 1251 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)
\plfSfont 1252 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)
\pltfont 1253 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)
\pltSfont 1254 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)
\ptifont 1255 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont % (subfigures)
1256 \let\pltfont\ptcfont % (tables)
1257 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont % (subtables)
1258 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
1259 }

```

## 9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

\parttoc We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables  
\partlof (\parttoc, \partlof and \partlot). This formatting is different if \chapter is defined or  
\partlot undefined.

```

\c@pti If \chapter is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or
\l@pti empty titles. Empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
\r@pti
\@pti 1260 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 1261 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
1262 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
1263 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
1264 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1265 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1266 }%

```

`\e@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more  
`\n@pti` complex. Empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```
1267 {%
1268 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1269 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1270 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@afterheading 1271 \@topnewpage[\@makehead@l{#1}]\%
\ptifont 1272 \else
\@makehead@l 1273 \@makehead@l{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1274 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 1275 \fi}
1276 \def\@makehead@l#1{%
1277 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1278 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright
1279 \ptifont
1280 #1\par
1281 \nobreak
1282 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}}
1283 }}
```

`\r@pti` For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1284 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@r 1285 \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]\%
\@afterheading 1286 \else
\ptifont 1287 \@makehead@r{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1288 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 1289 \fi}
1290 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
1291 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1292 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft
1293 \ptifont
1294 #1\par
1295 \nobreak
1296 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}}
1297 }}
```

`\c@pti` For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1298 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@c 1299 \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]\%
\@afterheading 1300 \else
\ptifont 1301 \@makehead@c{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1302 \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads
```

```

1303 \fi}
1304 \def\@makephead@c#1{%
1305 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1306 {\parindent \z@ \centering
1307 \ptifont
1308 #1\par
1309 \nobreak
1310 \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}}
1311 }}%
1312 }

```

\l@pti By default, titles are on left:

```

\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 1313 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 1314 \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\df@ptilf 1315 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\do@ptilt 1316 \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilt 1317 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti
1318 \let\df@ptilt\l@pti

```

## 9.48 The ptc@verse environment

ptc@verse Each parttoc is placed inside a ptc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \ptc@verse and \endptc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent, \@centercr \itemindent, \partopsep, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to \ptcindent. \itemindent \endptc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\listparindent
\topsep 1319 \def\ptc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
\parsep 1320 \list{}\itemsep\z@
\parskip 1321 \itemindent \z@
\partopsep 1322 \listparindent \itemindent
\ptcindent 1323 \partopsep\z@
\iftightmtc 1324 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
\ifktightmtc 1325 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
1326 \topsep=1ex
1327 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1328 \rightmargin\leftmargin\item[]}
1329 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should  
`\partlof` be placed after a `\part` command to produce a parttoc, a partlof or a partlot, and the format-  
`\partlot` ting is different and depends of the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and  
the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands  
are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot`  
use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually  
a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

### 9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a parttoc (no automatic parttoc). First,  
`\parttoc@` `\parttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is  
missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
1330 \def\parttoc{\ifnextchar{\\parttoc@}\parttoc@d}}
```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a  
`\if@parttoc@used@` coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc  
`\if@longextensions@` file):

```
\@tocfile
\Thepart 1331 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
1332 \global\@parttoc@used@true
1333 \if@longextensions@%
1334 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
1335 \else
1336 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
1337 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1338 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1339 \if@mtc@FE
1340 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1341 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1342 \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
1343 \else
```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```
1344 \beforeparttoc
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:  
`\@mkboth`

```
\thispageparttocstyle 1345 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 1346 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\ptctitle 1347 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1348 \thispageparttocstyle
1349 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}%
1350 }%
```

`\do@ptitc` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti 1351 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 1352 \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\e@pti
\r@pti 1353 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\n@pti
\df@pti 1354 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1355 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\ptctitle 1356 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1357 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\df@ptitc
samepage 1358 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1359 \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```
\parskip
\ptcfont
1360 \raggedright
1361 \parskip=\z@%
1362 \reset@font\ptcfont%
1363 \parindent=\z@%
1364 \nopagebreak[4]%
1365 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
1366 \par\noindent
1367 \nopagebreak[4]%
```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the parttoc.

```
\ptifont
\do@ptitc 1368 \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v 1369 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle
\hline
```

```

1370 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
1371 \end{tabular}%
1372 \else
1373 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1374 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
1375 \end{tabular}%
1376 \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

`\mtc@BBR`

`\ptcindent`

```

1377 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1378 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1379 \rightmargin\ptcindent
1380 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1381 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

`\mtc@BBR`

```

1382 \begin{ptc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
1383 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\ptc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke `\l@chapter` ignoring the page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\ptc@setform`. Then the parttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

`\@tocfile`

`\mtc@strut`

`ptc@verse`

```

1384 \begin{group
1385 \makeatletter
1386 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
1387 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1388 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
1389 {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
1390 \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}}{}
1391 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1392 \ptc@setform
1393 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1394 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
1395 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1396 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
1397 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterparttoc`.

`\mtc@zrule` samepage

```

\afterparttoc 1398 \kernafterparttoc
 1399 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\%
 1400 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
 1401 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
 1402 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

### 9.49.2 The `\partlof` command

`\partlof` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, `\partlof@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
1403 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\partlof@}{\partlof@d}}
```

`\partlof@` The `\partlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlof@used@` (for a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

`\if@partlof@used@` samepage

`\if@longextensions@` file):

`\@tocfile`

`\Thepart`

```

1404 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
1405 \global\@partlof@used@true
1406 \if@longextensions@%
1407 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%
1408 \else
1409 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
1410 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1411 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
 1412 \if@mtc@FE
 1413 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
 1414 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
 1415 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
 1416 \else

```

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```
1417 \beforepartlof
```



`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:  
`\@mkboth`  
`\thispagepartlofsty` 1418 `\@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%`  
`\MakeUppercase` 1419 `\global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth`  
`\plftitle` 1420 `\global\let\@mkboth\markboth`  
1421 `\thispagepartlofsty`  
1422 `\mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%`  
1423 `}%`

`\do@ptilf` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the  
`\e@pti` partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.  
`\n@pti`  
`\c@pti` 1424 `\relax\begin{samepage}%`  
`\l@pti` 1425 `\if #1e\let\do@ptilf\e@pti`  
`\r@pti` 1426 `\else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\n@pti`  
`\df@pti` 1427 `\else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\c@pti`  
`\mtc@CkStr` 1428 `\else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\l@pti`  
`\plftitle` 1429 `\else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\r@pti`  
`\if@mtc@FE` 1430 `\else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\df@ptilf`  
1431 `\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi`  
`samepage` 1432 `\mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\e@pti\relax\fi`

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc,  
`\parskip` then we set the font:  
`\plffont`  
1433 `\raggedright`  
1434 `\parskip=\z@%`  
1435 `\reset@font\plffont%`

`\plf@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and  
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of  
`\columnwidth` the partlof.  
`\ptifont`  
`\do@ptilf` 1436 `\parindent=\z@%`  
`\mtc@v` 1437 `\nopagebreak[4]%`  
`\plftitle` 1438 `\kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%`  
`\hline` 1439 `\par\noindent`  
1440 `\ifx\plf@rule\relax`  
1441 `\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}`  
1442 `\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\`  
1443 `\end{tabular}%`  
1444 `\else`  
1445 `\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}`  
1446 `\reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\\hline`  
1447 `\mtc@hstrut\\`  
1448 `\end{tabular}%`  
1449 `\fi`

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:  
`\mtc@BBR`  
`\ptcindent`

```

1450 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1451 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1452 \rightmargin\ptcindent
1453 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1454 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

1455 \begin{ptc@verse}%
1456 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
1457 {}%
1458 {c@lofdepth=c@partlofdepth
1459 \ifnumc@lofdepth<1\relaxc@lofdepth=1\fi}
1460 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\plf@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat`  
`\@dottedtocline` are activated via `\plf@setform`. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the  
`\@undottedtocline` `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`

```

\plf@setform
\@tocfile 1461 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 1462 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 1463 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%
1464 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1465 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1466 \plf@setform
1467 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1468 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
1469 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1470 \global\@nobeckfalse\endgroup
1471 \end{ptc@verse}%
```

`\plf@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter`  
`\mtc@zrule` is not defined), and `\afterpartlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.  
`samepage`

```

\afterpartlof 1472 \kernafterpartlof
1473 \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
1474 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1475 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
1476 \afterpartlof\fi}
```

### 9.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
1477 \def\partlot{\ifnextchar{\\partlot@}\partlot@d}}
```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

```
\@tocfile
\Thepart 1478 %
1479 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
1480 \global\@partlot@used@true
1481 \if@longextensions@%
1482 \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
1483 \else
1484 \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
1485 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1486 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1487 \if@mtc@FE
1488 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1489 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1490 \@mtc@empty@partlot@true
1491 \else
```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```
1492 \beforepartlot
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```
\@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 1493 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 1494 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 1495 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1496 \thispagepartlotstyle
1497 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
1498 }%
```

```

\do@ptilt A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the
\e@pti partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.
\n@pti
\c@pti 1499 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 1500 \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\e@pti
\r@pti 1501 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\n@pti
\df@pti 1502 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1503 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
\plttitle 1504 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1505 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
samepage 1506 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1507 \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\e@pti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot,
\parskip then we set the font:
\pltfont
1508 \raggedright
1509 \parskip=\z@%
1510 \reset@font\pltfont%
1511 \parindent=\z@%
1512 \nopagebreak[4]%
1513 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
1514 \par\noindent

\plt@rule The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\columnwidth the partlot.
\ptifont
\do@ptilt 1515 \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 1516 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 1517 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 1518 \end{tabular}%
1519 \else
1520 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1521 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
1522 \mtc@hstrut\\
1523 \end{tabular}%
1524 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\ptcindent
1525 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1526 \leftmargin\ptcindent
1527 \rightmargin\ptcindent
1528 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1529 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

1530 \begin{ptc@verse}%
1531 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
1532 {}%
1533 {c@lotdepth=c@partlotdepth
1534 \ifnum c@lotdepth<1\relax c@lotdepth=1\fi}
1535 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plt@setform
\@tocfile 1536 \beginngroup
\mtc@strut 1537 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 1538 \@ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
1539 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1540 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1541 \plt@setform
1542 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1543 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
1544 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1545 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1546 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\ptc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlot`. The blank line (`\\`) is essential.

```

samepage
\afterpartlot 1547 \kernafterpartlot
1548 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
1549 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1550 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
1551 \afterpartlot\fi}

```

## 9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

`\@dottedtocline` The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to `\l@subsection`, only the arguments have been altered:

```

\l@xpart
\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter 1552 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect 1553 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
1554 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}

```

```

1555 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
1556 \def\psect{psect}

```

## 9.51 Patching the \part command, continued

```

\sv@part We patch both branches of the \part command: \@part (unstarred \part) and \@spart
\mtc@svpart (\part*). We add the incrementation of the ptc counter to both branches. In the unstarred
\@part branch, we add xpart entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we
\addtocontents add a \partbegin line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real
\sv@spart (\relax).
\ptc@spart
\@spart 1557 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 1558 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]#2}\relax
\partbegin 1559 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend 1560 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
1561 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
1562 \stepcounter{ptc}}
1563 \let\sv@spart\@spart
1564 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
1565 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
1566 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}
1567 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
1568 \let\partend\relax
1569 \let\partbegin\relax

```

## 9.52 The \doparttoc command and its siblings

```

\doparttoc The \doparttoc command works like the \dominitoc command, \dopartlof like
\dopartlof \dominilof and \dopartlot like \dominilot.
\dopartlot

```

```

\@doparttoc The \doparttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .ptc(N)
\PTC@next files (.ptc becomes .P on MS-DOS).
\setcounter
1570 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
1571 \makeatletter
1572 \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1573 \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

```

\@dopartlof The \dopartlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .plf(N)
\PLF@next files (.plf becomes .G on MS-DOS).
\setcounter

```

```

1574 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
1575 \makeatletter
1576 \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1577 \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\@dopartlot The \@dopartlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the .plt(N) files (.plt becomes .U on MS-DOS).  
 \PLT@next  
 \setcounter

```

1578 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
1579 \makeatletter
1580 \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1581 \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\doparttoc We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:

\dopartlof

```

\dopartlot 1582 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
1583 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
1584 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}

```

\doparttoc@ We treat the optional argument of \@doparttoc (it becomes the default position for titles of parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

\if@mtc@hints@

\if@doparttoc@used@

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true 1585 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
 \df@ptitc 1586 \if@mtc@hints@
 \e@pti 1587 \if@doparttoc@used@
 \n@pti 1588 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \c@pti 1589 {The \string\doparttoc \space command\MessageBreak
 \l@pti 1590 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
 \r@pti 1591 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
 1592 \fi
 1593 \fi
 1594 \global\@doparttoc@used@true
 1595 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\e@pti%
 1596 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
 1597 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
 1598 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
 1599 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
 1600 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
 1601 \@@doparttoc}

```

\dopartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \@dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

\if@dopartlof@used@

\if@mtc@hints@

```

\@mtc@hints@given@true 1602 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
 \df@ptilf 1603 \if@mtc@hints@
 \e@pti 1604 \if@dopartlof@used@
 \n@pti
 \c@pti
 \l@pti
 \r@pti

```

```

1605 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
1606 {The \string\dopartlof \space command\MessageBreak
1607 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
1608 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1609 \fi
1610 \fi
1611 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
1612 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\e@pti%
1613 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
1614 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
1615 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
1616 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
1617 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1618 \@@dopartlof}

```

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 1619 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 1620 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 1621 \if@dopartlot@used@
\@pti 1622 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 1623 {The \string\dopartlot \space command\MessageBreak
\l@pti 1624 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\r@pti 1625 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1626 \fi
1627 \fi
1628 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
1629 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\e@pti%
1630 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
1631 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
1632 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
1633 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%
1634 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1635 \@@dopartlot}

```

```

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the \dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
\@@dopartlof file descriptor.
\@@dopartlot

```

```

\tf@mtc 1636 \def\@@doparttoc{\doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
1637 \def\@@dopartlof{\dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
1638 \def\@@dopartlot{\dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

### 9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttocs

```

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
\PTC@list
\PTC@loop

```



```

1639 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1640 \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
1641 \PTC@loop{#1}}

```

```

\PTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 1642 \def\PTC@toc{%
1643 \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\part esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
\theptc created.
\tf@mtc
\ptcname 1644 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 1645 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
1646 \stepcounter{ptc}%
1647 \if@longextensions@
1648 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1649 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
1650 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1651 \else
1652 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1653 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
1654 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
1655 \fi
1656 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1657 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
1658 \fi
1659 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
1660 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\ptcname it:

```

```

1661 \if@longextensions@
1662 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1663 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1664 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1665 \else
1666 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1667 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
1668 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
1669 \fi
1670 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1671 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
1672 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```
1673 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters, sections, etc.:

```
\chapter
\pchapter
\section 1674 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
\coffee 1675 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subsection 1676 \fi
\subsubsection 1677 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
\paragraph 1678 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 1679 \fi
1680 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
1681 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
1682 \fi
1683 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
1684 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
1685 \fi
1686 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
1687 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1688 \fi
1689 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
1690 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1691 \fi
1692 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
1693 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
1694 \fi
1695 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
1696 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1697 \fi
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` And for the starred sectionning commands:

```
\starchapter
\starsection 1698 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 1699 %H0: the following line should be disabled: \stepcounter{ptc}%
\starsubsubsection 1700 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starparagraph 1701 \fi
\starsubparagraph 1702 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
1703 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
1704 \fi
1705 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
1706 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1707 \fi
1708 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
1709 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1710 \fi
1711 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
1712 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
1713 \fi
```

```

1714 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
1715 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1716 \fi
1717 }

```

\PTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \PTC@next to process the first one:

```

\PTC@list
1718 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}

```

\PTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, \PTC@toc process the next entry in the list.

```

\PTC@read
1719 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1720 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1721 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0013>]{minitoc}%
1722 {No file #1\MessageBreak PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
1723 \expandafter\PTC@toc
1724 \else
1725 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0025>]{minitoc}%
1726 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
1727 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}

```

\PTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```

\PTC@line
1728 \def\PTC@read{%
1729 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line

```

\PTC@test The ..... make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:

```

\PTC@line
1730 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line.....\PTC@% %%H0: . added
1731 }%

```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

1732 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PTC@test,
1733 %%H0/BJ: call \PTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters

```

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```

\mtc@string
\PTC@list
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read
\partend

```

```

1734 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{% %%H0: #6 added
1735 \ifx#1\contentsline
1736 \let\mtc@string\string
1737 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
1738 %%H0/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
1739 \let\mtc@string\relax
1740 \else\ifx#1\@input
1741 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
1742 \else\ifx#1\partend
1743 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1744 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1745 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1746 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1747 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1748 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
1749 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

### 9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

`\PLF@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:  
`\PLF@list`

```

\PLF@loop 1750 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\\{%
1751 \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
1752 \PLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\PLF@lof` Check if the list is empty:  
`\PLF@list`

```

\PLF@explist 1753 \def\PLF@lof{%
1754 \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}

```

`\PLF@contentsline` The macro `\PLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.  
`\theptc`  
`\tf@mtc`

```

\plfname 1755 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 1756 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
1757 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:  
`\plfname`

```

1758 \if@longextensions@
1759 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1760 {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
1761 \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%

```

```

1762 \else
1763 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1764 {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
1765 \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
1766 \fi
1767 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1768 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
1769 \fi

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```

\figure Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subfigure
\mtc@toks 1770 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1771 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1772 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
1773 \fi
1774 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
1775 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1776 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
1777 \fi
1778 }

```

\PLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \PLF@next to process the first one:

```

\PLF@next
\PLF@list
1779 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

\PLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\PLF@lof
\PLF@read
1780 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1781 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1782 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0011>]{minitoc}%
1783 {No file #1\MessageBreak PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
1784 \expandafter\PLF@lof
1785 \else
1786 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0035>]{minitoc}%
1787 {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
1788 \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

\PLF@read Read the next entry of the .lof file.

```
\PLF@line
1789 \def\PLF@read{%
1790 \read\inputcheck to\PLF@line
```

\PLF@test The . . . . make sure that \PLF@test has enough arguments:

```
\PLF@line
1791 \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line....\PLF@% %%H0: . added
1792 }%
```

\PLF@test The \PLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
1793 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLF@test,
1794 %%H0/BJ: call \PLF@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

```
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read 1795 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 1796 \ifx#1\contentsline
1797 \let\mtc@string\string
1798 \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
1799 \let\mtc@string\relax
1800 \else\ifx#1\@input
1801 \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
1802 \else\ifx#1\partend
1803 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1804 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1805 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1806 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1807 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1808 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
1809 \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%
```

### 9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

\PLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PLT@list
\PLT@loop 1810 \def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1811 \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
1812 \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

```

\PLT@lot Check if the list is empty:
\PLT@list
\PLT@explist 1813 \def\PLT@lot{%
 1814 \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}

```

```

\PLT@contentsline The macro \PLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects inter-
 \part esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlot file is
 \theptc created.
 \tf@mtc
 \plname 1815 \def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO: #4 added
\PLT@WriteContentsLine 1816 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
 1817 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\plname it:

```

```

1818 \if@longextensions@%
1819 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1820 {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
1821 \def\plname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
1822 \else
1823 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1824 {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
1825 \def\plname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
1826 \fi
1827 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1828 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plname
1829 \fi

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```

\table Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subtable
\mtc@toks 1830 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1831 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
 1832 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
 1833 \fi
 1834 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
 1835 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
 1836 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
 1837 \fi
 1838 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:  
 \PLT@next  
 \PLT@list

```
1839 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}
```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.  
 \PLT@lot  
 \PLT@read

```
1840 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1841 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1842 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0012>]{minitoc}%
1843 {No file #1\MessageBreak PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
1844 \expandafter\PLT@lot
1845 \else
1846 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0038>]{minitoc}%
1847 {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
1848 \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}
```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.  
 \PLT@line

```
1849 \def\PLT@read{%
1850 \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line
```

\PLT@test The ..... make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:  
 \PLT@line

```
1851 \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line.....\PLT@% %%H0: . added
1852 }%
```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
1853 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLT@test,
1854 %%H0/BJ: call \PLT@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.  
 \mtc@string  
 \PLT@list  
 \PLT@lot

```
\PLT@read 1855 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 1856 \ifx#1\contentsline
1857 \let\mtc@string\string
1858 \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
1859 \let\mtc@string\relax
```



```

1860 \else\ifx#1\@input
1861 \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
1862 \else\ifx#1\partend
1863 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1864 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1865 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1866 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1867 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1868 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
1869 \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 289):

```

1870 }%

```

### 9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \AtBeginDocument \c@lofdepth \c@lotdepth \newcounter \setcounter </pre> | <p>If the counters <code>lofdepth</code> and <code>lotdepth</code> are defined, we create new counters for the depths of the corresponding mini-tables: <code>sectlofdepth</code> and <code>sectlotdepth</code>. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an <code>\AtBeginDocument</code> block:</p> <pre> 1871 \AtBeginDocument{% 1872   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}% 1873   {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}% 1874   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}% 1875   {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}% 1876 } </pre> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 9.54 Section-level commands

|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \if@mtc@section@def@ </pre> | <p>The section-level commands are defined only if <code>\chapter</code> is <i>not</i> defined, hence in article-like document classes, and only if <code>\section</code> is defined:</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

```

1877 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
1878 \if@mtc@section@def@

```

|                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre> \firstsectionis \adjuststc \decrementstc \incrementstc \stc@rule \stcindent \columnwidth </pre> | <p>We define the obsolete command <code>\firstsectionis</code> (with its harmless warning), the counter <code>stc</code> of secttocs, the <code>\adjuststc</code>, <code>\decrementstc</code> and <code>\incrementstc</code> commands, the depth counter <code>secttocdepth</code> and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections), the horizontal rule <code>\stc@rule</code> (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both sides) <code>\stcindent</code> for the secttocs (with its default values).</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

```

1879 \def\firstsectionis#1%
1880 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0005>]{minitoc}%
1881 {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete\MessageBreak command}%
1882 \@firstsectionis@used@true}
1883 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
1884 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
1885 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
1886 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
1887 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
1888 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
1889 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

## 9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 1890 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 1891 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 1892 \let\stcSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 1893 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 1894 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 1895 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 1896 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 1897 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
1898 \let\sltSfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
1899 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles

```

## 9.56 Internal macros for title positioning

Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of `\dosecttoc` and `\secttoc` commands (and siblings):

```

\l@sti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a vertical correction for empty titles, from
\c@sti Frank MITTELBACH):
\r@sti
\@sti 1900 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\n@sti 1901 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
1902 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
1903 \def\@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1904 \def\n@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\do@stitle By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stitle
\do@stilf 1905 \let\do@stitle\l@sti
\df@stilf 1906 \let\df@stitle\l@sti
\do@stilt 1907 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt 1908 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti 1909 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
1910 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

## 9.57 The stc@verse environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored.

```

1911 \def\stc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
1912 \list{ }\itemsep\z@
1913 \itemindent \z@
1914 \listparindent \itemindent
1915 \partopsep \z@
1916 \iftightmtc \parsep \z@ \fi
1917 \ifktightmtc \parskip \z@ \fi
1918 \topsep 1ex %% 20060731 was \z@
1919 \leftmargin\stcindent
1920 \rightmargin\leftmargin\item{ }
1921 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 9.58 The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands

These three commands are very similar.

### 9.58.1 The \secttoc command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1922 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@d}}

```

```

\secttoc@ The \secttoc@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@secttoc@used@ (for a
\if@secttoc@used@ coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the secttoc
\if@longextensions@ file):
\@tocfile
\thestc 1923 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
1924 \global\@secttoc@used@true
1925 \if@longextensions@%
1926 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestc}%
1927 \else
1928 \def\@tocfile{S\thestc}%
1929 \fi

\mtc@CkFile Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is
\if@mtc@FE not here or is empty:
\@tocfile
1930 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1931 \if@mtc@FE
1932 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1933 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1934 \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
1935 \else

\beforesecttoc If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation
\thispagesecttocstyle code: first, \beforesecttoc, of course, and the page style feature:
1936 \beforesecttoc
1937 \thispagesecttocstyle

\do@sttc We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
\@sttc we simulate the “e” positionning.
\@sttc
\c@sttc 1938 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\l@sttc 1939 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\r@sttc 1940 \if #1e\let\do@sttc\@sttc
\df@sttc 1941 \else\if #1n\let\do@sttc\@sttc
\mtc@CkStr 1942 \else\if #1c\let\do@sttc\c@sttc
\stctitle 1943 \else\if #1l\let\do@sttc\l@sttc
\if@mtc@FE 1944 \else\if #1r\let\do@sttc\r@sttc
samepage 1945 \else\if #1d\let\do@sttc\df@sttc
1946 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1947 \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@sttc\@sttc\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc,
\parskip then we set the font:
\stcfont

```

```

1948 \raggedright
1949 \parskip=\z@%
1950 \reset@font\stcfont%
1951 \parindent=\z@%
1952 \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.

```

\columnwidth
\stifont
\do@sttc 1953 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
 \mtc@v 1954 \par\noindent
\stctitle 1955 \nopagebreak[4]%
 \hline 1956 \ifx\stc@rule\relax
1957 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1958 \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
1959 \end{tabular}%
1960 \else
1961 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1962 \reset@font\stifont\do@sttc{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
1963 \end{tabular}%
1964 \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
1965 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
1966 \leftmargin\stcindent
1967 \rightmargin\stcindent
1968 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1969 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `secttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\c@tocdepth
\c@secttocdepth
 \mtc@BBR 1970 \begin{stc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%
1971 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\stc@setform
 \@tocfile 1972 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 1973 \makeatletter
stc@verse 1974 \stc@setform%

```

```

1975 \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
1976 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1977 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1978 \stc@setform%
1979 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1980 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
1981 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1982 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1983 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
samepage
\aftersecttoc 1984 \kernaftersecttoc
1985 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
1986 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1987 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

### 9.58.2 The \sectlof command

\sectlof The \sectlof command must be used after \section if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of \minilof (but simpler). First, \sectlof detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \sectlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1988 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlof@}{\sectlof@d}}

```

\sectlof@ The \sectlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@sectlof@used@ (for a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\thetoc 1989 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
1990 \global\@sectlof@used@true
1991 \if@longextensions@
1992 \def\@tocfile{slf\thetoc}%
1993 \else
1994 \def\@tocfile{H\thetoc}%
1995 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
1996 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1997 \if@mtc@FE

```

```

1998 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1999 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
2000 \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
2001 \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

2002 \thispagesectlofsty
2003 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
2004 \beforesectlof

```

`\do@stilf` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\do@sti
\c@sti 2005 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 2006 \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
\r@sti 2007 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
\df@sti 2008 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 2009 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 2010 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 2011 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
2012 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 2013 \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\slffont
2014 \raggedright
2015 \parskip=\z@%
2016 \reset@font\slffont%
2017 \parindent=\z@%
2018 \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\slf@rule` The sectlof title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the sectlof.

```

\columnwidth
\do@stilf 2019 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 2020 \par\noindent
\slftitle 2021 \ifx\slf@rule\relax
\hline 2022 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2023 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
2024 \end{tabular}%
2025 \else
2026 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}

```

```

2027 \mtc@hstrut
2028 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\hline
2029 \end{tabular}%
2030 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:  
 \mtc@BBR  
 \stcindent

```

2031 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\ \mtc@BBR
2032 \leftmargin\stcindent
2033 \rightmargin\stcindent
2034 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
2035 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the sectlof. The toc depth is forced (locally) to sectlofdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.  
 \c@tocdepth  
 \c@sectlofdepth

```

\mtc@BBR 2036 \begin{stc@verse}%
2037 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
2038 {}%
2039 {\c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
2040 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
2041 \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\slf@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \slf@setform. Then the sectlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile stc@verse environment is terminated.

```

\slf@setform
\@tocfile 2042 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 2043 \makeatletter
stc@verse 2044 \ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
2045 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
2046 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
2047 \slf@setform%
2048 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2049 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
2050 \end{stc@verse}%

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and \mtc@zrule \aftersectlof. The blank line (\\) is essential.  
 samepage

```

\aftersectlof 2051 \kernaftersectlof
2052 \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
2053 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
2054 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```



### 9.58.3 The `\sectlot` command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlot (no automatic sectlot). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
2055 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlot@}{\sectlot@d}}
```

`\sectlot@` The `\sectlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlot@used@` (for a coherence hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot file):

```
\@tocfile
\thetc 2056 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
2057 \global\@sectlot@used@true
2058 \if@longextensions@%
2059 \def\@tocfile{slt\thetc}%
2060 \else
2061 \def\@tocfile{I\thetc}%
2062 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```
\@tocfile
2063 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2064 \if@mtc@FE
2065 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
2066 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
2067 \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
2068 \else
```

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

```
2069 \thispagesectlotstyle
2070 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
2071 \beforesectlot
```

```

\do@stilt We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
\e@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
\n@sti
\c@sti 2072 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@sti 2073 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
\r@sti 2074 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
\df@sti 2075 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 2076 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\sltttitle 2077 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 2078 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
samepage 2079 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
2080 \mtc@CkStr{\sltttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot,
\parskip then we set the font:
\sltfont
2081 \raggedright
2082 \parskip=\z@%
2083 \reset@font\sltfont%
2084 \parindent=\z@%
2085 \nopagebreak[4]%

\stc@rule The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\stifont the sectlot.
\columnrule
\do@stilt 2086 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 2087 \par\noindent
\sltttitle 2088 \ifx\sltrule\relax
\hline 2089 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2090 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
2091 \end{tabular}%
2092 \else
2093 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2094 \mtc@hstrut
2095 \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\ \hline
2096 \end{tabular}%
2097 \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
\mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
2098 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
2099 \leftmargin\stcindent
2100 \rightmargin\stcindent
2101 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
2102 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the `sectlot`. The `toc` depth is forced (locally) to `sectlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

`\c@tocdepth`

`\c@sectlotdepth`

```

\mtc@BBR 2103 \begin{stc@verse}%
 2104 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
 2105 {}%
 2106 {c@lotdepth=c@sectlotdepth
 2107 \ifnumc@lotdepth<1\relaxc@lotdepth=1\fi}
 2108 \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\slt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slt@setform`. Then the `sectlot` file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

`\@dottedtocline`

`\@undottedtocline`

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`

`\slt@setform`

```

\@tocfile 2109 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 2110 \makeatletter
stc@verse 2111 \ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
 2112 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
 2113 \gdef\thstc{\arabic{stc}}
 2114 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
 2115 \slt@setform%
 2116 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
 2117 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
 2118 \end{stc@verse}%

```

`\stc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and

`\mtc@zrule` `\aftersectlot`.

`samepage`

```

\aftersectlot 2119 \kernaftersectlof
 2120 \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
 2121 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
 2122 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi}%

```

## 9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

`\l@xsect` We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and

`\l@xsection` LOF and LOT files). The depth of `xsect` is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line

`\@dottedtocline` (except if you cheat).

`\l@schapter`

```

\l@xsect 2123 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\l@xsection 2124 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\l@schapter 2125 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
 2126 \def\xsect{xsect}
 2127 \def\xsection{xsection}
 2128 \def\schapter{schapter}

```

## 9.60 Patching the \section command (continued)

\@sect We patch the both branches of the \section command: \@sect for the unstarred version and \addcontentsline \@ssect for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (\@sect), we add a xsect contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test \ifnum #2=1 restricts the action to the section level macros (because \@sect is also used by \subsection and below, which have no mini-tables).

```
2129 \let\sv@sect\@sect
2130 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
2131 \ifnum #2=1\relax
2132 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2133 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2134 \fi
2135 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
```

\section If it is a section (unstarred or starred via \starsection), we add a xsect entry in the LOF  
\starsection and in the LOT.  
\addcontentsline

```
2136 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
2137 \expandafter
2138 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
2139 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2140 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2141 \fi
2142 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
2143 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2144 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2145 \fi
```

\@svsec And the remainder of the section header formatting:  
\refstepcounter  
\@tempskipa 2146 \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax  
\@hangfrom 2147 \let\@svsec\@empty  
\addcontentsline 2148 \else  
\numberline 2149 \refstepcounter{#1}%  
\@svsechd 2150 \edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%  
\@xsect 2151 \fi  
2152 \@tempskipa #5\relax  
2153 \ifdim \@tempskipa>z@  
2154 \begingroup #6\relax  
2155 \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%  
2156 {\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%  
2157 \endgroup  
2158 \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline  
2159 {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax  
2160 \else  
2161 \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%

```

2162 \fi
2163 #7}%
2164 \else
2165 \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax
2166 \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname
2167 {#7}\addcontentsline
2168 {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax
2169 \else
2170 \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}
2171 \fi
2172 #7}}%
2173 \fi
2174 \@xsect{#5}}

```

`\@sect` Then we patch the unstarred branch (`\@sect`). We define also the delimiting commands `\sectbegin` and `\sectend` commands. We do not add `\sectbegin` if it is a subsection or deeper.

```

\stc@sect
\addtocontents 2175 \let\stc@sect\@sect
2176 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
2177 \ifnum #2<1 \relax
2178 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
2179 \fi
2180 \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[#7]{#8}}
2181 \let\sectend\relax
2182 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 9.61 The `\dosecttoc` command and siblings

The `\dosecttoc` command is very similar to `\dominitoc`.

`\dosecttoc` The `\dosecttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.stc(N)` files (`.stc` becomes `.S` on MS-DOS).  
`\@dosecttoc`  
`\STC@next`

```

2183 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
2184 \makeatletter
2185 \setcounter{stc}{0}
2186 \STC@next#1.toc\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlof` The `\dosectlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.slf(N)` files (`.slf` becomes `.H` on MS-DOS).  
`\@dosectlof`  
`\SLF@next`

```

2187 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
2188 \makeatletter
2189 \setcounter{stc}{0}
2190 \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosectlot` The `\dosectlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.slt`(*N*) files (`.slt` becomes `.V` on MS-DOS).  
`\@dosectlot`  
`\PLT@next`

```
2191 \def\dosectlot#1{%
2192 \makeatletter
2193 \setcounter{stc}{0}
2194 \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}
```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:  
`\dosectlof`

```
\dosectlot 2195 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}
2196 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}
2197 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}
```

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\if@mtc@hints@`

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2198 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 2199 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 2200 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\n@sti 2201 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 2202 {The \string\dosecttoc \space command\MessageBreak
\l@sti 2203 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\r@sti 2204 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2205 \fi
2206 \fi
2207 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
2208 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@sti%
2209 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\n@sti%
2210 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\c@sti%
2211 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\l@sti%
2212 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\r@sti%
2213 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2214 \@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\if@mtc@hints@`

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2215 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 2216 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 2217 \if@dosectlof@used@
\n@sti 2218 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 2219 {The \string\dosectlof \space command\MessageBreak
\l@sti 2220 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
\r@sti 2221 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2222 \fi
2223 \fi
2224 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
```

```

2225 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\e@sti%
2226 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
2227 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
2228 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
2229 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
2230 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2231 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of  
 \if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

\if@dosectlot@used@ 2232 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
 \df@stilt 2233 \if@mtc@hints@
 \e@sti 2234 \if@dosectlot@used@
 \n@sti 2235 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \c@sti 2236 {The \string\dosectlot \space command\MessageBreak
 \l@sti 2237 has been invoked more than once\MessageBreak}
 \r@sti 2238 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
 2239 \fi
 2240 \fi
 2241 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
 2242 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%
 2243 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%
 2244 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%
 2245 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%
 2246 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%
 2247 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
 2248 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the  
 \@@dosectlof file descriptor.  
 \@@dosectlot

```

\tf@mtc 2249 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
2250 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
2251 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 2252 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2253 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
2254 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

\STC@toc Check if the list is empty:

\STC@list

```

\STC@explist 2255 \def\STC@toc{%
2256 \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

```

```

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 2257 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\stcname 2258 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 2259 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
2260 \stepcounter{stc}%
2261 %% \def\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %% H0: removed

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname it:

2262 \if@longextensions@%
2263 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2264 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
2265 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
2266 \else
2267 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2268 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
2269 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
2270 \fi
2271 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2272 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
2273 \fi

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
\MTC@WriteContentsline 2274 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\coffee 2275 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsection 2276 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\subsubsection 2277 \fi
\paragraph 2278 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
\subparagraph 2279 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
2280 \fi
2281 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
2282 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
2283 \fi
2284 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
2285 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
2286 \fi
2287 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
2288 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
2289 \fi

\starsection A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:
\stepcounter
\thestc 2290 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\arabic 2291 \stepcounter{stc}%

\if@longextensions@
\stcname
\closeout
\openout

```



```

2292 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
2293 \if@longextensions@%
2294 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2295 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
2296 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
2297 \else
2298 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2299 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
2300 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
2301 \fi
2302 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2303 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
2304 \fi

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 2305 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
\starparagraph 2306 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 2307 \fi
2308 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
2309 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
2310 \fi
2311 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
2312 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
2313 \fi
2314 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
2315 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
2316 \fi
2317 }

```

\STC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \STC@next to process the first one.

```

\STC@next
\STC@list
2318 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

\STC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
2319 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
2320 \ifeof@inputcheck
2321 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0016>]{minitoc}%
2322 {No file #1\MessageBreak SECTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
2323 \expandafter\STC@toc
2324 \else
2325 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0026>]{minitoc}%
2326 {PREPARING SECTOCS FROM #1}%
2327 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```
\STC@line
2328 \def\STC@read{%
2329 \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line
```

\STC@test The ..... make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

```
\STC@line
2330 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line.....\STC@% %%H0: . added
2331 }%
```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```
\STC@contentsline
\mtc@string
\STC@list 2332 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{% %%H0: #6 added
\STC@toc 2333 \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 2334 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2335 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2336 \let\mtc@string\relax
2337 \else\ifx#1\@input
2338 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
2339 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2340 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2341 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2342 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2343 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2344 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2345 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
2346 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%
```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\SLF@list
\SLF@loop 2347 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2348 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
2349 \SLF@loop{#1}}
```

\SLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

```
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist 2350 \def\SLF@lof{%
2351 \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}
```

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.

```
\thetoc
\tf@mtc 2352 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\slfname
```

\MTC@WriteContentsLine

```

2353 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
2354 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
2355 \stepcounter{stc}%
2356 %% \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

2357 \if@longextensions@%
2358 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2359 {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
2360 \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
2361 \else
2362 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2363 {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
2364 \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
2365 \fi
2366 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2367 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
2368 \fi

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

\MTc@WriteContentsline
\figure 2369 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subfigure 2370 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
2371 \MTc@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
2372 \fi
2373 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
2374 \MTc@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
2375 \fi
2376 }

```

\SLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to process the first one.

\SLF@next

\SLF@list

```

2377 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

\SLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

\SLF@lof

\SLF@read

```

2378 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
2379 \ifeof\@inputcheck
2380 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0014>]{minitoc}%
2381 {No file #1\MessageBreak SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
2382 \expandafter\SLF@lof
2383 \else

```

```

2384 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0036>]{minitoc}%
2385 {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
2386 \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The . . . . . make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:

\SLF@test

```

\SLF@line 2387 \def\SLF@read{%
2388 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
2389 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line. . . . \SLF@% %%H0: . added
2390 }%

```

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit sections;

\SLF@contentsline

\mtc@string

```

\SLF@list 2391 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLF@lof 2392 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 2393 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2394 \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2395 \let\mtc@string\relax
2396 \else\ifx#1\@input
2397 \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
2398 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2399 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2400 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2401 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2402 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2403 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2404 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
2405 \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%

```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@loop 2406 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2407 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
2408 \SLT@loop{#1}}

```

\SLT@lot Check if the list is empty:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@explist 2409 \def\SLT@lot{%
2410 \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

```

```

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 2411 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\sltname 2412 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 2413 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
2414 \stepcounter{stc}%
2415 %% \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname it:

```

```

2416 \if@longextensions@%
2417 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2418 {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
2419 \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
2420 \else
2421 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2422 {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
2423 \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
2424 \fi
2425 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2426 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
2427 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\table 2428 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subtable 2429 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
2430 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
2431 \fi
2432 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
2433 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
2434 \fi
2435 }

```

```

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next process the first one.
\SLT@list
2436 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

```

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
\SLT@read
2437 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
2438 \ifeof\@inputcheck

```

```

2439 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0015>]{minitoc}%
2440 {No file #1\MessageBreak SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
2441 \expandafter\SLT@lot
2442 \else
2443 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0039>]{minitoc}%
2444 {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
2445 \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\SLT@read The . . . . . make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:

\SLT@test

```

\SLT@line 2446 \def\SLT@read{%
2447 \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
2448 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@ %%H0: . added
2449 }%

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit sections;

\mtc@string

```

\SLT@list 2450 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLT@lot 2451 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 2452 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2453 \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2454 \let\mtc@string\relax
2455 \else\ifx#1\@input
2456 \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
2457 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2458 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2459 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2460 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2461 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2462 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2463 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
2464 \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

## 9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test \@ifundefined{section}, the *true* branch of the test \@ifundefined{chapter} and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```

2465 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
2466 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@

```

## 9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```

\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 2467 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\mtcprepare@]{\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 2468 \def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
 \jobname 2469 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
 \doparttoc 2470 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}}%
 \dopartlof 2471 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}}%
 \dopartlot 2472 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}}%
 \dominitoc 2473 }%
 \dominilof 2474 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
 \dominilot 2475 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
 \dosecttoc 2476 {}%
 \dosectlof 2477 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}}%
 \dosectlot 2478 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}}%
 \dosectlot 2479 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}}%
\mtcPackageInfo 2480 }%
2481 }{%
2482 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}}%
2483 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}}%
2484 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}}%
2485 }%
2486 \if@mtc@hints@
2487 \@mtc@hints@given@true
2488 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0048>]{minitoc(hints)}%
2489 {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some\MessageBreak
2490 hints about the preparation commands,\MessageBreak
2491 because it invokes ALL the preparation\MessageBreak
2492 commands allowed by the document class,\MessageBreak
2493 without any previous check\@gobble}%
2494 \fi
2495 }

```

## 9.64 Necessary `\l@...` commands

```

\l@listof Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
\l@starpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection 2496 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\l@starsubsection 2497 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\l@starsubsubsection 2498 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starparagraph 2499 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starsubparagraph 2500 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
2501 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
2502 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
2503 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}

```

```
2504 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}
```

## 9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values

```
\noptcrule We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the vari-
\nomtrule ous kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding
\nostcrule horizontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules.
\ptcrule
\mtcrule 2505 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 2506 \def\nomtrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\noplfrule 2507 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\nomlfrule 2508 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\noslfrule 2509 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\plfrule 2510 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlfrule 2511 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slfrule 2512 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\nopltrule 2513 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\nomltrule
\nosltrule 2514 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\pltrule 2515 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\mltrule 2516 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\sltrule 2517 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\columnwidth 2518 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2519 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2520 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2521 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2522 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

2523 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
2524 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
2525 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
2526 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2527 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2528 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2529 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2530 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2531 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
```

## 9.66 The \mtcset... commands

These commands<sup>7</sup> have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

---

<sup>7</sup> The general concept of the \mtcset... commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.



### 9.66.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
2532 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
2533 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
2534 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
2535 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
2536 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
2537 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
2538 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
2539 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
2540 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
2541 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
2542 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
2543 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
2544 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
2545 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
2546 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
2547 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
2548 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
2549 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms<sup>8</sup> and meaning false or true:

```
2550 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
2551 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
```

<sup>8</sup> This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter \csname ... \endcsname`.

```

2552 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
2553 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
2554 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
2555 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
2556 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
2557 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
2558 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
2559 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
2560 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
2561 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
2562 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
2563 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
2564 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
2565 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{no}\def\mtc@YN@on{no}
2566 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@ON{no}
2567 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{no}\def\mtc@YN@yes{no}
2568 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{no}\def\mtc@YN@YES{no}
2569 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@y{no}
2570 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@Y{no}
2571 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{no}\def\mtc@YN@true{no}
2572 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{no}
2573 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{no}\def\mtc@YN@t{no}
2574 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{no}\def\mtc@YN@T{no}
2575 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{no}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{no}
2576 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{no}
2577 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{no}\def\mtc@YN@v{no}
2578 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{no}\def\mtc@YN@TRUEV
2579 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{no}
2580 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{no}\def\mtc@YN@oui{no}
2581 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{no}\def\mtc@YN@O{no}
2582 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{no}\def\mtc@YN@o{no}
2583 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{no}

```

## 9.66.2 The \mtcsetfont command

\@namedef We define the sectionning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the highest sectionning level); “\*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

2584 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
2585 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
2586 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
2587 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
2588 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
2589 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
2590 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{*}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{*}
2591 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{F}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{F}
2592 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{T}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{T}
2593 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{SF}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{SF}
2594 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{ST}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{ST}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`, the *level-name* is a sectioning level like subsection (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [154] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2595 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
2596 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The `\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`.  
`\@nameuse`

```
2597 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
2598 \@mtc@setfont@true
2599 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2600 \@mtc@setfont@false
2601 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
2602 \mtcPackageError[<E0013>]{minitoc}%
2603 {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
2604 \MessageBreak
2605 (#1).
2606 \MessageBreak
2607 It should be a mini-table type
2608 \MessageBreak
2609 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2610 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2611 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2612 \else
2613 \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2614 \fi
```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph keyword, we get SP.  
`\if@mtc@setfont@`  
`\@nameuse`

```
2615 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
2616 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
```

```

2617 \@mtc@setfont@false
2618 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
2619 \mtcPackageError[<E0014>]{minitoc}%
2620 {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
2621 \MessageBreak
2622 (#2).
2623 \MessageBreak
2624 It should be a sectionning level
2625 \MessageBreak
2626 (part...subparagraph) or * }%
2627 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2628 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2629 \else
2630 \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
2631 \fi

```

```

\mtc@tmp@name Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:
\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev 2632 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

```

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get mtcSSfont, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a \csname ... \endcsname pair to apply the constructed command).

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of
the mini-table), so we must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined
commands (quarks) with @mtcqk at the end of their names).

```

```

2633 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
2634 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
2635 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}
2636 \def\partlof@mtcqk{partlof@mtcqk}
2637 \def\minilof@mtcqk{minilof@mtcqk}
2638 \def\sectlof@mtcqk{sectlof@mtcqk}
2639 \def\partlot@mtcqk{partlot@mtcqk}
2640 \def\minilot@mtcqk{minilot@mtcqk}
2641 \def\sectlot@mtcqk{sectlot@mtcqk}
2642 \def\part@mtcqk{part@mtcqk}
2643 \def\chapter@mtcqk{chapter@mtcqk}
2644 \def\section@mtcqk{section@mtcqk}
2645 \def\subsection@mtcqk{subsection@mtcqk}
2646 \def\subsubsection@mtcqk{subsubsection@mtcqk}
2647 \def\paragraph@mtcqk{paragraph@mtcqk}
2648 \def\subparagraph@mtcqk{subparagraph@mtcqk}
2649 \def\figure@mtcqk{figure@mtcqk}
2650 \def\table@mtcqk{table@mtcqk}
2651 \def\subfigure@mtcqk{subfigure@mtcqk}
2652 \def\subtable@mtcqk{subtable@mtcqk}
2653 \@mtc@setfont@true
2654 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\parttoc@mtcqk\relax

```

```

2655 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2656 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2657 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2658 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2659 \fi
2660 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlof@mtcck\relax
2661 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2662 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2663 \fi
2664 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlot@mtcck\relax
2665 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2666 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2667 \fi
2668 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minitoc@mtcck\relax
2669 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2670 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2671 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2672 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2673 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2674 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2675 \fi
2676 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
2677 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2678 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2679 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2680 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2681 \fi
2682 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
2683 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2684 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2685 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2686 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2687 \fi
2688 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
2689 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2690 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2691 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2692 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2693 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2694 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2695 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2696 \fi
2697 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
2698 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2699 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2700 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2701 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2702 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2703 \fi
2704 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
2705 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2706 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2707 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2708 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

```

2709 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2710 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setfont@` If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of `\mtcsetfont` and we log that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*).

`\mtc@tmp@name`

`\mtc@mta@abbrev`

`\mtc@level@abbrev`

`\mtc@toks` If the combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.

```

2711 \if@mtc@setfont@
2712 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
2713 \mtc@toks{#3}
2714 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0015>]{minitoc}%
2715 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
2716 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
2717 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{#3}
2718 \else
2719 \mtcPackageError[<E0024>]{minitoc}%
2720 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible\MessageBreak
2721 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
2722 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2723 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2724 \fi
2725 }

```

### 9.66.3 The `\mtcsettitlefont` command

`\mtcsettitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [154] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2726 \newif\if@mtc@settitlefont@\@mtc@settitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
2727 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:  
`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@`  
`\@nameuse`

```

2728 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
2729 \@mtc@setttitlefont@true
2730 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
2731 \@mtc@setttitlefont@false
2732 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
2733 \mtcPackageError[<E0022>]{minitoc}%
2734 {\string\mtcsetttitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
2735 \MessageBreak
2736 (#1).
2737 \MessageBreak
2738 It should be a mini-table type
2739 \MessageBreak
2740 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
2741 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2742 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2743 \else
2744 \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
2745 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:

```

\mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 2746 \if@mtc@setttitlefont@
\mtc@toks 2747 \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
2748 \mtc@toks{#2}
2749 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0018>]{minitoc}%
2750 {\string\mtcsetttitlefont\space redefines the macro
2751 \MessageBreak "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
2752 \MessageBreak "\the\mtc@toks"}
2753 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{#2}
2754 \else
2755 \mtcPackageError[<E0034>]{minitoc}%
2756 {The macre \string\mtcsetttitlefont\space uses\MessageBreak
2757 an illegal type of table (#1)}%
2758 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2759 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
2760 \fi
2761 }

```

### 9.66.4 The `\mtcsetttitle` command

`\mtcsetttitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetttitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetttitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2762 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
2763 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtati@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family. The result is stored in

`\if@mtc@settitle@` `\mtc@mtati@abbrev`:

`\@nameuse`

```
2764 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
2765 \@mtc@settitle@true
2766 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2767 \@mtc@settitle@false
2768 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
2769 \mtcPackageError[<E0021>]{minitoc}%
2770 {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
2771 \MessageBreak
2772 (#1).
2773 \MessageBreak
2774 It should be a mini-table type
2775 \MessageBreak
2776 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2777 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2778 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2779 \else
2780 \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2781 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitle@` And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

`\mtc@tmpti@name`

```
\mtc@mtati@abbrev 2782 \if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@toks 2783 \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}
2784 \mtc@toks{#2}
2785 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0017>]{minitoc}%
2786 {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
2787 "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
2788 \MessageBreak "\the\mtc@toks"}
2789 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{#2}
2790 \else
2791 \mtcPackageError[<E0033>]{minitoc}%
2792 {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses\MessageBreak
2793 an illegal type of table (#1)}%
2794 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2795 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
```



```
2796 \fi
2797 }
```

### 9.66.5 The `\mtcsetformat` command

`\@namedef` We define first the keywords (family `formatparam`) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```
2798 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
2799 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}
2800 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
2801 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
2802 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
2803 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
2804 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
2805 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available
```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```
2806 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

`\@pnumwidth` We take, if possible, the default value of `\@pnumwidth` for each type of mini-tables:

```
\ptcpnumwidth
\mtcpnumwidth 2807 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 2808 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 2809 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 2810 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 2811 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 2812 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 2813 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 2814 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
2815 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
```

`\@tocrmarg` We take, if possible, the default value of `\@tocrmarg` for each type of mini-tables:

```
\ptctocrmarg
\mtcclofrmarg 2816 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrarg 2817 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 2818 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflocrmarg 2819 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflocrmarg 2820 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 2821 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlttocrmarg 2822 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slttocrmarg 2823 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
2824 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
```

`\@dotsep` We take, if possible, the default value of `\@dotsep` for each type of mini-tables:

```

\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 2825 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 2826 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 2827 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 2828 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 2829 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 2830 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 2831 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 2832 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
2833 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
```

And we terminate the `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
2834 }
```

`\mtcsetformat` The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the `\mtc@verse`-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by `\mtcsetformat`.

`\ptc@setform` The `\ptc@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:

```

ptc@verse
2835 \def\ptc@setform{%
2836 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
2837 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
2838 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
2839 }
```

`\mtc@setform` The `\mtc@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:

```

mtc@verse
2840 \def\mtc@setform{%
2841 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
2842 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
2843 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
2844 }
```

`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:

```

stc@verse
2845 \def\stc@setform{%
2846 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
2847 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
2848 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
2849 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
2850 \def\plf@setform{%
2851 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2852 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2853 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2854 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
2855 \def\mlf@setform{%
2856 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
2857 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
2858 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
2859 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
2860 \def\slf@setform{%
2861 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
2862 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
2863 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
2864 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
2865 \def\plt@setform{%
2866 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
2867 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
2868 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
2869 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
2870 \def\mlt@setform{%
2871 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2872 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2873 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2874 }
```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
2875 \def\slt@setform{%
2876 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
```

```

2877 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2878 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2879 }

```

\if@mtc@setformat@ We now define a flag and the \mtcsetformat command, which has the following syntax:  
 \mtcsetformat

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```

2880 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
2881 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%

```

\mtc@mtf@abbrev We now process the first argument and store the result in \mtc@mtf@abbrev:  
 \mtc@fparam@abbrev

```

2882 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
2883 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
2884 \@mtc@setformat@true
2885 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2886 \@mtc@setformat@false
2887 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
2888 \mtcPackageError[<E0015>]{minitoc}%
2889 {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
2890 \MessageBreak
2891 (#1).
2892 \MessageBreak
2893 It should be a mini-table type
2894 \MessageBreak
2895 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2896 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2897 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2898 \else
2899 \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2900 \fi

```

\mtc@fparam@abbrev Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro \mtc@fparam@abbrev:  
 \@nameuse

```

2901 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
2902 \@mtc@setformat@false
2903 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
2904 \mtcPackageError[<E0016>]{minitoc}%
2905 {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
2906 \MessageBreak
2907 (#2).
2908 \MessageBreak

```

```

2909 It should be a formatting param choosen from:\MessageBreak
2910 pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval}%
2911 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2912 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2913 \else
2914 \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}
2915 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setformat@ The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value:
 \mtc@tmpfm@name
 \mtc@mtf@abbrev
\mtc@fparam@abbrev 2916 \if@mtc@setformat@
2917 \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}
2918 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0016>]{minitoc}%
2919 {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
2920 "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\string#3"}
2921 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{#3}
2922 \else
2923 \mtcPackageError[<E0025>]{minitoc}%
2924 {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible\MessageBreak
2925 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
2926 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2927 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2928 \fi
2929 }

```

### 9.66.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (parttoc, ... sectlot), or on and off a keyword to activate (on) or inhibit (off) the page numbers. on and off have many synonyms.

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ We define some flags:
 \if@mtc@spn@ok@
2930 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
2931 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@

```

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

2932 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
2933 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname*\relax
2934 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
2935 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}
2936 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}
2937 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
2938 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2939 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
2940 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
2941 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
2942 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
2943 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
2944 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
2945 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
2946 \else
2947 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
2948 \fi
2949 }
```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

```

2950 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in `\mtc@pnsw@abbrev`

`\mtc@pnsw@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

```

2951 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2952 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
2953 \def\mtc@pnsw@abbrev{}
2954 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2955 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
2956 \def\mtc@pnsw@abbrev{X}
2957 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2958 \mtcPackageError[<E0017>]{minitoc}%
2959 {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
2960 \MessageBreak
2961 argument (#1)}%
2962 {It should be a mini-table type
2963 \MessageBreak
2964 (parttoc...sectlot)\MessageBreak
2965 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2966 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2967 \else
2968 \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2969 \fi
```

```

\if@mtc@spn@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result into a macro
\mtc@pns@abbrev \mtc@pns@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttpn@abbrev
\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 2970 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 2971 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
2972 \@mtc@spn@ok@false
2973 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
2974 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2975 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
2976 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
2977 \mtcPackageError[<E0018>]{minitoc}%
2978 {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
2979 \MessageBreak
2980 argument (#2)}%
2981 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)\MessageBreak
2982 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
2983 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2984 \else
2985 \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
2986 \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
2987 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
2988 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mttpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
2989 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
2990 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0022>]{minitoc}%
2991 {Page numbers are inhibited\MessageBreak for the #1s}
2992 \else
2993 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0021>]{minitoc}%
2994 {Page numbers are activated\MessageBreak for the #1s}
2995 \fi
2996 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
2997 \fi
2998 }

```

### 9.66.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```

\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
 \if@mtc@sru@ok@
 2999 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
 3000 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@

\mtcsetrules We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
\@ifundefined \mtcsetrules@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only
\mtcsetrules@ once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

```

3001 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
3002 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname*\relax
3003 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
3004 {\mtcsetrules@{parttoc}{#2}}
3005 \mtcsetrules@{partlof}{#2}
3006 \mtcsetrules@{partlot}{#2}}
3007 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
3008 {\mtcsetrules@{minitoc}{#2}}
3009 \mtcsetrules@{minilof}{#2}
3010 \mtcsetrules@{minilot}{#2}}
3011 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
3012 {\mtcsetrules@{secttoc}{#2}}
3013 \mtcsetrules@{sectlof}{#2}
3014 \mtcsetrules@{sectlot}{#2}}
3015 \else
3016 \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
3017 \fi
3018 }

```

\mtcsetrules@ Then the \mtcsetrules@ internal macro, which has two arguments:

```

3019 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%

```

```

\mtc@mttru@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family and store the result in a
\if@mtc@setrules@ macro \mtc@mttru@abbrev:
\mtc@rusw@abbrev

```

```

 \@nameuse 3020 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3021 \@mtc@setrules@true
3022 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
3023 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3024 \@mtc@setrules@false
3025 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
3026 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3027 \mtcPackageError[<E0019>]{minitoc}%
3028 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
3029 \MessageBreak
3030 (#1)}%
3031 {It should be a mini-table type
3032 \MessageBreak

```



```

3033 (parttoc...sectlot)
3034 \MessageBreak
3035 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3036 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3037 \else
3038 \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
3039 \fi

\if@mtc@sru@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in a macro
\mtc@rusw@abbrev \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttru@abbrev
if@setrules@false 3040 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
 3041 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 3042 \@mtc@sru@ok@false
 3043 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
 3044 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
 3045 \@mtc@setrules@false
 3046 \mtcPackageError[<E0020>]{minitoc}%
 3047 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
 3048 \MessageBreak
 3049 (#2)}%
 3050 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off)
 3051 \MessageBreak
 3052 Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
 3053 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
 3054 \else
 3055 \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
 3056 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
 3057 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
 3058 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
 3059 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
 3060 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0008>]{minitoc}%
 3061 {Horizontal rules are inhibited\MessageBreak for the #1s}
 3062 \else
 3063 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0007>]{minitoc}%
 3064 {Horizontal rules are activated\MessageBreak for the #1s}
 3065 \fi
 3066 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
 3067 \fi
 3068 }

```

### 9.66.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “thispage” is used.

A family (1typetable) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```

3069 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
3070 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
3071 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
3072 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
3073 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
3074 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
3075 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
3076 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
3077 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (featureparam) for the type of feature:

```

3078 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
3079 \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
3080 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
3081 \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
3082 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
3083 \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (ft3) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

3084 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
3085 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
3086 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
3087 \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:  
`\mtcsetfeature`

```

3088 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
3089 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result in  
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`:

```

3090 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
3091 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
3092 \@mtc@setfeature@true
3093 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3094 \@mtc@setfeature@false

```

```

3095 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
3096 \mtcPackageError[<E0011>]{minitoc}%
3097 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
3098 \MessageBreak
3099 (#1).
3100 \MessageBreak
3101 It should be a mini-table type
3102 \MessageBreak
3103 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
3104 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3105 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3106 \else
3107 \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
3108 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in \mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.

```

\@nameuse
3109 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
3110 \@mtc@setfeature@false
3111 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
3112 \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
3113 \mtcPackageError[<E0012>]{minitoc}%
3114 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
3115 \MessageBreak
3116 (#2).
3117 \MessageBreak
3118 It should be a feature param
3119 \MessageBreak
3120 (before, after, pagestyle)}}%
3121 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3122 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3123 \else
3124 \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
3125 \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
3126 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces \mtc@tmpfeat@name (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third respectively), then this macro is executed:

```

\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@third
3127 \if@mtc@setfeature@
3128 \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
3129 {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}
3130 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0014>]{minitoc}%
3131 {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro\MessageBreak
3132 "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as\MessageBreak "\string#3"}
3133 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{#3}
3134 \else

```

```

3135 \mtcPackageError[<E0023>]{minitoc}%
3136 {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible\MessageBreak
3137 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
3138 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3139 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3140 \fi}

```

### 9.66.9 The `\mtcsetdepth` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```



The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the `subfig` package [92]).

`\if@mtc@setdepth@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
3141 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

`\mtcsetdepth` Then we define the `\mtcsetdepth` command, with two arguments:

```
3142 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtade@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family. The result is stored in  
`\if@mtc@setdepth@` `\mtc@mtade@abbrev:`  
`\@nameuse`

```

3143 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
3144 \@mtc@setdepth@true
3145 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3146 \@mtc@setdepth@false
3147 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
3148 \mtcPackageError[<E0009>]{minitoc}%
3149 {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
3150 \MessageBreak (#1).
3151 \MessageBreak
3152 It should be a mini-table type
3153 \MessageBreak
3154 (parttoc...sectlot)}%
3155 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3156 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3157 \else
3158 \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
3159 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:
\mtc@tmpde@name
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 3160 \if@mtc@setdepth@
\mtc@toks 3161 \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
\setcounter 3162 \expandafter\noexpand\ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
3163 {\mtcPackageError[<E0008>]{minitoc}%
3164 {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use\MessageBreak
3165 an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
3166 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3167 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{%
3168 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
3169 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0013>]{minitoc}%
3170 {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter\MessageBreak
3171 "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
3172 \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
3173 \else
3174 \mtcPackageError[<E0010>]{minitoc}%
3175 {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
3176 {Correct the source code.\MessageBreak
3177 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}{\relax}
3178 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

## 9.67 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```
3179 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false
```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
\mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
\arabic
\addtocontents 3180 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
\setcounter 3181 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
3182 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
3183 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[<E0005>]{minitoc}%
3184 {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
3185 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
3186 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
3187 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3188 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3189 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0031>]{minitoc}%
3190 {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
3191 {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
3192 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
3193 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must ver-
\if@mtc@Himlof@ ify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these
mtchideinmainlof environments. This must be done after the loading of the packages.
\mtc@sv@lofdepth
\mtc@sv@tocdepth First, for the list of figures:
\mtc@svf@tocdepth
\arabic 3194 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\addtocontents 3195 \AtBeginDocument{%
\setcounter 3196 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3197 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
3198 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
3199 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
3200 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
3201 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
3202 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3203 \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3204 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3205 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3206 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
3207 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
3208 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
3209 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
3210 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
3211 }}%
3212 {%
3213 \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
3214 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
3215 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
3216 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
3217 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
3218 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
3219 \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
3220 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
3221 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3222 {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
3223 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
3224 {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
3225 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
3226 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 3227 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 3228 \AtBeginDocument{%
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 3229 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 3230 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
\arabic 3231 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
\addtocontents 3232 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
\setcounter 3233 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}}\fi
3234 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
3235 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3236 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%

```

```

3237 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3238 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3239 {\if@mtc@Himlot@else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
3240 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
3241 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3242 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
3243 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
3244 }}%
3245 {%
3246 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
3247 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
3248 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
3249 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
3250 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
3251 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3252 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
3253 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
3254 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{lotdepth}{#1}}}%
3255 {\if@mtc@Himlot@else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
3256 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
3257 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3258 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
3259 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restorelotdepth}}}%

```

## 9.68 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@glofix@level Depending of the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@glofix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

3260 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3261 \@ifundefined{section}%
3262 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0001>]{minitoc}%
3263 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
3264 \MessageBreak Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space
3265 without\MessageBreak optional argument [part]}}%
3266 \@ifundefined{part}%
3267 {\mtcPackageError[<E0001>]{minitoc}%
3268 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
3269 {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
3270 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0006>]{minitoc}%
3271 {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used\MessageBreak

```

```

3272 with the [part] optional argument, \MessageBreak
3273 which becomes the default}%
3274 \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
3275 }}%
3276 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
3277 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

\if@mtcfixglossary@ Then we define a flag (\if@mtcfixglossary@) and the command \mtcfixglossary, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

```

\addcontentsline
3278 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \mtcfixglossary@false
3279 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
3280 \@mtcfixglossary@false
3281 \expandafter%
3282 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3283 \expandafter%
3284 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3285 \expandafter%
3286 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3287 \if@mtcfixglossary@
3288 \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
3289 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
3290 \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
3291 \else
3292 \mtcPackageError[<E0026>]{minitoc}%
3293 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
3294 \MessageBreak
3295 is wrong}%
3296 {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level),
3297 or be part, chapter or section}%
3298 \fi
3299 }%

```

## 9.69 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

\ifundefined Depending of the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@ixfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```
3300 \ifundefined{chapter}{}%
```



```

3301 \ifundefined{section}%
3302 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0002>]{minitoc}%
3303 {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
3304 \MessageBreak Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space
3305 without\MessageBreak optional argument [part]}}%
3306 \ifundefined{part}%
3307 {\mtcPackageError[<E0002>]{minitoc}%
3308 {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
3309 {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
3310 {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0007>]{minitoc}%
3311 {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with\MessageBreak
3312 the [part] optional argument,\MessageBreak
3313 which becomes the default}}%
3314 \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
3315 }%
3316 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
3317 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}

```

\if@mtcfixindex@ Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixindex, which adds the necessary lines in the  
\mtcfixindex TOC, the LOF and the LOT.  
\addcontentsline

```

3318 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
3319 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
3320 \@mtcfixindex@false
3321 \expandafter%
3322 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3323 \expandafter%
3324 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3325 \expandafter%
3326 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3327 \if@mtcfixindex@
3328 \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
3329 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
3330 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
3331 \else
3332 \mtcPackageError[<E0027>]{minitoc}%
3333 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
3334 \MessageBreak
3335 is wrong}%
3336 {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level),
3337 or be part, chapter or section}%
3338 \fi
3339 }%

```

## 9.70 The `\mtcselectlanguage` command

`\mtcselectlanguage` This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language.mld* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag `\if@mtc@insellang@` `\IfFileExists` `\if@mtc@insellang@` is true while we are in this macro.

```

\@input
3340 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
3341 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
3342 \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
3343 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0010>]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
3344 \MessageBreak}}%
3345 {\mtcPackageError[<E0006>]{minitoc}%
3346 {#1 is not a known language, \MessageBreak
3347 #1.mld not found. \MessageBreak
3348 Command ignored}%
3349 {See the minitoc documentation. \MessageBreak
3350 Correct the source using a valid language name. \MessageBreak
3351 Press RETURN}}}%
3352 }
```

## 9.71 The `\mtcloadmlo` internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used `\if@mtc@insellang@` `\IfFileExists` `\@input` only in some .mld files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of minitoc.dtx. The .mlo files are generated by filecontents environments in the minitoc.ins file. But first, we verify that this .mlo file exists.



*This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag `\if@mtc@insellang@`.*

```

3353 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
3354 \if@mtc@insellang@
3355 \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
3356 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0011>]{minitoc}%
3357 {#1 minitoc language object selected.\MessageBreak}}%
3358 {\mtcPackageError[<E0007>]{minitoc}%
3359 {#1 is not a known minitoc\MessageBreak
3360 language object file (.mlo), \MessageBreak
3361 #1.mlo not found. \MessageBreak
3362 Command ignored}%
3363 {See the minitoc documentation. \MessageBreak
3364 Correct the source using a valid language name. \MessageBreak
3365 Press RETURN}}}%
3366 \else
3367 \mtcPackageError[<E0032>]{minitoc}%
3368 {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command\MessageBreak
3369 outside of a .mld file}%

```

```

3370 {It will be ignored}
3371 \@mtc@insellang@false
3372 \fi
3373 }

```

## 9.72 The “coffee breaks”

`\addcoffeeline` For the minutes package [158] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we define `\addcoffeeline`, `\coffeeline` and `\l@coffee`, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```

\@Undottedtocline
3374 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3375 \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}}
3376 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
3377 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}

```

## 9.73 Initialization of counters

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.

```

\@ifundefined
\setcounter
3378 \AtBeginDocument{%
3379 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
3380 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3381 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}}

```

## 9.74 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

### 9.74.1 Options `tight` and `loose`, `k-tight` and `k-loose`

`\DeclareOption` These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.

```

\iftightmtc
\kiftightmtc
3382 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
3383 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
3384 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
3385 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default

```

### 9.74.2 Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.  
`\if@mtc@checkfiles`

```
3386 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
3387 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}
```

### 9.74.3 Options dotted and undotted

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.  
`\ifundottedmtc`

```
3388 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
3389 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

### 9.74.4 Option notoccite

`\DeclareOption` This option will later load the notoccite package [8].  
`\if@mtc@notoccite@`

```
3390 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

### 9.74.5 Option shorttext

`\DeclareOption` This option forces the use of short extensions.  
`\if@longextensions@`

```
3391 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{\@longextensions@false}
3392 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0020>]{minitoc}%
3393 {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

## 9.75 The insection option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` This option is available only if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined. It is to be revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)<sup>9</sup>.  
`\@ifundefined`  
`\DeclareOption`

```
3394 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
3395 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
```

---

<sup>9</sup> Please, do not dream too much!

```

3396 \ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
3397 \mtcPackageError[<E0035>]{minitoc}%
3398 {You have used the 'insection' option in
3399 \MessageBreak
3400 a document where chapters are defined.
3401 \MessageBreak
3402 This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
3403 {Remove this option.\MessageBreak
3404 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3405 }}%
3406 {%
3407 \DeclareOption{insection}%
3408 {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
3409 }%
3410 }}

```

## 9.76 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the `minitoc` package. This is the default. This file is named `<document>.maf`. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```

3411 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
3412 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
3413 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}

```

## 9.77 Language options

`\DeclareOption` Each language option reads the corresponding `language.mld` file via the specialized macro `\mtcselectlanguage`. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a `language.mld` file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as `american.mld` loads `english.mld`).

```

3414 \DeclareOption{acadian}{\mtcselectlanguage{acadian}}%
3415 \DeclareOption{acadien}{\mtcselectlanguage{acadien}}%
3416 \DeclareOption{afrikaan}{\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}}%
3417 \DeclareOption{afrikaans}{\mtcselectlanguage{afrikaans}}%
3418 \DeclareOption{albanian}{\mtcselectlanguage{albanian}}%
3419 \DeclareOption{american}{\mtcselectlanguage{american}}%
3420 \DeclareOption{arab}{\mtcselectlanguage{arab}}%
3421 \DeclareOption{arab2}{\mtcselectlanguage{arab2}}%
3422 \DeclareOption{arabi}{\mtcselectlanguage{arabi}}%
3423 \DeclareOption{arabic}{\mtcselectlanguage{arabic}}%

```

```

3424 \DeclareOption{armenian}{\mtcselectlanguage{armenian}}%
3425 \DeclareOption{australian}{\mtcselectlanguage{australian}}%
3426 \DeclareOption{austrian}{\mtcselectlanguage{austrian}}%
3427 \DeclareOption{bahasa}{\mtcselectlanguage{bahasa}}%
3428 \DeclareOption{bahasai}{\mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}}%
3429 \DeclareOption{bahasam}{\mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}}%
3430 \DeclareOption{bangla}{\mtcselectlanguage{bangla}}%
3431 \DeclareOption{basque}{\mtcselectlanguage{basque}}%
3432 \DeclareOption{bicig}{\mtcselectlanguage{bicig}}%
3433 \DeclareOption{bicig2}{\mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}}%
3434 \DeclareOption{bicig3}{\mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}}%
3435 \DeclareOption{bihe}{\mtcselectlanguage{bihe}}%
3436 \DeclareOption{brazil}{\mtcselectlanguage{brazil}}%
3437 \DeclareOption{brazilian}{\mtcselectlanguage{brazilian}}%
3438 \DeclareOption{breton}{\mtcselectlanguage{breton}}%
3439 \DeclareOption{british}{\mtcselectlanguage{british}}%
3440 \DeclareOption{bulgarian}{\mtcselectlanguage{bulgarian}}%
3441 \DeclareOption{bulgarianb}{\mtcselectlanguage{bulgarianb}}%
3442 \DeclareOption{buryat}{\mtcselectlanguage{buryat}}%
3443 \DeclareOption{buryat2}{\mtcselectlanguage{buryat2}}%
3444 \DeclareOption{canadian}{\mtcselectlanguage{canadian}}%
3445 \DeclareOption{canadien}{\mtcselectlanguage{canadien}}%
3446 \DeclareOption{castillan}{\mtcselectlanguage{castillan}}%
3447 \DeclareOption{castillian}{\mtcselectlanguage{castillian}}%
3448 \DeclareOption{catalan}{\mtcselectlanguage{catalan}}%
3449 \DeclareOption{chinese1}{\mtcselectlanguage{chinese1}}%
3450 \DeclareOption{chinese2}{\mtcselectlanguage{chinese2}}%
3451 \DeclareOption{croatian}{\mtcselectlanguage{croatian}}%
3452 \DeclareOption{czech}{\mtcselectlanguage{czech}}%
3453 \DeclareOption{danish}{\mtcselectlanguage{danish}}%
3454 \DeclareOption{devanagari}{\mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}}%
3455 \DeclareOption{dutch}{\mtcselectlanguage{dutch}}%
3456 \DeclareOption{english}{\mtcselectlanguage{english}}%
3457 \DeclareOption{english1}{\mtcselectlanguage{english1}}%
3458 \DeclareOption{english2}{\mtcselectlanguage{english2}}%
3459 \DeclareOption{esperant}{\mtcselectlanguage{esperant}}%
3460 \DeclareOption{esperanto}{\mtcselectlanguage{esperanto}}%
3461 \DeclareOption{estonian}{\mtcselectlanguage{estonian}}%
3462 \DeclareOption{ethiopia}{\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}}%
3463 \DeclareOption{ethiopian}{\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopian}}%
3464 \DeclareOption{ethiopian2}{\mtcselectlanguage{ethiopian2}}%
3465 \DeclareOption{farsi1}{\mtcselectlanguage{farsi1}}%
3466 \DeclareOption{farsi2}{\mtcselectlanguage{farsi2}}%
3467 \DeclareOption{farsi3}{\mtcselectlanguage{farsi3}}%
3468 \DeclareOption{finnish}{\mtcselectlanguage{finnish}}%
3469 \DeclareOption{finnish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{finnish2}}%
3470 \DeclareOption{francais}{\mtcselectlanguage{francais}}%
3471 \DeclareOption{french}{\mtcselectlanguage{french}}%
3472 \DeclareOption{french1}{\mtcselectlanguage{french1}}%
3473 \DeclareOption{french2}{\mtcselectlanguage{french2}}%
3474 \DeclareOption{frenchb}{\mtcselectlanguage{frenchb}}%
3475 \DeclareOption{frenchle}{\mtcselectlanguage{frenchle}}%
3476 \DeclareOption{frenchpro}{\mtcselectlanguage{frenchpro}}%
3477 \DeclareOption{galician}{\mtcselectlanguage{galician}}%

```

```

3478 \DeclareOption{german}{\mtcselectlanguage{german}}%
3479 \DeclareOption{germanb}{\mtcselectlanguage{germanb}}%
3480 \DeclareOption{germanb2}{\mtcselectlanguage{germanb2}}%
3481 \DeclareOption{greek}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek}}%
3482 \DeclareOption{greek-mono}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek-mono}}%
3483 \DeclareOption{greek-polydemo}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek-polydemo}}%
3484 \DeclareOption{greek-polykatha}{\mtcselectlanguage{greek-polykatha}}%
3485 \DeclareOption{guarani}{\mtcselectlanguage{guarani}}%
3486 \DeclareOption{hangul1}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul1}}%
3487 \DeclareOption{hangul2}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul2}}%
3488 \DeclareOption{hangul3}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul3}}%
3489 \DeclareOption{hangul4}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul4}}%
3490 \DeclareOption{hangul-u8}{\mtcselectlanguage{hangul-u8}}%
3491 \DeclareOption{hanja1}{\mtcselectlanguage{hanja1}}%
3492 \DeclareOption{hanja2}{\mtcselectlanguage{hanja2}}%
3493 \DeclareOption{hanja-u8}{\mtcselectlanguage{hanja-u8}}%
3494 \DeclareOption{hebrew}{\mtcselectlanguage{hebrew}}%
3495 \DeclareOption{hebrew2}{\mtcselectlanguage{hebrew2}}%
3496 \DeclareOption{hindi}{\mtcselectlanguage{hindi}}%
3497 \DeclareOption{hindi-modern}{\mtcselectlanguage{hindi-modern}}%
3498 \DeclareOption{hungarian}{\mtcselectlanguage{hungarian}}%
3499 \DeclareOption{icelandic}{\mtcselectlanguage{icelandic}}%
3500 \DeclareOption{indon}{\mtcselectlanguage{indon}}%
3501 \DeclareOption{indonesian}{\mtcselectlanguage{indonesian}}%
3502 \DeclareOption{interlingua}{\mtcselectlanguage{interlingua}}%
3503 \DeclareOption{irish}{\mtcselectlanguage{irish}}%
3504 \DeclareOption{italian}{\mtcselectlanguage{italian}}%
3505 \DeclareOption{italian2}{\mtcselectlanguage{italian2}}%
3506 \DeclareOption{japanese}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese}}%
3507 \DeclareOption{japanese2}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese2}}%
3508 \DeclareOption{japanese3}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese3}}%
3509 \DeclareOption{japanese4}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese4}}%
3510 \DeclareOption{japanese5}{\mtcselectlanguage{japanese5}}%
3511 \DeclareOption{kannada}{\mtcselectlanguage{kannada}}%
3512 \DeclareOption{khalkha}{\mtcselectlanguage{khalkha}}%
3513 \DeclareOption{latin}{\mtcselectlanguage{latin}}%
3514 \DeclareOption{latin2}{\mtcselectlanguage{latin2}}%
3515 \DeclareOption{latvian}{\mtcselectlanguage{latvian}}%
3516 \DeclareOption{letton}{\mtcselectlanguage{letton}}%
3517 \DeclareOption{lithuanian}{\mtcselectlanguage{lithuanian}}%
3518 \DeclareOption{lowersorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{lowersorbian}}%
3519 \DeclareOption{lsorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{lsorbian}}%
3520 \DeclareOption{magyar}{\mtcselectlanguage{magyar}}%
3521 \DeclareOption{magyar2}{\mtcselectlanguage{magyar2}}%
3522 \DeclareOption{magyar3}{\mtcselectlanguage{magyar3}}%
3523 \DeclareOption{malay}{\mtcselectlanguage{malay}}%
3524 \DeclareOption{malayalam-keli}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-keli}}%
3525 \DeclareOption{malayalam-omega}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-omega}}%
3526 \DeclareOption{malayalam-rachana}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-rachana}}%
3527 \DeclareOption{malayalam-rachana2}{\mtcselectlanguage{malayalam-rachana2}}%
3528 \DeclareOption{manju}{\mtcselectlanguage{manju}}%
3529 \DeclareOption{meyalu}{\mtcselectlanguage{meyalu}}%
3530 \DeclareOption{mongol}{\mtcselectlanguage{mongol}}%
3531 \DeclareOption{naustrian}{\mtcselectlanguage{naustrian}}%

```

```

3532 \DeclareOption{newzealand}{\mtcselectlanguage{newzealand}}%
3533 \DeclareOption{ngerman}{\mtcselectlanguage{ngerman}}%
3534 \DeclareOption{ngermanb}{\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}}%
3535 \DeclareOption{ngermanb2}{\mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb2}}%
3536 \DeclareOption{norsk}{\mtcselectlanguage{norsk}}%
3537 \DeclareOption{norsk2}{\mtcselectlanguage{norsk2}}%
3538 \DeclareOption{nynorsk2}{\mtcselectlanguage{nynorsk2}}%
3539 \DeclareOption{polish}{\mtcselectlanguage{polish}}%
3540 \DeclareOption{polish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{polish2}}%
3541 \DeclareOption{polski}{\mtcselectlanguage{polski}}%
3542 \DeclareOption{portuges}{\mtcselectlanguage{portuges}}%
3543 \DeclareOption{portuguese}{\mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}}%
3544 \DeclareOption{romanian}{\mtcselectlanguage{romanian}}%
3545 \DeclareOption{romanian2}{\mtcselectlanguage{romanian2}}%
3546 \DeclareOption{romanian3}{\mtcselectlanguage{romanian3}}%
3547 \DeclareOption{russian}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian}}%
3548 \DeclareOption{russianb}{\mtcselectlanguage{russianb}}%
3549 \DeclareOption{russianc}{\mtcselectlanguage{russianc}}%
3550 \DeclareOption{russian2m}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian2m}}%
3551 \DeclareOption{russian2o}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian2o}}%
3552 \DeclareOption{russian-cca}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-cca}}%
3553 \DeclareOption{russian-ccal}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-ccal}}%
3554 \DeclareOption{russian-lh}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lh}}%
3555 \DeclareOption{russian-lhcyralt}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lhcyralt}}%
3556 \DeclareOption{russian-lhcyrkoi}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lhcyrkoi}}%
3557 \DeclareOption{russian-lhcyrwin}{\mtcselectlanguage{russian-lhcyrwin}}%
3558 \DeclareOption{samin}{\mtcselectlanguage{samin}}%
3559 \DeclareOption{scottish}{\mtcselectlanguage{scottish}}%
3560 \DeclareOption{serbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{serbian}}%
3561 \DeclareOption{serbianc}{\mtcselectlanguage{serbianc}}%
3562 \DeclareOption{slovak}{\mtcselectlanguage{slovak}}%
3563 \DeclareOption{slovene}{\mtcselectlanguage{slovene}}%
3564 \DeclareOption{spanish}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish}}%
3565 \DeclareOption{spanish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish2}}%
3566 \DeclareOption{spanish3}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish3}}%
3567 \DeclareOption{spanish4}{\mtcselectlanguage{spanish4}}%
3568 \DeclareOption{swedish}{\mtcselectlanguage{swedish}}%
3569 \DeclareOption{swedish2}{\mtcselectlanguage{swedish2}}%
3570 \DeclareOption{thai}{\mtcselectlanguage{thai}}%
3571 \DeclareOption{turkish}{\mtcselectlanguage{turkish}}%
3572 \DeclareOption{uighur}{\mtcselectlanguage{uighur}}%
3573 \DeclareOption{uighur2}{\mtcselectlanguage{uighur2}}%
3574 \DeclareOption{uighur3}{\mtcselectlanguage{uighur3}}%
3575 \DeclareOption{UKenglish}{\mtcselectlanguage{UKenglish}}%
3576 \DeclareOption{ukraineб}{\mtcselectlanguage{ukraineб}}%
3577 \DeclareOption{ukrainian}{\mtcselectlanguage{ukrainian}}%
3578 \DeclareOption{upporsorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{upporsorbian}}%
3579 \DeclareOption{USenglish}{\mtcselectlanguage{USenglish}}%
3580 \DeclareOption{usorbian}{\mtcselectlanguage{usorbian}}%
3581 \DeclareOption{vietnam}{\mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}}%
3582 \DeclareOption{vietnamese}{\mtcselectlanguage{vietnamese}}%
3583 \DeclareOption{welsh}{\mtcselectlanguage{welsh}}%
3584 \DeclareOption{xalx}{\mtcselectlanguage{xalx}}%
3585 \DeclareOption{xalx2}{\mtcselectlanguage{xalx2}}%

```



```
3586 \DeclareOption{xalx3}{\mtcselectlanguage{xalx3}}%
```

## 9.78 The hints option

`\DeclareOption` We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:  
`\if@mtc@hints@`

```
3587 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
3588 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}
```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` The hints option is made of three parts: the first, `\mtc@hints@begindoc`, is executed via  
`\AtBeginDocument` and looks if some packages or classes are loaded and gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and examines  
`\AtEndDocument` some flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the .log file and/or warnings on the screen and in the .log file. Note that the hints option does not signal errors, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run.

### 9.78.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for a `\AtBeginDocument` block):  
`\mtc@hints@begindoc`

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 3589 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3590 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3591 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
3592 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
3593 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
3594 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3595 {==> You requested the hints option\MessageBreak
3596 Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%
```

#### 9.78.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [82]), and emit a  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` warning, because this package is incompatible with minitoc:

```

3597 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
3598 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3599 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0025>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3600 {--- The alphanum package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3601 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the appendix package [229]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

3602 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
3603 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3604 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3605 {--- The appendix package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3606 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3607 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocbibind package [230]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

3608 \@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
3609 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3610 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3611 {--- The tocbibind package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3612 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3613 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

\@ifclassloaded We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [180]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

3614 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
3615 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3616 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3617 {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3618 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3619 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
3620 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
3621 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3622 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3623 {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3624 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3625 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

```

3626 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
3627 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3628 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3629 {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3630 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3631 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [227]:  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

3632 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
3633 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3634 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3635 {--- The tocloft package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3636 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3637 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.6 Hint about the titletoc package

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titletoc package [30], and emit a warning, because this package  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ is incompatible with minitoc:

```

3638 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
3639 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3640 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3641 {--- The titletoc package is loaded. \MessageBreak
3642 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.7 Hint about the placeins package

\@ifpackageloaded We test if the placeins package [9] is loaded and, if yes, we check that the right options are  
 \if@mtc@ss@insection@ selected:

```

\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3643 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
3644 {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
3645 \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
3646 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3647 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0031>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3648 {--- The placeins package is loaded
3649 \MessageBreak
3650 without the section option,
3651 \MessageBreak
3652 but minitoc used the insection option

```

```

3653 \MessageBreak
3654 which implies it. Try to inverse the
3655 \MessageBreak
3656 loading order and use coherent options.
3657 \MessageBreak
3658 You may have got a message\MessageBreak
3659 ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
3660 }%
3661 \ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
3662 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3663 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0084>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3664 {--- The placeins package is loaded
3665 \MessageBreak
3666 with the above option,
3667 \MessageBreak
3668 but minitoc used the insection option
3669 \MessageBreak
3670 which is incompatible with it.
3671 \MessageBreak
3672 Try to remove the above option
3673 \MessageBreak
3674 and use coherent options}%
3675 }{}%
3676 \ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
3677 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3678 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0085>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3679 {--- The placeins package is loaded
3680 \MessageBreak
3681 with the below option,
3682 \MessageBreak
3683 but minitoc used the insection option
3684 \MessageBreak
3685 which is incompatible with it.
3686 \MessageBreak
3687 Try to remove the below option
3688 \MessageBreak
3689 and use coherent options}%
3690 }{}%
3691 \fi
3692 \ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
3693 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3694 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0032>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3695 {--- The placeins package loaded is
3696 \MessageBreak
3697 too old. It should have a version
3698 \MessageBreak
3699 date of 2005/04/18 at least}%
3700 }%
3701 }{}%

```

**9.78.1.8 Hint about the memoir class**

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [234, 235] is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3702 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
3703 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3704 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3705 {--- The memoir class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3706 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3707 for specific precautions\@gobble}{}}%
3708 }{}%

```

**9.78.1.9 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes**

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes
\if@mtc@hints@given@ are incompatible with minitoc:

3709 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
3710 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3711 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0026>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3712 {--- The amsart class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3713 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%
3714 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
3715 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3716 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0027>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3717 {--- The amsproc class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3718 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%

```

**9.78.1.10 Hint about the amsbook class**

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3719 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
3720 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3721 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3722 {--- The amsbook class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3723 See the minitoc package documentation\MessageBreak
3724 for specific precautions\@gobble}{}}%
3725 }{}%

```

**9.78.1.11 Hint about the abstract package**

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the abstract package [228], then its options:
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

3726 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
3727 {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
3728 \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
3729 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3730 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3731 {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been\MessageBreak
3732 loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.\MessageBreak
3733 You need to look at the\MessageBreak
3734 documentation to adjust.
3735 \MessageBreak}
3736 }}{}

```

### 9.78.1.12 Hint about the jura class

\@ifclassloaded We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is incompatible with  
\if@mtc@hints@given@ minitoc:

```

3737 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
3738 {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3739 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0029>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3740 {--- The jura class is loaded. \MessageBreak
3741 It is incompatible\MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}{}%

```

### 9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands

\part To check if the sectionning commands \part, \chapter or \section have been  
\chapter altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing a  
\section \AtBeginDocument block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when  
\AtBeginDocument it is loaded) \mtc@hints@part, \mtc@hints@chapter and \mtc@hints@section. For  
\mtc@hints@part each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its  
\mtc@hints@chapter unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the hyperref package [196] may interfere,  
\mtc@hints@section hence the formal precautions in the messages.

#### 9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of \part :

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart:  
\ifundefined  
\part 3742 \@mtc@hints@w@false  
\mtc@hints@part 3743 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax  
\@part 3744 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}  
\mtc@hints@@part 3745 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax  
\@spart 3746 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}  
\mtc@hints@@spart 3747 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax  
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3748 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}  
\if@mtc@hyper@used@

```

3749 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
3750 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0030>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3751 {--- The \string\part\space command is altered\MessageBreak
3752 after minitoc}
3753 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
3754 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3755 {--- It may be the consequence\MessageBreak
3756 of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
3757 \fi
3758 \fi

```

### 9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of \chapter :

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
 \@ifundefined
 \chapter 3759 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 3760 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
 \@chapter 3761 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@chapter 3762 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
 \@schapter 3763 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@schapter 3764 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@schapter\relax
 \if@mtc@hints@given@ 3765 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 3766 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
3767 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0028>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3768 {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered\MessageBreak
3769 after minitoc}
3770 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
3771 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3772 {--- It may be the consequence\MessageBreak
3773 of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
3774 \fi
3775 \fi

```

### 9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of \section :

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
 \@ifundefined
 \section 3776 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 3777 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
 \@sect 3778 {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@sect 3779 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
 \@ssect 3780 {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@ssect 3781 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3782 {\@ifundefined{section}{}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 3783 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
3784 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
3785 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0039>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3786 {--- The \string\section\space command is altered\MessageBreak

```

```

3787 after minitoc}
3788 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
3789 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3790 {--- It may be the consequence\MessageBreak
3791 of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
3792 \fi
3793 \relax\else\fi}{}%

```

#### 9.78.1.14 Hint about the coherence of the calling sequences of some commands

And finally, we prepare the coherence tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]listofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]listofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3794 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3795 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
 3796 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
 3797 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

```

```

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@

```

```

\mtc@sv@listoffigures 3798 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 3799 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3800 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 3801 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 3802 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3803 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
 3804 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
 3805 \def\listoftables%
 3806 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

```

```

\mtc@sv@faketableofcontents Then, their ‘‘fake’’ siblings:
\faketableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 3807 \let\mtc@sv@faketableofcontents\faketableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures 3808 \def\faketableofcontents%
\fakelistoffigures 3809 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@faketableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3810 \let\mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures\fakelistoffigures
\mtc@sv@fakelistoftables 3811 \def\fakelistoffigures%
\fakelistoftables 3812 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3813 \let\mtc@sv@fakelistoftables\fakelistoftables
 3814 \def\fakelistoftables%
 3815 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fakelistoftables}
 3816 \fi

```



`\mtc@hints@begindoc` And the `\mtc@hints@begindoc` definition is finished (it begins in section 9.78.1 on page 369):

```
3817 }
```

## 9.78.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
3818 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

### 9.78.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

`\if@mtc@sect@floats@` We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

`\if@dosectlof@used@`

`\if@dosectlot@used@` 3819 `\if@dosectlof@used@``\@mtc@sect@floats@true``\fi`

`\if@sectlof@used@` 3820 `\if@dosectlot@used@``\@mtc@sect@floats@true``\fi`

`\if@sectlot@used@` 3821 `\if@sectlof@used@``\@mtc@sect@floats@true``\fi`

`\if@mtc@section@def@` 3822 `\if@sectlot@used@``\@mtc@sect@floats@true``\fi`

```
3823 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

`\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@` If yes, we verify that the `placeins` package [9] has been loaded with the correct options or that the `insection` option of the `minitoc` package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.

`\if@mtc@hints@w@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```
3824 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
```

```
3825 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
```

```
3826 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0056>]{minitoc(hints)}%
```

```
3827 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or \MessageBreak
```

```
3828 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
```

```
3829 \MessageBreak
```

```
3830 hence the ‘‘insection’’ package\MessageBreak
```

```
3831 option is recommended}%
```

```
3832 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
```

```
3833 \fi
```

```
3834 \fi
```

### 9.78.2.2 Final part of the coherence tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 3835 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3836 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 3837 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 3838 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0062>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 3839 {You have used \string\parttoc,\MessageBreak
\if@dopartlot@used@ 3840 but not \string\doparttoc}
3841 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3842 \fi
3843 \fi
3844 \if@partlof@used@
3845 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
3846 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0060>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3847 {You have used \string\partlof,\MessageBreak
3848 but not \string\dopartlof}
3849 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3850 \fi
3851 \fi
3852 \if@partlot@used@
3853 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
3854 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0061>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3855 {You have used \string\partlot,\MessageBreak
3856 but not \string\dopartlot}
3857 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3858 \fi
3859 \fi
3860 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 3861 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3862 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 3863 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 3864 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0059>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 3865 {You have used \string\minitoc,\MessageBreak
\if@dominilot@used@ 3866 but not \string\dominitoc}
3867 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3868 \fi
3869 \fi
3870 \if@minilof@used@
3871 \if@dominilof@used@\else
3872 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0057>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3873 {You have used \string\minilof,\MessageBreak
3874 but not \string\dominilof}
3875 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3876 \fi
3877 \fi
3878 \if@minilot@used@
3879 \if@dominilot@used@\else
3880 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0058>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3881 {You have used \string\minilot,\MessageBreak

```

```

3882 but not \string\dominilot}
3883 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3884 \fi
3885 \fi
3886 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
 \if@secttoc@used@
 \if@dosecttoc@used@ 3887 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3888 \if@secttoc@used@
 \if@sectlof@used@ 3889 \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 3890 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0065>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \if@sectlot@used@ 3891 {You have used \string\secttoc,\MessageBreak
\if@dosectlot@used@ 3892 but not \string\dosecttoc}
3893 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3894 \fi
3895 \fi
3896 \if@sectlof@used@
3897 \if@dosectlof@used@\else
3898 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0063>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3899 {You have used \string\sectlof,\MessageBreak
3900 but not \string\dosectlof}
3901 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3902 \fi
3903 \fi
3904 \if@sectlot@used@
3905 \if@dosectlot@used@\else
3906 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0064>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3907 {You have used \string\sectlot,\MessageBreak
3908 but not \string\dosectlot}
3909 \fi
3910 \fi
3911 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence its a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
 \if@parttoc@used@ 3912 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3913 \if@doparttoc@used@
 \if@dopartlof@used@ 3914 \if@parttoc@used@\else
 \if@partlof@used@ 3915 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0075>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 3916 {You have used \string\doparttoc,\MessageBreak
 \if@partlot@used@ 3917 but not \string\parttoc}
3918 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

```

3919 \fi
3920 \fi
3921 \if@dopartlof@used@
3922 \if@partlof@used@\else
3923 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0076>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3924 {You have used \string\dopartlof,\MessageBreak
3925 but not \string\partlof}
3926 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3927 \fi
3928 \fi
3929 \if@dopartlot@used@
3930 \if@partlot@used@\else
3931 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0077>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3932 {You have used \string\dopartlot,\MessageBreak
3933 but not \string\partlot}
3934 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3935 \fi
3936 \fi
3937 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 3938 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3939 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 3940 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 3941 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0078>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 3942 {You have used \string\dominitoc,\MessageBreak
\if@minilot@used@ 3943 but not \string\minitoc}
3944 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3945 \fi
3946 \fi
3947 \if@dominilof@used@
3948 \if@minilof@used@\else
3949 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0079>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3950 {You have used \string\dominilof,\MessageBreak
3951 but not \string\minilof}
3952 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3953 \fi
3954 \fi
3955 \if@dominilot@used@
3956 \if@minilot@used@\else
3957 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0080>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3958 {You have used \string\dominilot,\MessageBreak
3959 but not \string\minilot}
3960 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3961 \fi
3962 \fi
3963 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
 \if@secttoc@used@ 3964 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3965 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 3966 \if@secttoc@used@\else
 \if@sectlof@used@ 3967 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0081>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 3968 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,\MessageBreak
 \if@sectlot@used@ 3969 but not \string\secttoc}
 3970 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 3971 \fi
 3972 \fi
 3973 \if@dosectlof@used@
 3974 \if@sectlof@used@\else
 3975 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0082>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 3976 {You have used \string\dosectlof,\MessageBreak
 3977 but not \string\sectlof}
 3978 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 3979 \fi
 3980 \fi
 3981 \if@dosectlot@used@
 3982 \if@sectlot@used@\else
 3983 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0083>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 3984 {You have used \string\dosectlot,\MessageBreak
 3985 but not \string\sectlot}
 3986 \fi
 3987 \fi
 3988 \fi
 3989 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another coherence test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); and similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
 \if@parttoc@used@ 3990 \if@mtc@part@def@
 \ifmtc@toc@used@ 3991 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 3992 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
 \ifmtc@lof@used@ 3993 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0071>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 3994 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not\MessageBreak
 \ifmtc@lot@used@ 3995 \string\tableofcontents\MessageBreak nor
 3996 \string\faketableofcontents}
 3997 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 3998 \fi
 3999 \fi
 4000 \if@partlof@used@
 4001 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else

```

```

4002 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0069>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4003 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not\MessageBreak
4004 \string\listoffigures\MessageBreak nor
4005 \string\fake\listoffigures}
4006 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4007 \fi
4008 \fi
4009 \if@partlot@used@
4010 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
4011 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0070>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4012 {You have used \string\partlot\space but not\MessageBreak
4013 \string\listoftables\MessageBreak nor
4014 \string\fake\listoftables}
4015 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4016 \fi
4017 \fi
4018 \fi

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@minitoc@used@ 4019 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 4020 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 4021 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 4022 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0068>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 4023 {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not\MessageBreak
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 4024 \string\tableofcontents\MessageBreak nor
4025 \string\fake\tableofcontents}
4026 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4027 \fi
4028 \fi
4029 \if@minilof@used@
4030 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
4031 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0066>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4032 {You have used \string\minilof\space but not\MessageBreak
4033 \string\listoffigures\MessageBreak nor
4034 \string\fake\listoffigures}
4035 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4036 \fi
4037 \fi
4038 \if@minilot@used@
4039 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
4040 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0067>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4041 {You have used \string\minilot\space but not\MessageBreak
4042 \string\listoftables\MessageBreak nor
4043 \string\fake\listoftables}
4044 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4045 \fi
4046 \fi
4047 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
 \if@secttoc@used@ 4048 \if@mtc@section@def@
 \ifmtc@toc@used@ 4049 \if@secttoc@used@
 \if@sectlof@used@ 4050 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
 \ifmtc@lof@used@ 4051 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0074>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 \if@sectlot@used@ 4052 {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not\MessageBreak
 \ifmtc@lot@used@ 4053 \string\tableofcontents\MessageBreak nor
 4054 \string\fake\tableofcontents}
 4055 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 4056 \fi
 4057 \fi
 4058 \if@sectlof@used@
 4059 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
 4060 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0072>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 4061 {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not\MessageBreak
 4062 \string\listoffigures\MessageBreak nor
 4063 \string\fake\listoffigures}
 4064 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 4065 \fi
 4066 \fi
 4067 \if@sectlot@used@
 4068 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
 4069 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0073>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 4070 {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not\MessageBreak
 4071 \string\listoftables\MessageBreak nor
 4072 \string\fake\listoftables}
 4073 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 4074 \fi
 4075 \fi
 4076 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
 \if@longextensions@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
 \if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
 \value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 10, either redesign the document.
 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
 \if@mtc@section@def@ 4077 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
 4078 \if@longextensions@
 4079 \else
 4080 \if@mtc@part@def@
 4081 \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax
 4082 \@mtc@hints@given@true
 4083 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0054>]{minitoc(hints)}%
 4084 {You have used short extensions\MessageBreak

```

<sup>10</sup>On the long term, a good investment.

```

4085 and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc}})
4086 \fi
4087 \fi
4088 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
4089 \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax
4090 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4091 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0053>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4092 {You have used short extensions\MessageBreak
4093 and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
4094 \fi
4095 \else
4096 \if@mtc@section@def@
4097 \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax
4098 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4099 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0055>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4100 {You have used short extensions\MessageBreak
4101 and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
4102 \fi
4103 \fi
4104 \fi
4105 \fi}
4106 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

#### 9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ section 9.9.1 on page 242.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4107 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@\else
4108 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
4109 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0037>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4110 {The sectsty package should be\MessageBreak
4111 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4112 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4113 \fi
4114 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ section 9.9.2 on page 242.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4115 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@\else
4116 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
4117 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0038>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4118 {The varsects package should be\MessageBreak
4119 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}

```



```

4120 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4121 \fi
4122 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the `fncychap` package

```

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.3 on page 242.
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4123 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@else
4124 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
4125 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0086>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4126 {The fncychap package should be\MessageBreak
4127 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4128 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4129 \fi
4130 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the `quotchap` package

```

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.4 on page 242.
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4131 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@else
4132 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
4133 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0087>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4134 {The quotchap package should be\MessageBreak
4135 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4136 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4137 \fi
4138 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the `romannum` package

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ section 9.9.5 on page 243.
\if@mtc@hints@given@
4139 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@else
4140 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
4141 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0088>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4142 {The romannum package should be\MessageBreak
4143 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4144 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4145 \fi
4146 \fi

```

**9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package**

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@` section 9.9.6 on page 243.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4147 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
4148 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
4149 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0089>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4150 {The sfheaders package should be\MessageBreak
4151 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4152 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4153 \fi
4154 \fi

```

**9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package**

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@` section 9.9.7 on page 243.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4155 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
4156 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
4157 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0090>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4158 {The alnumsec package should be\MessageBreak
4159 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4160 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4161 \fi
4162 \fi

```

**9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the captcont package**

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@` section 9.9.8 on page 243.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4163 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
4164 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
4165 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0091>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4166 {The captcont package should be\MessageBreak
4167 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4168 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4169 \fi
4170 \fi

```

**9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the caption package**

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@` section 9.9.9 on page 244.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4171 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@\else
4172 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
4173 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0033>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4174 {The caption package should be\MessageBreak
4175 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4176 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4177 \fi
4178 \fi

```

**9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package**

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@` section 9.9.10 on page 244.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4179 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@\else
4180 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
4181 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0034>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4182 {The caption2 package should be\MessageBreak
4183 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4184 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4185 \fi
4186 \fi

```

**9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package**

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@` section 9.9.11 on page 244.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4187 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@\else
4188 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
4189 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0035>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4190 {The ccaption package should be\MessageBreak
4191 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4192 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4193 \fi
4194 \fi

```

**9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package**

`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@` We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
`\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@` section 9.9.12 on page 244.  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4195 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@\else
4196 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
4197 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0036>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4198 {The mcaption package should be\MessageBreak
4199 loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4200 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4201 \fi
4202 \fi

```

**9.78.2.18 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected**

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` For parttocs:

```

4203 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
4204 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4205 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty parttocs}
4206 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4207 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` For partlofs:

```

4208 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
4209 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4210 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty partlofs}
4211 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4212 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

```

4213 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
4214 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4215 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty partlots}
4216 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4217 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ For minitocs:

```
4218 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
4219 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4220 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty minitocs}
4221 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4222 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@minilofs@ For minilofs:

```
4223 \if@mtc@empty@minilofs@
4224 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4225 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty minilofs}
4226 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4227 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@minilots@ For minilots:

```
4228 \if@mtc@empty@minilots@
4229 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4230 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty minilots}
4231 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4232 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ For secttocs:

```
4233 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
4234 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4235 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty secttocs}
4236 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4237 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlofs@ For sectlofs:

```
4238 \if@mtc@empty@sectlofs@
4239 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4240 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty sectlofs}
4241 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4242 \fi
```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlots@ For sectlots:

```
4243 \if@mtc@empty@sectlots@
4244 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
```

```

4245 {You have attempted to insert\MessageBreak empty sectlots}
4246 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4247 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.19 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the .log file.

`\if@firstpartis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstpartis`:

```

4248 \if@firstpartis@used@
4249 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0051>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4250 {You have invoked an obsolete\MessageBreak command: \string\firstpartis}
4251 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4252 \fi

```

`\if@firstchapteris@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstchapteris`:

```

4253 \if@firstchapteris@used@
4254 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0050>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4255 {You have invoked an obsolete\MessageBreak command: \string\firstchapteris}
4256 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4257 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

```

4258 \if@firstsectionis@used@
4259 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0052>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4260 {You have invoked an obsolete\MessageBreak command: \string\firstsectionis}
4261 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4262 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.20 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the hints option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the .log file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

```

4263 \if@mtc@hints@given@
4264 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0024>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4265 {Some hints have been written\MessageBreak

```

```

4266 in the \jobname.log file}
4267 \else
4268 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0019>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4269 {No hints have been written\MessageBreak
4270 in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
4271 \fi
4272 }

```

## 9.79 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, english:  
`\ExecuteOptions`

```

4273 \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
4274 {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```

`\mtcPackageError` Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:

```

\providecommand
 \ptctitle 4275 {\mtcPackageError[<E0036>]{minitoc}%
 \plftitle 4276 {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.\MessageBreak
 \plttitle 4277 The minitoc language object file (.mld), \MessageBreak
 \mtctitle 4278 english.mld is not found. \MessageBreak
 \mlftitle 4279 We will try to continue with default values}%
 \mlttitle 4280 {See the minitoc documentation. \MessageBreak
 \stctitle 4281 Please fix your minitoc installation. \MessageBreak
 \slftitle 4282 Press <return> to continue}%
 \slttitle 4283 \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
 4284 \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
 4285 \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
 4286 \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
 4287 \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
 4288 \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
 4289 \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
 4290 \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
 4291 \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
 4292 }%

```

`\ProcessOptions*` Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```

4293 \ProcessOptions*

```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

### 9.79.1 Processing the insection option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` For the insection option, we load the placeins package [9] with its options `verbose` and `section`, after the `flafter` package (described in [151] and [174, page 286]); the correct loading is verified:

```

\RequirePackage
\@ifpackageloaded
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
4294 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
4295 \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
4296 \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
4297 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
4298 {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
4299 \fi

```

### 9.79.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [8]:

```

\RequirePackage
4300 \if@mtc@notoccite@
4301 \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
4302 \fi

```

### 9.79.3 Processing the listfiles option

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file `<document>.maf`. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions), then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the existing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes `<document>.mtc` in the list (but *not* `<document>.maf`<sup>11</sup>). We must also check the existence of `\jobname.mtc1` if long extensions are used.

```

\if@longextensions@
 \mtc@maf@long
\mtc@maf@short
\mtc@addtomaf
\IfFileExists
 \jobname
4303 \def\mtc@maf{%
4304 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0009>]{minitoc}%
4305 {Listing minitoc auxiliary files\MessageBreak
4306 Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
4307 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4308 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
4309 \if@longextensions@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
4310 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4311 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
4312 \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}

```

<sup>11</sup> Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it should not be in the list.



```

4313 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
4314 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
4315 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@{\relax
4316 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
4317 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
4318 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
4319 \advance\c@ptc@m@ne\repeat}
4320 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc1}}{%
4321 \loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@{\relax
4322 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
4323 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
4324 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
4325 \advance\c@mtc@m@ne\repeat}
4326 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@{\relax
4327 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
4328 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
4329 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
4330 \advance\c@stc@m@ne\repeat}}
4331 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
4332 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
4333 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@{\relax
4334 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
4335 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
4336 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
4337 \advance\c@ptc@m@ne\repeat}
4338 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@{\relax
4339 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
4340 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
4341 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
4342 \advance\c@mtc@m@ne\repeat}
4343 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@{\relax
4344 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
4345 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
4346 \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
4347 \advance\c@stc@m@ne\repeat}}

```

\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in a \AtEndDocument block.

\AtEndDocument

\mtc@maf 4348 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi

### 9.79.4 Processing the hints option

\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in a \AtBeginDocument block and its third (last) part in a \AtEndDocument block:

\AtBeginDocument

\mtc@hints@begindoc

\AtEndDocument

\mtc@hints@enddoc 4349 \if@mtc@hints@

4350 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%

4351 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%

4352 \fi

### 9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the `hints` option executed in the preamble):

```

\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
\part 4353 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 4354 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 4355 \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@spart
\@spart

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter 4356 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 4357 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
\@chapter 4358 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
\@schapter

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
\section 4359 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@ssect 4360 \let\mtc@hints@ssect\@ssect
\@ssect 4361 \let\mtc@hints@sssect\@sssect}
\mtc@hints@sssect
\@sssect

```

And the package is terminated.

```
4362 </minitoc>
```

## 9.80 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

```

\jobname This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set \jobname
\input to fminitoc in place of minitoc. As minitoc.ins generates the minitoc.lan and
fminitoc.lan files which set a language number \LANG, and minitoc.dtx reads then the

```

`\jobname.lan` file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here) in `minitoc.dtx`, the language being selected by `\ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ... \fi` constructs. The `\relax` primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```
4363 <fminitoc>
4364 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}[2006/09/13 minitoc french documentation start file]
4365 \input{minitoc.dtx}
4366 </fminitoc>
```

## Chapter 10

# Commented code of `mtcoff.sty`

### Contents

|       |                                                                                                          |     |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 10.1  | Why <code>mtcoff.sty</code> ?                                                                            | 396 |
| 10.2  | Identification of the package                                                                            | 397 |
| 10.3  | Faking counters and dimensions                                                                           | 397 |
| 10.4  | Faking simple commands                                                                                   | 399 |
| 10.5  | Faking commands with one optional argument                                                               | 400 |
| 10.6  | Disabling the internal commands                                                                          | 401 |
| 10.7  | Disabling the font commands                                                                              | 401 |
| 10.8  | Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands                                                           | 403 |
| 10.9  | Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands                                                           | 403 |
| 10.10 | Ignore the obsolete commands                                                                             | 403 |
| 10.11 | Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command                                                    | 403 |
| 10.12 | Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command                                                           | 404 |
| 10.13 | Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules                                                          | 404 |
| 10.14 | Disabling the commands for the page numbers                                                              | 404 |
| 10.15 | Disabling the mini-table features commands                                                               | 405 |
| 10.16 | Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands                                                               | 406 |
| 10.17 | Caution for some commands                                                                                | 406 |
| 10.18 | Disabling commands for “coffee”                                                                          | 407 |
| 10.19 | Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments                                                 | 408 |
| 10.20 | Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and <code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> internal commands | 408 |
| 10.21 | Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command                                                       | 408 |
| 10.22 | Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command                                                          | 408 |
| 10.23 | Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands                                                       | 409 |

### 10.1 Why `mtcoff.sty`?

The `minitoc` package [100, 101] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept

of a replacement package, `mtcoff` (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the `minitoc` package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the `minitoc` package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of `minitoc`. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

## 10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ <sup>1</sup>; we need the `mtcmess` package  
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
4367 *mtcoff)
4368 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
4369 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2006/06/27 v3.0 The mtcoff package]
4370 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

## 10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

`\count@` As `minitoc` declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using `\count@`  
`\dimen@` or `\dimen@`. For `\mtcskipamount`, we must use its default definition, `\bigskipamount`.  
`\c@minitocdepth`  
`\mtcindent` 4371 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@  
`\mtcskipamount` 4372 \let\mtcindent\dimen@  
`\bigskipamount` 4373 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount  
`\c@parttocdepth` 4374 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@  
`\mtcindent` 4375 \let\ptcindent\dimen@  
`\c@secttocdepth`  
`\stcindent`

<sup>1</sup> This checking is not really useful for the `mtcoff` package itself, but it is good to check that your version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is not too old to support `minitoc`.

```
4376 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
4377 \let\stcindent\dimen@
```

\c@mtc The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:

\c@ptc

\c@stc 4378 \let\c@mtc\count@

4379 \let\c@ptc\count@

4380 \let\c@stc\count@

\mtcgapbeforeheads The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:

\mtcgapafterheads

4381 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}

4382 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros is used.

\kernafterparttoc

\kernafterpartlof

\kernafterpartlot

\kernaftersecttoc

\kernaftersectlof

\kernaftersectlot

\kernafterminitoc

\kernafterminilof

\kernafterminilot

```
4383 \ifundefined{part}{\}%
4384 \def\kernafterparttoc{%
4385 \mtcoffwarn@true
4386 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4387 {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc \MessageBreak
4388 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4389 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4390 \def\kernafterpartlof{%
4391 \mtcoffwarn@true
4392 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4393 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof \MessageBreak
4394 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4395 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4396 \def\kernafterpartlot{%
4397 \mtcoffwarn@true
4398 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4399 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot \MessageBreak
4400 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4401 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4402 }%
4403 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\}%
4404 \@ifundefined{section}{\}%
4405 }%
4406 \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
4407 \mtcoffwarn@true
4408 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4409 {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc \MessageBreak
4410 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4411 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4412 \def\kernaftersectlof{%
```

```

4413 \mtcoffwarn@true
4414 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4415 {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof \MessageBreak
4416 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4417 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4418 \def\kernaftersectlot{%
4419 \mtcoffwarn@true
4420 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4421 {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot \MessageBreak
4422 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4423 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4424 }%
4425 }%
4426 {%
4427 \def\kernafterminitoc{%
4428 \mtcoffwarn@true
4429 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4430 {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc \MessageBreak
4431 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4432 \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4433 \def\kernafterminilof{%
4434 \mtcoffwarn@true
4435 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4436 {The macro \string\kernafterminilof \MessageBreak
4437 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4438 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
4439 \def\kernafterminilot{%
4440 \mtcoffwarn@true
4441 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4442 {The macro \string\kernafterminilot \MessageBreak
4443 should not be used out of context\MessageBreak}%
4444 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
4445 }%

```

## 10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\mtcskip Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeableofcontents
\fakeinfofigures 4446 \let\mtcskip\relax
\fakeinfoftables 4447 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\adjustptc 4448 \let\fakeinfofigures\relax
\adjustmtc 4449 \let\fakeinfoftables\relax
\adjuststc 4450 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 4451 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 4452 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 4453 \let\decrementptc\relax
\incrementptc 4454 \let\decrementmtc\relax
\incrementmtc 4455 \let\decrementstc\relax
\incrementstc 4456 \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementstc 4457 \let\incrementmtc\relax

```

```
4458 \let\incrementstc\relax
```

```

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 4459 \let\partend\relax
\sectend 4460 \let\partbegin\relax
\sectbegin 4461 \let\chapterend\relax
 4462 \let\chapterbegin\relax
 4463 \let\sectend\relax
 4464 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal  $\LaTeX$  macro `\@ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
4465 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for part level mini-tables:

```

\doparttoc
\dopartlof 4466 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dopartlot 4467 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc 4468 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof 4469 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot 4470 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
 4471 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for chapter level mini-tables:

```

\dominitoc
\dominilof 4472 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 4473 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minitoc 4474 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilof 4475 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilot 4476 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
 4477 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

`\@ifnextchar` Commands for section level mini-tables:

```

\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 4478 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 4479 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 4480 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof
\sectlot

```



```

4481 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
4482 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
4483 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

\@ifnextchar    Command \mtcprepare:  
                   \mtcprepare

```

4484 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

## 10.6 Disabling the internal commands

\@gobbletwo    We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument)  
                   \tf@mtc    or \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):  
                   \mtc@string  
\appendixmtc    4485 \let\tf@mtc\count@  
\l@xchapter    4486 \let\mtc@string\relax  
                  \xchapter    4487 \let\appendixmtc\relax  
\pchapter    4488 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo  
                  \psect    4489 \let\xchapter\relax  
\l@xpart    4490 \let\pchapter\relax  
                  \xpart    4491 \let\psect\relax  
\l@xsect    4492 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo  
                  \xsect    4493 \let\xpart\relax  
                  4494 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo  
                  4495 \let\xsect\relax

## 10.7 Disabling the font commands

\empty    We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use \relax here.

```

\ptcfont Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 4496 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 4497 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 4498 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 4499 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 4500 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont
\plfSfont
\pltfont
\pltSfont
\ptifont

```

```

4501 \let\ptcPfont\empty
4502 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
4503 \let\plffont\empty
4504 \let\plfSfont\empty
4505 \let\pltfont\empty
4506 \let\pltSfont\empty
4507 \let\ptifont\empty

```

```

\mtcfont Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 4508 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 4509 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 4510 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 4511 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 4512 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 4513 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 4514 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 4515 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 4516 \let\mltfont\empty
4517 \let\mltSfont\empty
4518 \let\mtifont\empty

```

```

\stcfont Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4519 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 4520 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 4521 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 4522 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 4523 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 4524 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont 4525 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont 4526 \let\sltfont\empty
4527 \let\sltSfont\empty
4528 \let\stifont\empty

```

```

\coffeeFont Font for “coffee” lines:

4529 \let\coffeeFont\empty

```

## 10.8 Disabling the `\mtcset...` commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetfont 4530 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetttitlefont 4531 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetttitle 4532 \let\mtcsetttitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 4533 \let\mtcsetttitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 4534 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 4535 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 4536 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
4537 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

## 10.9 Disabling the new `\l@...` commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectioning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 4538 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 4539 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 4540 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 4541 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
4542 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
4543 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
4544 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 4545 \let\firstpartis\@gobble
\firstsectionis 4546 \let\firstchapteris\@gobble
4547 \let\firstsectionis\@gobble

```

## 10.11 Disabling the `\mtcselectlanguage` command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
4548 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble

```

## 10.12 Disabling the `\mtcloadmlo` command

```
\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcloadmlo
4549 \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble
```

## 10.13 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```
\ptcrule These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule 4550 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 4551 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule 4552 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 4553 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule 4554 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 4555 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule 4556 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 4557 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule 4558 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 4559 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule 4560 \let\noslfrule\relax
\nopltrule 4561 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule 4562 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 4563 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule 4564 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 4565 \let\sltrule\relax
4566 \let\nosltrule\relax
4567 \let\nosltrule\relax
```

## 10.14 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```
\ptcpagenumbers These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 4568 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 4569 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers 4570 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 4571 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers 4572 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 4573 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers 4574 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 4575 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers 4576 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 4577 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
4578 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers
\nopltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers
\nosltpagenumbers
```

```

4579 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
4580 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
4581 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
4582 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
4583 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
4584 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
4585 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax

```

## 10.15 Disabling the mini-table features commands

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

```
\renewcommand{\beforeparttoc}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

|                                    |                                                   |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\beforeparttoc</code>        | Commands for part level mini-tables:              |
| <code>\beforepartlof</code>        |                                                   |
| <code>\beforepartlot</code>        | 4586 <code>\let\beforeparttoc\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterparttoc</code>         | 4587 <code>\let\beforepartlof\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterpartlof</code>         | 4588 <code>\let\beforepartlot\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterpartlot</code>         | 4589 <code>\let\afterparttoc\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispageparttocstyle</code> | 4590 <code>\let\afterpartlof\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code> | 4591 <code>\let\afterpartlot\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code> | 4592 <code>\let\thispageparttocstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4593 <code>\let\thispagepartlofstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4594 <code>\let\thispagepartlotstyle\empty</code> |

|                                    |                                                   |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\beforeminitoc</code>        | Commands for chapter level mini-tables:           |
| <code>\beforeminilof</code>        |                                                   |
| <code>\beforeminilot</code>        | 4595 <code>\let\beforeminitoc\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterminitoc</code>         | 4596 <code>\let\beforeminilof\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterminilof</code>         | 4597 <code>\let\beforeminilot\empty</code>        |
| <code>\afterminilot</code>         | 4598 <code>\let\afterminitoc\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispageminitocstyle</code> | 4599 <code>\let\afterminilof\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispageminilofstyle</code> | 4600 <code>\let\afterminilot\empty</code>         |
| <code>\thispageminilotstyle</code> | 4601 <code>\let\thispageminitocstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4602 <code>\let\thispageminilofstyle\empty</code> |
|                                    | 4603 <code>\let\thispageminilotstyle\empty</code> |

```

\beforesecttoc Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 4604 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc 4605 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof 4606 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot 4607 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 4608 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\thispagesectlofsty 4609 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 4610 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
4611 \let\thispagesectlofsty\empty
4612 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

## 10.16 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@longextensions@ There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
 \iftightmtc
 \ifktightmtc 4613 \newif\if@longextensions@ \@longextensions@true
 \ifundottedmtc 4614 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
 \l@listof 4615 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
 \ifmtcsecondpart 4616 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
 \chapter 4617 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
4618 \let\l@listof\chapter

```



## 10.17 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and a `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

4619 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
4620 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
4621 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<F0007>]{mtcoff}%
4622 {You should scan (backwards) your .log
4623 \MessageBreak
4624 file to find some commands needing
4625 \MessageBreak
4626 to be replaced if you decide to
4627 \MessageBreak
4628 DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
4629 \MessageBreak
4630 document. It is more wise to keep the
4631 \MessageBreak
4632 \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
4633 \MessageBreak
4634 and to comment out only one of them}
4635 \fi}

```

```

\mtcaddchapter Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the
\mtcaddsection line number):
\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 4636 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 4637 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0004>]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 4638 {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced\MessageBreak
4639 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}\MessageBreak}
4640 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
4641 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
4642 \else
4643 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
4644 \fi}
4645 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
4646 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0006>]{mtcoff}%
4647 {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced\MessageBreak
4648 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}\MessageBreak}
4649 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
4650 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
4651 \else
4652 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
4653 \fi}
4654 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
4655 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0005>]{mtcoff}%
4656 {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced\MessageBreak
4657 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}\MessageBreak}
4658 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
4659 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
4660 \else
4661 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
4662 \fi}

```

## 10.18 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 4663 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 4664 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
4665 \let\l@coffee\relax
4666 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
4667 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

## 10.19 Disabling the `mtchideinmain...` environments

`mtchideinmaintoc` These environments accept one optional argument:  
`mtchideinmainlof`  
`mtchideinmainlot`

```

4668 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
4669 {\empty}{\empty}
4670 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
4671 {\empty}{\empty}
4672 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
4673 {\empty}{\empty}

```

## 10.20 Inhibition of the `\mtc@saveXXXdepth` and `\mtc@restoreXXXdepth` internal commands

`\mtc@savetocdepth` We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files by the hiding commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the `minitoc` package to the `mtc` package.  
`\mtc@savelotdepth`  
`\mtc@restoretocdepth`  
`\mtc@restorelofdepth`  
`\mtc@restorelotdepth`

```

4674 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
4675 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
4676 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
4677 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
4678 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
4679 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

## 10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixglossary` command

`\mtcfixglossary` This command accepts one optional argument:

```

4680 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax]

```

## 10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```

4681 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]

```



## 10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but `mtcoff` simulates and gives  
`\addstarredpart` a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:  
`\addstarredchapter`  
`\addstarredsection`

```

4682 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
\addcontentsline 4683 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0002>]{mtcoff}%
4684 {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by\MessageBreak
4685 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}\MessageBreak}
4686 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
4687 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
4688 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0001>]{mtcoff}%
4689 {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by\MessageBreak
4690 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}\MessageBreak}
4691 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
4692 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
4693 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0003>]{mtcoff}%
4694 {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by\MessageBreak
4695 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}\MessageBreak}
4696 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

And the `mtcoff` package is terminated.

```
4697 </mtcoff>
```

## Chapter 11

# Commented code of mtcmess.sty

```
\mtcPackageInfo To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 4698 <*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 4699 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 4700 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 4701 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][{}]{%
4702 {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
4703 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][{}]{%
4704 {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
4705 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][{}]{%
4706 {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
4707 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][{}]{%
4708 {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
4709 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they will be used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

---

<sup>1</sup> By example, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

## Chapter 12

# Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an incompatibility of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir.cls class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.cls.

```
4710 (*mtcpatchmem)
4711 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
4712 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
4713 [2005/09/30 v48 Package mtcpatchmem]
4714 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
4715 \mtcPackageInfo[<M0001>]{mtcpatchmem}%
4716 {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
4717 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][]{%
4718 \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
4719 \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
4720 }
4721 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
4722 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [was found at all. Use #2| as
4723 % entry for all fields.
4724 \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
4725 \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
4726 \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
4727 \else
4728 % otherwise at least one [was found. If #1| is empty then only
4729 % one was found.
4730 \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
4731 \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
4732 \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
4733 \else
4734 \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
4735 \fi
4736 \fi
4737 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
4738 \if@mainmatter
4739 \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

4740 \fi
4741 \fi
4742 \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
4743 \ifartopt
4744 \@makechapterhead{#2}%
4745 \@afterheading
4746 \else
4747 \insertchapterspace
4748 \if@twocolumn
4749 \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
4750 \else
4751 \@makechapterhead{#2}%
4752 \fi
4753 \@afterheading
4754 \fi
4755 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
4756 \if@mainmatter
4757 \ifanappendix
4758 \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
4759 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
4760 \else
4761 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
4762 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
4763 \fi
4764 \else
4765 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
4766 \fi
4767 \else
4768 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
4769 \fi
4770 \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
4771 }
4772 </mtcpatchmem>

```

## Chapter 13

# The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

### Contents

|       |                                       |     |
|-------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 13.1  | “Acadian” language: acadian.mld       | 417 |
| 13.2  | “Acadien” language: acadien.mld       | 418 |
| 13.3  | “Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld     | 418 |
| 13.4  | “Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld   | 418 |
| 13.5  | “Albanian” language: albanian.mld     | 419 |
| 13.6  | “American” language: american.mld     | 419 |
| 13.7  | “Arab” language: arab.mld             | 419 |
| 13.8  | “Arab2” language: arab2.mld           | 420 |
| 13.9  | “Arabi” language: arabi.mld           | 420 |
| 13.10 | “Arabic” language: arabic.mld         | 421 |
| 13.11 | “Armenian” language: armenian.mld     | 421 |
| 13.12 | “Australian” language: australian.mld | 422 |
| 13.13 | “Austrian” language: austrian.mld     | 422 |
| 13.14 | “Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld         | 422 |
| 13.15 | “Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld       | 423 |
| 13.16 | “Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld       | 423 |
| 13.17 | “Bangla” language: bangla.mld         | 424 |
| 13.18 | “Basque” language: basque.mld         | 424 |
| 13.19 | “Bicig” language: bicig.mld           | 425 |
| 13.20 | “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld         | 425 |
| 13.21 | “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld         | 426 |
| 13.22 | “Bithe” language: bithe.mld           | 427 |
| 13.23 | “Brazil” language: brazil.mld         | 427 |
| 13.24 | “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld   | 428 |
| 13.25 | “Breton” language: breton.mld         | 428 |
| 13.26 | “British” language: british.mld       | 429 |
| 13.27 | “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld   | 429 |
| 13.28 | “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld | 430 |
| 13.29 | “Buryat” language: buryat.mld         | 430 |
| 13.30 | “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld       | 431 |

|       |                                                       |     |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 13.31 | “Canadian” language: canadian.mld                     | 431 |
| 13.32 | “Canadien” language: canadien.mld                     | 432 |
| 13.33 | “Castillan” language: castillan.mld                   | 432 |
| 13.34 | “Castillian” language: castillian.mld                 | 432 |
| 13.35 | “Catalan” language: catalan.mld                       | 432 |
| 13.36 | “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo    | 433 |
| 13.37 | “Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo    | 433 |
| 13.38 | “Croatian” language: croatian.mld                     | 434 |
| 13.39 | “Czech” language: czech.mld                           | 434 |
| 13.40 | “Danish” language: danish.mld                         | 435 |
| 13.41 | “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld                 | 435 |
| 13.42 | “Dutch” language: dutch.mld                           | 436 |
| 13.43 | “English” language: english.mld                       | 437 |
| 13.44 | “English1” language: english1.mld                     | 437 |
| 13.45 | “English2” language: english2.mld                     | 438 |
| 13.46 | “Esperant” language: esperant.mld                     | 438 |
| 13.47 | “Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld                   | 439 |
| 13.48 | “Estonian” language: estonian.mld                     | 439 |
| 13.49 | “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld                     | 440 |
| 13.50 | “Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld                   | 440 |
| 13.51 | “Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld                 | 441 |
| 13.52 | “Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo          | 441 |
| 13.53 | “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo          | 442 |
| 13.54 | “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld                         | 442 |
| 13.55 | “Finnish” language: finnish.mld                       | 443 |
| 13.56 | “Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld                     | 443 |
| 13.57 | “Francais” language: francais.mld                     | 444 |
| 13.58 | “French” language: french.mld                         | 444 |
| 13.59 | “French1” language: french1.mld                       | 445 |
| 13.60 | “French2” language: french2.mld                       | 445 |
| 13.61 | “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld                       | 446 |
| 13.62 | “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld                     | 446 |
| 13.63 | “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld                   | 447 |
| 13.64 | “Galician” language: galician.mld                     | 447 |
| 13.65 | “German” language: german.mld                         | 447 |
| 13.66 | “Germanb” language: germanb.mld                       | 448 |
| 13.67 | “Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld                     | 448 |
| 13.68 | “Greek” language: greek.mld                           | 449 |
| 13.69 | “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld                 | 449 |
| 13.70 | “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld         | 450 |
| 13.71 | “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld       | 451 |
| 13.72 | “Guarani” language: guarani.mld                       | 452 |
| 13.73 | “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo       | 453 |
| 13.74 | “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo       | 453 |
| 13.75 | “Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo       | 454 |
| 13.76 | “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo       | 455 |
| 13.77 | “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo | 455 |
| 13.78 | “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo          | 456 |
| 13.79 | “Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo          | 456 |
| 13.80 | “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo    | 457 |
| 13.81 | “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld                         | 457 |
| 13.82 | “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld                       | 458 |
| 13.83 | “Hindi” language: hindi.mld                           | 459 |

|        |                                                                            |     |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 13.84  | “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld                                  | 459 |
| 13.85  | “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld                                        | 459 |
| 13.86  | “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld                                        | 460 |
| 13.87  | “Indon” language: indon.mld                                                | 460 |
| 13.88  | “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld                                      | 460 |
| 13.89  | “Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld                                    | 461 |
| 13.90  | “Irish” language: irish.mld                                                | 461 |
| 13.91  | “Italian” language: italian.mld                                            | 462 |
| 13.92  | “Italian2” language: italian2.mld                                          | 462 |
| 13.93  | “Japanese” language: japanese.mld and japanese.mlo                         | 463 |
| 13.94  | “Japanese2” language: japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo                      | 463 |
| 13.95  | “Japanese3” language: japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo                      | 464 |
| 13.96  | “Japanese4” language: japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo                      | 464 |
| 13.97  | “Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese.mlo                       | 465 |
| 13.98  | “Kannada” language: kannada.mld                                            | 465 |
| 13.99  | “Khalka” language: khalkha.mld                                             | 466 |
| 13.100 | “Latin” language: latin.mld                                                | 466 |
| 13.101 | “Latin2” language: latin2.mld                                              | 467 |
| 13.102 | “Latvian” language: latvian.mld                                            | 467 |
| 13.103 | “Letton” language: letton.mld                                              | 468 |
| 13.104 | “Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld                                      | 468 |
| 13.105 | “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld                                  | 469 |
| 13.106 | “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld                                          | 469 |
| 13.107 | “Magyar” language: magyar.mld                                              | 470 |
| 13.108 | “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld                                            | 470 |
| 13.109 | “Magyar3” language: magyar.mld                                             | 471 |
| 13.110 | “Malay” language: malay.mld                                                | 471 |
| 13.111 | “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld                              | 471 |
| 13.112 | “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and<br>malayalam-omega.mlo | 472 |
| 13.113 | “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld                        | 472 |
| 13.114 | “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld                      | 473 |
| 13.115 | “Manju” language: manju.mld                                                | 473 |
| 13.116 | “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld                                              | 474 |
| 13.117 | “Mongol” language: mongol.mld                                              | 474 |
| 13.118 | “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld                                        | 475 |
| 13.119 | “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld                                      | 475 |
| 13.120 | “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld                                            | 475 |
| 13.121 | “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld                                          | 475 |
| 13.122 | “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld                                        | 476 |
| 13.123 | “Norsk” language: norsk.mld                                                | 476 |
| 13.124 | “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld                                              | 477 |
| 13.125 | “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld                                            | 478 |
| 13.126 | “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld                                          | 478 |
| 13.127 | “Polish” language: polish.mld                                              | 479 |
| 13.128 | “Polish2” language: polish2.mld                                            | 479 |
| 13.129 | “Polski” language: polski.mld                                              | 480 |
| 13.130 | “Portuges” language: portuges.mld                                          | 480 |
| 13.131 | “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld                                      | 480 |
| 13.132 | “Romanian” language: romanian.mld                                          | 481 |
| 13.133 | “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld                                        | 481 |
| 13.134 | “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld                                        | 482 |
| 13.135 | “Russian” language: russian.mld                                            | 483 |

|                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 13.136 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld                                           | 483 |
| 13.137 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld                                           | 484 |
| 13.138 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld                                             | 485 |
| 13.139 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld                                             | 486 |
| 13.140 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo                   | 486 |
| 13.141 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo                | 487 |
| 13.142 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo                      | 487 |
| 13.143 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld and<br>russian-lhcyralt.mlo | 488 |
| 13.144 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and<br>russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo | 488 |
| 13.145 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and<br>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo | 489 |
| 13.146 “Samin” language: samin.mld                                                   | 489 |
| 13.147 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld                                             | 490 |
| 13.148 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld                                               | 490 |
| 13.149 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld                                             | 491 |
| 13.150 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld                                                 | 491 |
| 13.151 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld                                               | 492 |
| 13.152 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld                                               | 492 |
| 13.153 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld                                             | 493 |
| 13.154 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld                                             | 494 |
| 13.155 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld                                             | 494 |
| 13.156 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld                                               | 495 |
| 13.157 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld                                             | 495 |
| 13.158 “Thai” language: thai.mld and thai.mlo                                        | 496 |
| 13.159 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld                                               | 496 |
| 13.160 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld                                                 | 497 |
| 13.161 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld                                               | 497 |
| 13.162 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld                                               | 497 |
| 13.163 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld                                           | 497 |
| 13.164 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld                                             | 498 |
| 13.165 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld                                           | 498 |
| 13.166 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld                                     | 499 |
| 13.167 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld                                           | 499 |
| 13.168 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld                                             | 499 |
| 13.169 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld                                               | 500 |
| 13.170 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld                                         | 500 |
| 13.171 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld                                                   | 501 |
| 13.172 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld                                                     | 501 |
| 13.173 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld                                                   | 502 |
| 13.174 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld                                                   | 502 |

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details. It is loaded either via a package option<sup>1</sup> in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package, either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage \mtcselectlanguage{<language>}
```

<sup>1</sup> It can also be a global option for the document.



Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

|                        |                          |                          |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>\ptctitle</code> | • <code>\ptctitle</code> | • <code>\mtctitle</code> | • <code>\stctitle</code> |
| <code>\plftitle</code> | • <code>\plftitle</code> | • <code>\mlftitle</code> | • <code>\slftitle</code> |
| <code>\plttitle</code> | • <code>\plttitle</code> | • <code>\mlttitle</code> | • <code>\slttitle</code> |

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the `babel` package [34, 35, 36, 53], the CJK system [156, 157], the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  system [136], the ANTOMEGA system [139], the ArabTeX [143, 144], BangTeX [185], Devanāgarī for  $\text{\TeX}$  [186], ethiop [26], FarsiTeX<sup>2</sup>, guarani [29], Malayalam [3, 4], MonTeX [93, 96], or ArmTeX [97] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.



But for some oriental languages<sup>3</sup>, the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file<sup>4</sup>, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via `\mtcselectlanguage`.

`filecontents` To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses `filecontents` environments to generate the .mlo files.

## 13.1 “Acadian” language: `acadian.mld`

The `acadian` language<sup>5</sup> is just french, so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 444):

```
4773 <*acadian>
4774 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
4775 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
4776 </acadian>
```

<sup>2</sup> By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

<sup>3</sup> Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangŭl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

<sup>4</sup> The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

<sup>5</sup> Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

## 13.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

The “acadien” language<sup>6</sup> is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 444):

```
4777 <*acadien>
4778 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
4779 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
4780 </acadien>
```

## 13.3 “Afrikaan” language: `afrikaan.mld`

The titles for the “afrikaan” language<sup>7</sup> are taken from the `dutch.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 37]:

```
4781 <*afrikaan>
4782 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
4783 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
4784 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
4785 %% Braams, Johannes
4786 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
4787 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
4788 \def\plttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
4789 %%
4790 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
4791 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
4792 \def\mlttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
4793 %%
4794 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
4795 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
4796 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
4797 </afrikaan>
```

## 13.4 “Afrikaans” language: `afrikaans.mld`

“Afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load `afrikaan.mld` (see section 13.3):

```
4798 <*afrikaans>
4799 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
4800 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
4801 </afrikaans>
```

---

<sup>6</sup> Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

<sup>7</sup> Spoken in South Africa, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.42 on page 436.

## 13.5 “Albanian” language: `albanian.mld`

The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the `albanian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 80]:

```
4802 <*albanian>
4803 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
4804 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
4805 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
4806 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com).
4807 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
4808 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
4809 \def\pltttitle{Tabelat}%
4810 %%
4811 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
4812 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
4813 \def\mltttitle{Tabelat}%
4814 %%
4815 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
4816 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
4817 \def\sltttitle{Tabelat}%
4818 </albanian>
```

## 13.6 “American” language: `american.mld`

The “american” language is just like “english”<sup>8</sup>, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```
4819 <*american>
4820 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
4821 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
4822 </american>
```

## 13.7 “Arab” language: `arab.mld`

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the `ArabTeX` package [143, 144], which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```
4823 <*arab>
4824 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
4825 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty
```

---

<sup>8</sup> It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

4826 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
4827 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
4828 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
4829 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
4830 \def\plttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}
4831 %%
4832 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
4833 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
4834 \def\mlttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
4835 %%
4836 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
4837 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
4838 \def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
4839 </arab>

```

## 13.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [143, 144], which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

4840 < *arab2>
4841 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
4842 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
4843 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
4844 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
4845 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\@tok}%
4846 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
4847 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
4848 \def\plttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
4849 %%
4850 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
4851 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
4852 \def\mlttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
4853 %%
4854 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
4855 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
4856 \def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
4857 </arab2>

```

## 13.9 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the *Ayabi* package [125] (by Youssef JABRI), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

4858 <*arabi>
4859 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]
4860 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty.
4861 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package,
4862 %% Youssef Jabri)
4863 %% (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
4864 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
4865 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
4866 \def\pltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
4867 %%
4868 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
4869 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
4870 \def\mltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
4871 %%
4872 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
4873 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
4874 \def\sltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
4875 %%
4876 </arabi>

```

### 13.10 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

“Arabic” is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.7 on page 419):

```

4877 <*arabic>
4878 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
4879 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
4880 </arabic>

```

### 13.11 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the ArmTeX package [97], which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

4881 <*armenian>
4882 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
4883 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty
4884 %% from ArmTeX
4885 %% Sergei Dachian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
4886 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
4887 \def\plftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
4888 \def\pltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%
4889 %%
4890 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
4891 \def\mlftitle{Patkerner i cank}%
4892 \def\mltttitle{Aghyusakner i cank}%

```

```
4893 %%
4894 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
4895 \def\slftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
4896 \def\sltttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
4897 </armenian>
```

## 13.12 “Australian” language: `australian.mld`

The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```
4898 <*australian>
4899 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
4900 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
4901 </australian>
```

## 13.13 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.65 on page 447):

```
4902 <*austrian>
4903 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
4904 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
4905 </austrian>
```

## 13.14 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on the following page):

```
4906 <*bahasa>
4907 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
4908 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
4909 </bahasa>
```

## 13.15 “Bahasai” language: `bahasai.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language<sup>9</sup> (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` in the `babel` package [35, 36, 61]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.16. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.14 on the preceding page, 13.87 on page 460, and 13.88 on page 460.

```

4910 (*bahasai)
4911 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
4912 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
4913 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
4914 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
4915 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
4916 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
4917 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
4918 %%
4919 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
4920 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
4921 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
4922 %%
4923 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
4924 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
4925 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
4926 \end{bahasai}

```

## 13.16 “Bahasam” language: `bahasam.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)<sup>10</sup> are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` in the `babel` package [35, 36, 62]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.14 on the page before. For other names for this language, see sections 13.110 on page 471 and 13.116 on page 474.

```

4927 (*bahasam)
4928 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/01/13]
4929 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty
4930 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
4931 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
4932 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
4933 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
4934 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
4935 %%
4936 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%

```

<sup>9</sup> Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant.

<sup>10</sup> Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

```

4937 \def\mlfttitle{Senarai Gambar}%
4938 \def\mltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
4939 %%
4940 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
4941 \def\slfttitle{Senarai Gambar}%
4942 \def\slttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
4943 </bahasam>

```

### 13.17 “Bangla” language: bangla.mld

The titles for the “bangla” language<sup>11</sup> are taken from the BangTeX package [185]; they need specific fonts.

```

4944 < *bangla>
4945 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
4946 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
4947 %% from BangTeX
4948 %% Needs specific fonts
4949 \def\ptctitle{suu*c*ipotRo}%
4950 \def\plfttitle{cho*b*ir ta*l*ika}%
4951 \def\pltttitle{cho*k*er ta*l*ika}%
4952 %%
4953 \def\mtctitle{suu*c*i}%
4954 \def\mlfttitle{cho*b*ir ta*l*ika}%
4955 \def\mltttitle{cho*k*er ta*l*ika}%
4956 %%
4957 \def\stctitle{suu*c*i}%
4958 \def\slfttitle{cho*b*ir ta*l*ika}%
4959 \def\slttitle{cho*k*er ta*l*ika}%
4960 </bangla>

```

### 13.18 “Basque” language: basque.mld

The titles for the “basque” language<sup>12</sup> are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 42]. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

```

4961 < *basque>
4962 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
4963 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
4964 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
4965 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
4966 %% Needs special fonts
4967 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%

```

<sup>11</sup> Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India.

<sup>12</sup> Spoken in the Basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.



```

4968 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
4969 \def\pltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
4970 %%
4971 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
4972 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
4973 \def\mltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
4974 %%
4975 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
4976 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
4977 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
4978 </basque>

```

### 13.19 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

The titles for the “bicig” language<sup>13</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.117 on page 474, 13.20, and 13.21 on the next page.

```

4979 <{*bicig}
4980 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
4981 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
4982 %% needs mongol fonts
4983 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
4984 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
4985 \def\pltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
4986 %%
4987 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
4988 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
4989 \def\mltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
4990 %%
4991 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
4992 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
4993 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
4994 </bicig>

```

### 13.20 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language<sup>14</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.117 on page 474, 13.19, and 13.21 on the next page.

<sup>13</sup>Bicig is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur. See also section 13.160 on page 497.

<sup>14</sup>Bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig2 is a variant. See also section 13.161 on page 497.

```

4995 <*bicig2>
4996 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
4997 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty
4998 %% needs mongol fonts
4999 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
5000 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5001 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5002 %%
5003 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
5004 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5005 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5006 %%
5007 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
5008 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5009 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5010 </bicig2>

```

## 13.21 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language<sup>15</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.117 on page 474, 13.19 on the preceding page and 13.20 on the page before.

```

5011 <*bicig3>
5012 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
5013 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty
5014 %% needs mongol fonts
5015 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
5016 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5017 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5018 %%
5019 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
5020 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5021 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5022 %%
5023 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
5024 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5025 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5026 </bicig3>

```

---

<sup>15</sup>Bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig3 is a variant. See also section 13.162 on page 497.

## 13.22 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language<sup>16</sup> are taken from the MonTeX package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.117 on page 474 and 13.115 on page 473.

The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to the effect that all the ambiguities of Mongolian are eliminated.

```

5027 <*bithe>
5028 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
5029 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty
5030 %% needs mongol fonts
5031 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
5032 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
5033 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
5034 %%
5035 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
5036 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
5037 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
5038 %%
5039 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
5040 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
5041 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
5042 </bithe>

```

## 13.23 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language<sup>17</sup> are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 72]:

```

5043 <*brazil>
5044 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
5045 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty
5046 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
5047 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
5048 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
5049 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5050 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
5051 %%
5052 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
5053 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5054 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
5055 %%

```

<sup>16</sup>Bithe is a written form of the manju variant of the mongolian language.

<sup>17</sup>It is the portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. These titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo VIEGAS DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations. See section 13.131 on page 480.

```

5056 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
5057 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5058 \def\sltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
5059 </brazil>

```

## 13.24 “Brazilian” language: `brazilian.mld`

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.23 on the page before):

```

5060 <(*brazilian)
5061 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
5062 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
5063 </brazilian>

```

## 13.25 “Breton” language: `breton.mld`

The titles for the “breton” language<sup>18</sup> are taken from `breton.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 73]:

```

5064 <(*breton)
5065 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
5066 %% Breton titles for minitoc.sty
5067 %% from breton.dtx (babel)
5068 %% Rolland, Christian
5069 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
5070 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
5071 \def\pltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
5072 %%
5073 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
5074 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
5075 \def\mltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
5076 %%
5077 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
5078 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
5079 \def\sltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
5080 </breton>

```

---

<sup>18</sup>Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany.

## 13.26 “British” language: british.mld

The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```
5081 <{*british}
5082 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
5083 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5084 </{*british}
```

## 13.27 “Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld

The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the bulgarian.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 47]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.28 on the next page.

```
5085 <{*bulgarian}
5086 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5087 %% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
5088 %% from bulgarian.dtx (babel)
5089 %% Boshnakov, Georgi
5090 %% Needs special fonts
5091 \def\ptctitle{%
5092 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5093 \def\plftitle{%
5094 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
5095 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5096 \def\pltttitle{%
5097 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
5098 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5099 %%
5100 \def\mtctitle{%
5101 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5102 \def\mlftitle{%
5103 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
5104 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5105 \def\mltttitle{%
5106 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
5107 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5108 %%
5109 \def\stctitle{%
5110 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5111 \def\slftitle{%
5112 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
5113 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5114 \def\sltttitle{%
5115 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrrhdsn\cyrk\ %
5116 \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
```

5117 </bulgarian>

## 13.28 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file of the `babel` package [35, 36, 63, 149]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.27 on the preceding page.

```

5118 <*bulgarianb>
5119 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
5120 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
5121 %% From russianb.dtx
5122 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
5123 \def\ptctitle{%
5124 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5125 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
5126 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
5127 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
5128 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5129 %%
5130 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
5131 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5132 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
5133 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
5134 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
5135 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5136 %%
5137 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
5138 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5139 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
5140 {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
5141 \def\slttitle{% Tablici
5142 {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5143 </bulgarianb>

```

## 13.29 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

The titles for the “buryat” language<sup>19</sup> are taken from the `MonTeX` package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.117 on page 474.

```

5144 <*buryat>
5145 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
5146 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty
5147 %% Needs special fonts

```

<sup>19</sup>Spoken in some regions of Mongolia, in the Buryat republic, near Lake Baikal.

```

5148 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5149 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5150 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5151 %%
5152 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5153 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5154 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5155 %%
5156 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5157 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5158 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5159 </buryat>

```

### 13.30 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the buryat language, see section 13.29 on the preceding page) are taken from the MonTeX package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.117 on page 474.

```

5160 <{*buryat2}
5161 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
5162 %% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
5163 %% Needs special fonts
5164 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5165 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5166 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5167 %%
5168 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5169 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5170 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5171 %%
5172 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5173 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5174 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5175 </buryat2>

```

### 13.31 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld



The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the *english* language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```

5176 <{*canadian}
5177 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5178 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5179 </canadian>

```

### 13.32 “Canadien” language: `canadien.mld`



The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the *french* language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58 on page 444):

```
5180 <*canadien>
5181 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
5182 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5183 </canadien>
```

### 13.33 “Castillan” language: `castillan.mld`

The “castillan” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.152 on page 492):

```
5184 <*castillan>
5185 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
5186 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
5187 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
5188 </castillan>
```

### 13.34 “Castillian” language: `castillian.mld`

The “castillian” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. “Castillian” is the english name for “castillan”. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.152 on page 492):

```
5189 <*castillian>
5190 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
5191 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
5192 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
5193 </castillian>
```

### 13.35 “Catalan” language: `catalan.mld`

The titles for the “catalan” language<sup>20</sup> are taken from the `catalan.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 44]:

---

<sup>20</sup>Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona.



```

5194 <*catalan>
5195 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
5196 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty
5197 %% from catalan.dtx (babel)
5198 %% Badenes, Goncal
5199 \def\ptctitle{\`Index}%
5200 \def\plftitle{\`Index de figures}%
5201 \def\plttitle{\`Index de taules}%
5202 %%
5203 \def\mtctitle{\`Index}%
5204 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5205 \def\mltttitle{Taules}%
5206 %%
5207 \def\stctitle{\`Index}%
5208 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5209 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
5210 </catalan>

```

### 13.36 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.37.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```

5211 <*chinese1>
5212 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5213 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
5214 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5215 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5216 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5217 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
5218 %%
5219 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
5220 </chinese1>

```

### 13.37 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo

The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.36.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `chinese2.mlo`.

```

5221 <*chinese2>
5222 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5223 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
5224 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5225 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5226 %%
5227 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5228 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
5229 %%
5230 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
5231 </chinese2>

```

### 13.38 “Croatian” language: `croatian.mld`

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 69]:

```

5232 <*croatian>
5233 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5234 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
5235 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)
5236 %% Pai\{c}, Alan
5237 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5238 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
5239 \def\plttitle{Tablice}%
5240 %%
5241 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5242 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
5243 \def\mlttitle{Tablice}%
5244 %%
5245 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5246 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
5247 \def\slttitle{Tablice}%
5248 </croatian>

```

### 13.39 “Czech” language: `czech.mld`

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file `czech.dtx` in the `babel` package [35, 36, 66]:

```

5249 <*czech>
5250 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2006/01/13]

```

```

5251 %% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
5252 %% from czech.dtx (babel)
5253 %% Lokajicek, Milos
5254 %% Warning: defines \w as a ring accent
5255 \def\w#1{\accent'27 #1}
5256 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
5257 \def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5258 \def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5259 %%
5260 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
5261 \def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5262 \def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5263 %%
5264 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
5265 \def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5266 \def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5267 </czech>

```

### 13.40 “Danish” language: danish.mld

The titles for the “danish” language are taken from the danish.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 64]:

```

5268 <{*danish}
5269 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
5270 %% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
5271 %% from danish.dtx (babel)
5272 %% Larsen, Henning
5273 \def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5274 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
5275 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
5276 %%
5277 \def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5278 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
5279 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
5280 %%
5281 \def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5282 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
5283 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
5284 </danish>

```

### 13.41 “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the devanagari.sty file in the Devanāgarī package [186]. See also section 13.83 on page 459. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.ramovar.org>.

```

5285 <{*devanagari}
5286 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]
5287 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles for minitoc.sty
5288 %% from devanagari.sty by
5289 %% Pandey, Anshuman
5290 %% Radhakrishnan, CV
5291 %% Wagner, Zden\v{e}k
5292 %% Smith, John
5293 %% Carmody, Kevin
5294 %% Mahoney, Richard
5295 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
5296 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
5297 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
5298 \def\plttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
5299 %%
5300 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
5301 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
5302 \def\mlttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
5303 %%
5304 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
5305 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
5306 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
5307 </devanagari>

```

## 13.42 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language are taken from the dutch.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 37]:

```

5308 <{*dutch}
5309 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
5310 % Dutch titles for minitoc.sty
5311 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
5312 %% Braams, Johannes
5313 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5314 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5315 \def\plttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5316 %%
5317 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5318 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5319 \def\mlttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5320 %%
5321 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5322 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5323 \def\slttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5324 </dutch>

```

### 13.43 “English” language: english.mld



The titles for the “english” language are taken from the english.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 38]. *It is the default language.*

See also sections 13.6 on page 419, 13.12 on page 422, 13.26 on page 429, 13.31 on page 431, 13.119 on page 475, 13.163 on page 497, and 13.167 on page 499.

```

5325 (*english)
5326 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
5327 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5328 %% from english.dtx (babel)
5329 %% Braams, Johannes
5330 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
5331 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
5332 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables}%
5333 %%
5334 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5335 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5336 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5337 %%
5338 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5339 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5340 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
5341 \end{english}

```

### 13.44 “English1” language: english1.mld

The titles for the “english1” language are taken from the english.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 38], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

5342 (*english1)
5343 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
5344 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5345 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes
5346 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
5347 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5348 Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
5349 \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5350 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5351 List of Figures in the First Part\relax
5352 \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5353 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5354 List of Tables in the First Part\relax
5355 \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5356 %%
5357 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5358 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%

```

```

5359 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5360 %%
5361 \def\stcttitle{Contents}%
5362 \def\slfttitle{Figures}%
5363 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
5364 </english1>

```

### 13.45 “English2” language: english2.mld

The titles for the “english2” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 38], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

5365 <{*english2>
5366 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
5367 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5368 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes
5369 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
5370 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
5371 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
5372 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
5373 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
5374 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
5375 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
5376 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or
5377 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
5378 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
5379 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5380 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5381 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5382 %%
5383 \def\mtcttitle{Contents}%
5384 \def\mlfttitle{Figures}%
5385 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5386 %%
5387 \def\stcttitle{Contents}%
5388 \def\slfttitle{Figures}%
5389 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
5390 </english2>

```

### 13.46 “Esperant” language: esperant.mld

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the `esperanto.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 67]. The esperanto (artificial) language was created in 1887 by the polish Doctor Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF<sup>21</sup> (1859–1917).

<sup>21</sup> See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.

```

5391 <*esperant>
5392 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/01/13]
5393 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty
5394 %% from esperanto.dtx (babel)
5395 %% Marti, Ruiz-Altaba and Knappen. Jörg
5396 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
5397 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5398 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5399 %%
5400 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
5401 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5402 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5403 %%
5404 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
5405 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5406 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5407 </esperant>

```

### 13.47 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.46 on the preceding page):

```

5408 <*esperanto>
5409 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
5410 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
5411 </esperanto>

```

### 13.48 “Estonian” language: `estonian.mld`

The titles for the “estonian” language are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 74]:

```

5412 <*estonian>
5413 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5414 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty
5415 %% from estonian.dtx (babel)
5416 %% Saar, Enn
5417 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
5418 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%
5419 \def\plttitle{Tabelid}%
5420 %%
5421 \def\mtctitle{Sisukord}%
5422 \def\mlftitle{Joonised}%
5423 \def\mlttitle{Tabelid}%
5424 %%

```

```

5425 \def\stctitle{Sisukord}%
5426 \def\slftitle{Joonised}%
5427 \def\sltttitle{Tabelid}%
5428 \end{estonian}

```

## 13.49 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the `ethiop` package [26]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the next page.

```

5429 \begin{ethiopia}
5430 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
5431 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
5432 %% Needs special fonts
5433 \def\ptctitle{yezate}%
5434 \def\plftitle{%
5435 ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5436 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5437 \def\pltttitle{%
5438 yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5439 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5440 %%
5441 \def\mtctitle{yezate}%
5442 \def\mlftitle{%
5443 ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5444 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5445 \def\mltttitle{%
5446 yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5447 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5448 %%
5449 \def\stctitle{yezate}%
5450 \def\slftitle{%
5451 ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5452 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5453 \def\sltttitle{%
5454 yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5455 mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5456 \end{ethiopia}

```

## 13.50 “Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.49). See also section 13.49.



```

5457 <*ethiopian>
5458 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5459 %% Needs ethiopian special fonts
5460 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
5461 </ethiopian>

```

## 13.51 “Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [26]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.49 on the preceding page.

```

5462 <*ethiopian2>
5463 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
5464 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
5465 %% Needs special fonts
5466 \def\ptctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
5467 \def\plftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
5468 ^121b^12cd^132b}%
5469 \def\pltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1320^1228^12e5
5470 ^121b^12cd^132b}%
5471 %%
5472 \def\mtctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
5473 \def\mlftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
5474 ^121b^12cd^132b}%
5475 \def\mltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1320^1228^12e5
5476 ^121b^12cd^132b}%
5477 %%
5478 \def\stctitle{^12ed^12d8^1275}%
5479 \def\slftitle{^12e8^1225^12d5^120e^127d
5480 ^121b^12cd^132b}%
5481 \def\sltttitle{^12e8^1230^1295^1320^1228^12e5
5482 ^121b^12cd^132b}%
5483 </ethiopian2>

```

## 13.52 “Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X system<sup>22</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.53 on the next page.

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

<sup>22</sup>By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X Project Group. See the FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```

5484 <{*farsi1}
5485 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
5486 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
5487 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
5488 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
5489 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
5490 %% http://www.farsitex.org
5491 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
5492 </farsi1>

```

### 13.53 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system<sup>23</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.52 on the preceding page.

The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

```

5493 <{*farsi2}
5494 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
5495 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
5496 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
5497 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
5498 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
5499 %% http://www.farsitex.org
5500 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
5501 </farsi2>

```

### 13.54 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.ldf` file in the Arabi system[125] by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

5502 <{*farsi3}
5503 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]
5504 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system
5505 %% by Youssef Jabri.
5506 \def\ptctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
5507 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%

```

<sup>23</sup> By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

```

5508 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5509 %%
5510 \def\mtcttitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
5511 \def\mlfttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5512 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5513 %%
5514 \def\stcttitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
5515 \def\slfttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5516 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5517 </farsi3>

```

### 13.55 “Finnish” language: `finnish.mld`

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the `finnish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 59]. See also section 13.56.

```

5518 <(*finnish)
5519 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
5520 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
5521 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
5522 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
5523 \def\ptcttitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5524 \def\plfttitle{Kuvat}%
5525 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
5526 %%
5527 \def\mtcttitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5528 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
5529 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
5530 %%
5531 \def\stcttitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5532 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
5533 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
5534 </finnish>

```

### 13.56 “Finnish2” language: `finnish2.mld`

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` in the `babel` package [35, 36, 59]. See also section 13.55.

```

5535 <(*finnish2)
5536 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]
5537 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
5538 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
5539 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
5540 \def\ptcttitle{Sis\allys}%
5541 \def\plfttitle{Kuvat}%

```

```

5542 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
5543 %%
5544 \def\mtcttitle{Sis\''allys}%
5545 \def\mlfttitle{Kuvat}%
5546 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
5547 %%
5548 \def\stcttitle{Sis\''allys}%
5549 \def\slfttitle{Kuvat}%
5550 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
5551 </finnish2>

```

### 13.57 “Francais” language: `francais.mld`

The “francais”<sup>24</sup> language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58):

```

5552 <(*francais)
5553 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]
5554 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5555 </francais>

```

### 13.58 “French” language: `french.mld`

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 54]. See also sections 13.1 on page 417, 13.2 on page 418, 13.32 on page 432, 13.57, 13.61 on page 446, 13.62 on page 446, and 13.63 on page 447.

```

5556 <(*french)
5557 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]
5558 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5559 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
5560 %% Flipo, Daniel
5561 \def\ptcttitle{Table des mati\''eres}%
5562 \def\plfttitle{Liste des figures}%
5563 \def\pltttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
5564 %%
5565 \def\mtcttitle{Sommaire}%
5566 \def\mlfttitle{Figures}%
5567 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
5568 %%
5569 \def\stcttitle{Sommaire}%
5570 \def\slfttitle{Figures}%
5571 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
5572 </french>

```

---

<sup>24</sup>The right spelling is “français”, but we do not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

## 13.59 “French1” language: french1.mld

The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 54], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

5573 <(*french1)
5574 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
5575 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5576 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
5577 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
5578 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5579 Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
5580 \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5581 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5582 Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
5583 \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5584 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5585 Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
5586 \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5587 %%
5588 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
5589 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5590 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
5591 %%
5592 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
5593 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5594 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
5595 </french1>

```

## 13.60 “French2” language: french2.mld

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 54], with some adaptations for the part-level titles<sup>25</sup>. See also section 9.5.6 on page 240, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the mtc-2nd.tex example file in section 4.2 on page 84.

```

5596 <(*french2)
5597 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]
5598 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5599 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
5600 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
5601 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
5602 \or premi\`ere partie\or
5603 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\`eme\fi} partie\or
5604 troisi\`eme partie\or quatri\`eme partie\or cinq\`eme partie\or
5605 sixi\`eme partie\or septi\`eme partie\or huiti\`eme partie\or

```

<sup>25</sup>This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

```

5606 neuvi\‘eme partie\or dixi\‘eme partie\or onzi\‘eme partie\or
5607 douzi\‘eme partie\or treizi\‘eme partie\or quatorzi\‘eme partie\or
5608 quinz\‘eme partie\or seizi\‘eme partie\or dix-septi\‘eme partie\or
5609 dix-huiti\‘eme partie\or dix-neuvi\‘eme partie\or
5610 vingti\‘eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}
5611 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
5612 Sommaire \else
5613 Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
5614 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
5615 Liste des figures\else
5616 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
5617 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
5618 Liste des tableaux\else
5619 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
5620 %%
5621 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
5622 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5623 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
5624 %%
5625 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
5626 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5627 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
5628 \</french2>

```

### 13.61 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 444.

```

5629 \<frenchb>
5630 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
5631 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5632 \</frenchb>

```

### 13.62 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 444.

```

5633 \<frenchle>
5634 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
5635 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5636 \</frenchle>

```

### 13.63 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 444.

```
5637 <{*frenchpro}
5638 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
5639 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5640 </frenchpro>
```

### 13.64 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language<sup>26</sup> are taken from the galician.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 50]:

```
5641 <{*galician}
5642 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2006/01/13]
5643 %% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
5644 %% from galician.dtx (babel)
5645 %% Carriba, Manuel
5646 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
5647 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
5648 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
5649 %%
5650 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
5651 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
5652 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
5653 %%
5654 \def\stctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
5655 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
5656 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
5657 </galician>
```

### 13.65 “German” language: german.mld

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [35, 36]. See also the section 13.13 on page 422.

```
5658 <{*german}
5659 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
5660 %% German titles for minitoc.sty
5661 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
```

---

<sup>26</sup>Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

```

5662 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%
5663 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
5664 %%
5665 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
5666 \def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
5667 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
5668 %%
5669 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
5670 \def\slftitle{Figuren}%
5671 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
5672 </german>

```

## 13.66 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “germanb” language is a variant for the “german” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 70]:

```

5673 <*germanb>
5674 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
5675 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
5676 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
5677 %% Braams, Johannes and Raichle, Bernd
5678 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
5679 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
5680 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
5681 %%
5682 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
5683 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
5684 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
5685 %%
5686 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
5687 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
5688 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
5689 </germanb>

```

## 13.67 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “germanb2” language is a variant for the “german” language, with short titles. See also section 13.66. The titles are taken from the `babel` package [35, 36]:

```

5690 <*germanb2>
5691 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
5692 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
5693 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
5694 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
5695 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%

```



```

5696 %%
5697 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
5698 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
5699 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
5700 %%
5701 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
5702 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
5703 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
5704 </germanb2>

```

## 13.68 “Greek” language: greek.mld

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek) are taken from the greek.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 77]. Greek fonts are required.

```

5705 <*greek>
5706 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
5707 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
5708 %% from greek.dtx (babel)
5709 %% Syropoulos, Apostolos
5710 %% Needs greek fonts.
5711 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
5712 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
5713 \def\pltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
5714 %%
5715 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
5716 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
5717 \def\mltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
5718 %%
5719 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
5720 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
5721 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
5722 </greek>

```

## 13.69 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

The titles for the “greek-mono” language<sup>27</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]:

```

5723 <*greek – mono>
5724 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
5725 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
5726 %% Needs Omega
5727 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
5728 %% Dmitry Ivanov

```

---

<sup>27</sup>Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

```

5729 %%
5730 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
5731 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
5732 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5733 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5734 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5735 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
5736 ^03bd}}%
5737 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5738 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5739 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5740 %%
5741 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
5742 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
5743 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5744 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5745 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5746 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
5747 ^03bd}}%
5748 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5749 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5750 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5751 %%
5752 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
5753 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
5754 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
5755 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5756 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5757 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
5758 ^03bd}}%
5759 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5760 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
5761 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
5762 </greek – mono>

```

## 13.70 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language<sup>28</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]:

```

5763 < *greek – polydemo>
5764 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
5765 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
5766 %% Needs Omega
5767 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
5768 %% Dmitry Ivanov
5769 %%
5770 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
5771 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%

```

<sup>28</sup> Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```

5772 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
5773 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5774 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5775 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
5776 ^^^^03bd}}}%
5777 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
5778 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5779 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}}%
5780 %%
5781 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
5782 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
5783 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}}%
5784 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5785 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5786 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
5787 ^^^^03bd}}}%
5788 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
5789 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5790 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}}%
5791 %%
5792 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
5793 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
5794 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}}%
5795 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5796 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5797 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
5798 ^^^^03bd}}}%
5799 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
5800 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5801 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}}%
5802 </greek – polydemo>

```

### 13.71 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language<sup>29</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]:

```

5803 <*greek – polykatha>
5804 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
5805 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
5806 %% Needs Omega
5807 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
5808 %% Dmitry Ivanov
5809 %%
5810 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
5811 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%

```

<sup>29</sup>Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAIS, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

5812 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
5813 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
5814 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5815 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
5816 ^^^^03bd}}%
5817 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
5818 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5819 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
5820 %%
5821 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
5822 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
5823 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
5824 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
5825 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5826 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
5827 ^^^^03bd}}%
5828 \def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
5829 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5830 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
5831 %%
5832 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
5833 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
5834 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
5835 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
5836 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5837 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
5838 ^^^^03bd}}%
5839 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
5840 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
5841 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
5842 /greek – polykatha)

```

## 13.72 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [29]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

5843 (*guarani)
5844 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
5845 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty
5846 %% from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
5847 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
5848 %%
5849 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice general}%
5850 \def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
5851 \def\plttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
5852 %%
5853 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice general}%

```

```

5854 \def\mlfttitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
5855 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
5856 %%
5857 \def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
5858 \def\slfttitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
5859 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
5860 </guarani>

```

### 13.73 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hang l, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [218]. See [116, page 150] and [187].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74, 13.75 on the next page, 13.76 on page 455, 13.77 on page 455, 13.78 on page 456, 13.79 on page 456, and 13.80 on page 457.

The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```

5861 < *hangul1>
5862 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5863 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
5864 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5865 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5866 %%
5867 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5868 %% Hangul captions
5869 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
5870 %%
5871 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
5872 </hangul1>

```

### 13.74 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73, 13.75 on the following page, 13.76 on page 455, 13.77 on page 455, 13.78 on page 456, 13.79 on page 456, and 13.80 on page 457.

The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul2.mlo`.

```

5873 \(*hangul2)
5874 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5875 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
5876 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5877 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5878 %%
5879 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5880 %% Hangul captions
5881 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5882 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
5883 %%
5884 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
5885 \(/hangul2)

```

### 13.75 “Hangul3” language: `hangul3.mld` and `hangul3.mlo`

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file `hangul2.cap` of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the preceding page, 13.74 on the page before, 13.76 on the following page, 13.77 on the next page, 13.78 on page 456, 13.79 on page 456, and 13.80 on page 457.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul3.mlo`.

```

5886 \(*hangul3)
5887 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
5888 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
5889 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5890 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5891 %%
5892 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5893 %% Hangul captions set 2
5894 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
5895 %%
5896 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
5897 \(/hangul3)

```

### 13.76 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 453, 13.74 on page 453, 13.75 on the page before, 13.77, 13.78 on the next page, 13.79 on the following page, and 13.80 on page 457.

The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```

5898 < *hangul4 >
5899 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
5900 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
5901 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5902 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5903 %%
5904 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5905 %% Hangul captions set 2, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5906 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
5907 %%
5908 \mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
5909 < /hangul4 >

```

### 13.77 “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for Lambda  $\Lambda$ ) are taken from the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX system [136, in korean] by KOAUNghi Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also sections 13.73 on page 453, 13.74 on page 453, 13.75 on the preceding page, 13.76, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on the next page, and 13.80 on page 457. See [116, page 150] and [187].

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul-u8.mlo.

```

5910 < *hangul - u8 >
5911 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
5912 %% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX package
5913 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
5914 %%
5915 %% Hangul captions for Lambda
5916 %%
5917 \mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
5918 < /hangul - u8 >

```

## 13.78 “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file hanja.cpx of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 453, 13.74 on page 453, 13.75 on page 454, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.77 on the page before, 13.79, and 13.80 on the next page.

The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja1.mlo.

```

5919 (*hanja1)
5920 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5921 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package
5922 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5923 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5924 %%
5925 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5926 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5927 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
5928 %%
5929 \mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
5930 \end{document}

```

## 13.79 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file hanja.cap of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 453, 13.74 on page 453, 13.75 on page 454, 13.76 on the page before, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.78, and 13.80 on the following page.

The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja2.mlo.

```

5931 (*hanja2)
5932 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5933 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
5934 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5935 %% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
5936 %%
5937 %% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
5938 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
5939 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
5940 %%
5941 \mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
5942 \end{document}

```



## 13.80 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for Lambda  $\Lambda$ ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the HLaTeX system [in korean][136] by KOAUNGHU Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.73 on page 453, 13.74 on page 453, 13.75 on page 454, 13.76 on page 455, 13.77 on page 455, 13.78 on the preceding page, and 13.79 on the page before. See [116, page 150] and [187].

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja-u8.mlo`.

```

5943 (*hanja - u8)
5944 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
5945 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
5946 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
5947 %%
5948 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
5949 %%
5950 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
5951 </hanja - u8>

```

## 13.81 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [143, 144], which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 13.82 on the following page.

```

5952 (*hebrew)
5953 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
5954 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty
5955 %% Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
5956 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
5957 \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
5958 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5959 \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
5960 \def\plttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5961 \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
5962 %%
5963 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
5964 \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
5965 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5966 \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
5967 \def\mlttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5968 \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
5969 %%
5970 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
5971 \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%

```

```

5972 \def\slfttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5973 \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
5974 \def\slttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
5975 \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
5976 </hebrew>

```

## 13.82 “Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld

The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris Lavva) in the Babel package [35, 36, 65], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.81 on the page before.

```

5977 <(*hebrew2)
5978 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]
5979 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package.
5980 %% Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
5981 %% Need hebrew fonts.
5982 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
5983 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
5984 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
5985 \def\plfttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5986 \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmam\hebtav\ %
5987 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
5988 \def\pltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5989 \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmam\hebtav\
5990 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
5991 %%
5992 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{%
5993 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
5994 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
5995 \def\mlfttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5996 \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmam\hebtav\ %
5997 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
5998 \def\mltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
5999 \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmam\hebtav\
6000 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
6001 %%
6002 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{%
6003 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
6004 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6005 \def\slfttitle{\@ensure@R{%
6006 \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmam\hebtav\ %
6007 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebreash\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6008 \def\slttitle{\@ensure@R{%
6009 \hebreash\hebshin\hebyod\hebmam\hebtav\
6010 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
6011 </hebrew2>

```

### 13.83 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load devanagari.mld (see section 13.41 on page 435):

```
6012 ⟨*hindi⟩
6013 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]
6014 \mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
6015 ⟨/hindi⟩
```

### 13.84 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file in the Devanāgarī package [186] after conversion. See also section 13.41 on page 435. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.ramovar.org>.

```
6016 ⟨*hindi – modern⟩
6017 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]
6018 %% Hindi modern titles for minitoc.sty
6019 %% from captions.dn in ‘‘Devanagari for TeX’’ by
6020 %% Pandey, Anshuman
6021 %% Radhakrishnan, CV
6022 %% Wagner, Zden\v{e}k
6023 %% Smith, John
6024 %% Carmody, Kevin
6025 %% Mahoney, Richard
6026 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
6027 \def\ptctitle{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}%
6028 \def\plftitle{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}%
6029 \def\pltttitle{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}%
6030 %%
6031 \def\mtctitle{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}%
6032 \def\mlftitle{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}%
6033 \def\mltttitle{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}%
6034 %%
6035 \def\stctitle{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}%
6036 \def\slftitle{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}%
6037 \def\sltttitle{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}%
6038 ⟨/hindi – modern⟩
```

### 13.85 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.107 on page 470.

```

6039 <(*hungarian)
6040 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
6041 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
6042 </hungarian>

```

### 13.86 “Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the icelandic.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 43]:

```

6043 <(*icelandic)
6044 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]
6045 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty
6046 %% from icelandic.dtx (babel)
6047 %% Árnason, Einar
6048 %% need inputenc with 8-bits encoding
6049 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
6050 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
6051 \def\plttitle{Töfluskrá}%
6052 %%
6053 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
6054 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
6055 \def\mlttitle{Töfluskrá}%
6056 %%
6057 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
6058 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
6059 \def\slttitle{Töfluskrá}%
6060 </icelandic>

```

### 13.87 “Indon” language: indon.mld

The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.15 on page 423):

```

6061 <(*indon)
6062 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
6063 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
6064 </indon>

```

### 13.88 “Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld

The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load bahasai.mld (see section 13.15 on page 423):

```

6065 <*indonesian>
6066 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6067 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
6068 </indonesian>

```

### 13.89 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 60]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages. The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it. You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>

```

6069 <*interlingua>
6070 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
6071 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty
6072 %% from interlingua.dtx (babel)
6073 %% Kleiweg, Peter
6074 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
6075 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6076 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
6077 %%
6078 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
6079 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
6080 \def\mltttitle{Tabellas}%
6081 %%
6082 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
6083 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
6084 \def\sltttitle{Tabellas}%
6085 </interlingua>

```

### 13.90 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language are taken from the `irish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 39]:

```

6086 <*irish>
6087 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
6088 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty
6089 %% from irish.dtx (babel)
6090 %% Braams, Johannes and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
6091 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
6092 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%

```

```

6093 \def\pltttitle{T\'abla\'\{i}}%
6094 %%
6095 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
6096 \def\mlfttitle{L\'ear\'aid\'\{i}}%
6097 \def\mltttitle{T\'abla\'\{i}}%
6098 %%
6099 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
6100 \def\slfttitle{L\'ear\'aid\'\{i}}%
6101 \def\slttitle{T\'abla\'\{i}}%
6102 </irish>

```

### 13.91 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language are taken from the file `italian.dtx` in the `babel` package [35, 36, 52]. See also section 13.92.

```

6103 <*italian>
6104 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6105 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty
6106 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
6107 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
6108 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
6109 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
6110 \def\plfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6111 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6112 %%
6113 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
6114 \def\mlfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6115 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6116 %%
6117 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
6118 \def\slfttitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6119 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6120 </italian>

```

### 13.92 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.91.

```

6121 <*italian2>
6122 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6123 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
6124 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
6125 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
6126 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)

```

```

6127 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
6128 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6129 \def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6130 %%
6131 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
6132 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6133 \def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6134 %%
6135 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
6136 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6137 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6138 </italian2>

```

### 13.93 “Japanese” language: `japanese.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

They are several variants for the `japanese` titles. The titles for a first variant of the “japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA<sup>30</sup>. See also sections 13.94, 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on the next page, and 13.97 on page 465. The titles for the “japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```

6139 < *japanese>
6140 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
6141 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
6142 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
6143 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
6144 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
6145 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
6146 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
6147 </japanese>

```

### 13.94 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.mld` and `japanese2.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese2” language (japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93, 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on the next page, and 13.97 on page 465. The titles for the “japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

---

<sup>30</sup> <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

```

6148 <*japanese2>
6149 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6150 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
6151 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6152 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6153 %%
6154 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6155 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
6156 %% encoding: EUC
6157 %%
6158 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
6159 </japanese2>

```

### 13.95 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld` and `japanese3.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the page before, 13.94 on the preceding page, 13.96, and 13.97 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```

6160 <*japanese3>
6161 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
6162 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
6163 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6164 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6165 %%
6166 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6167 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
6168 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
6169 %%
6170 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
6171 </japanese3>

```

### 13.96 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld` and `japanese4.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the page before, 13.94 on the preceding page, 13.95, and 13.97 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.



```

6172 <*japanese4>
6173 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
6174 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
6175 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6176 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6177 %%
6178 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6179 %% Japanese captions
6180 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
6181 %%
6182 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
6183 </japanese4>

```

### 13.97 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [156, 157]. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on page 463, 13.94 on page 463, 13.95 on the page before, and 13.96 on the preceding page. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```

6184 <*japanese5>
6185 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
6186 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
6187 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6188 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6189 %%
6190 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6191 %% Japanese captions
6192 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
6193 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
6194 %%
6195 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
6196 </japanese5>

```

### 13.98 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

The Kannada (or Kannara) is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state of India. The titles are taken from the `kanlel.sty` package file from the Kannadatex project<sup>31</sup> by C.S. YOGANANDA. Specific fonts are required.

---

<sup>31</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

```

6197 <*kannada>
6198 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2006/02/14]
6199 %% from kanlel.sty of Kannadatex (C.S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in)
6200 %%
6201 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}
6202 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6203 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6204 %%
6205 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}
6206 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6207 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6208 %%
6209 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}
6210 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6211 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6212 </kannada>

```

### 13.99 “Khalka” language: khalkha.mld

“khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load xalx.mld (see sections 13.172 on page 501, 13.173 on page 502, and 13.174 on page 502):

```

6213 <*khalkha>
6214 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
6215 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
6216 </khalkha>

```

### 13.100 “Latin” language: latin.mld

The titles for the “latin” language are taken from the latin.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 45]. See also section 13.101 on the following page.

```

6217 <*latin>
6218 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
6219 %% Latin titles for minitoc.sty
6220 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
6221 %% Beccari, Claudio
6222 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
6223 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6224 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6225 %%
6226 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
6227 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6228 \def\mltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6229 %%
6230 \def\stctitle{Index}%

```

```

6231 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6232 \def\sltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6233 \</latin>

```

### 13.101 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 45], but abbreviated. See also section 13.100 on the page before.

```

6234 \<latin2>
6235 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6236 %% Latin titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
6237 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
6238 %% Beccari, Claudio
6239 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
6240 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6241 \def\pltttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6242 %%
6243 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
6244 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
6245 \def\mltttitle{Tabulae}%
6246 %%
6247 \def\stctitle{Index}%
6248 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
6249 \def\sltttitle{Tabulae}%
6250 \</latin2>

```

### 13.102 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld

The titles for the “latvian” language<sup>32</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]. See also section 13.103 on the following page:

```

6251 \<latvian>
6252 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
6253 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project)
6254 %% Needs Omega
6255 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6256 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6257 %%
6258 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
6259 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
6260 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6261 %%

```

---

<sup>32</sup>“Latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

```

6262 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
6263 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^0113lu saraksts}}}%
6264 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}}%
6265 %%
6266 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturdays}}%
6267 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^{^^^0113lu saraksts}}}%
6268 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}}%
6269 </latvian>

```

### 13.103 “Letton” language: `letton.mld`

The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.102 on the page before.

```

6270 <{*letton}>
6271 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
6272 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
6273 </letton>

```

### 13.104 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file<sup>33</sup> for the `babel` package [35, 36]:

```

6274 <{*lithuanian}>
6275 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6276 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty
6277 %% from lithuanian.ldf
6278 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip
6279 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
6280 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
6281 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6282 \def\pltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6283 %%
6284 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
6285 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6286 \def\mltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6287 %%
6288 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
6289 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6290 \def\sltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6291 </lithuanian>

```

<sup>33</sup>Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip>.

### 13.105 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language<sup>34</sup> are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 78]. See also section 13.166 on page 499. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.106).

```

6292 (*lowsorbian)
6293 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
6294 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6295 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
6296 %% Werner, Eduard
6297 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
6298 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6299 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6300 %%
6301 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
6302 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6303 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6304 %%
6305 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
6306 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6307 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6308 \end{lowersorbian}

```

### 13.106 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowsorbian”, so we just load `lowersorbian.mld`. See section 13.105.

```

6309 (*lsorbian)
6310 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
6311 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6312 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
6313 %% Werner, Eduard
6314 \selectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
6315 \end{lsorbian}

```

---

<sup>34</sup>Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

### 13.107 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 46]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.85 on page 459). See also sections 13.108 and 13.109 on the next page for variants (it seems that magyar.dtx might have evolved).

```

6316 <*magyar>
6317 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
6318 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
6319 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6320 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6321 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
6322 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6323 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6324 %%
6325 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
6326 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6327 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6328 %%
6329 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
6330 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6331 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6332 </magyar>

```

### 13.108 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the babel package [35, 36]. See also sections 13.107 and 13.109 on the next page.

```

6333 <*magyar2>
6334 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
6335 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
6336 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6337 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6338 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
6339 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6340 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6341 %%
6342 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
6343 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6344 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6345 %%
6346 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
6347 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6348 \def\slttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6349 </magyar2>

```

### 13.109 “Magyar3” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the magyar.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 46]. See also sections 13.107 on the preceding page and 13.108 on the page before.

```

6350 <*magyar3>
6351 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
6352 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
6353 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6354 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6355 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
6356 \def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
6357 \def\pltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
6358 %%
6359 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
6360 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
6361 \def\mltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
6362 %%
6363 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
6364 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
6365 \def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
6366 </magyar3>

```

### 13.110 “Malay” language: malay.mld

The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.16 on page 423):

```

6367 <*malay>
6368 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
6369 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
6370 </malay>

```

### 13.111 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

The titles for the “malayalam” language<sup>35</sup>, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [3]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.113 on the next page and 13.114 on page 473.

---

<sup>35</sup>The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.

```

6371 ⟨*malayalam – keli⟩
6372 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
6373 %%
6374 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
6375 %%
6376 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
6377 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
6378 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
6379 %%
6380 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
6381 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
6382 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
6383 %%
6384 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
6385 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
6386 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
6387 ⟨/malayalam – keli⟩

```

### 13.112 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo

This is the Malayalam language implementation when you use Lambda ( $\Lambda$ ) (the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for Omega) via the `omal` package [4] of the Malayalam-Omega project<sup>36</sup>. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a `.mlo` file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the `omal` package.

```

6388 ⟨*malayalam – omega⟩
6389 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2006/02/13]
6390 % from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
6391 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}
6392 %
6393 ⟨/malayalam – omega⟩

```

### 13.113 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

The titles for the “malayalam” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old lipi), are taken from the `malayalam` package [3]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.111 on the page before and 13.114 on the following page.

```

6394 ⟨*malayalam – rachana⟩
6395 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]

```

---

<sup>36</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>



```

6396 %%
6397 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
6398 %%
6399 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
6400 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\C\<94>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
6401 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6402 %%
6403 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
6404 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\C\<94>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
6405 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6406 %%
6407 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
6408 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\C\<94>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
6409 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\F\<59>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6410 </malayalam – rachana>

```

### 13.114 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

The titles for the “malayalam” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.111 on page 471 and 13.113 on the preceding page.

```

6411 (*malayalam – rachana2)
6412 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6413 %%
6414 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
6415 %%
6416 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
6417 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
6418 \def\plttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6419 %%
6420 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
6421 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
6422 \def\mlttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6423 %%
6424 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
6425 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
6426 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6427 </malayalam – rachana2>

```

### 13.115 “Manju” language: manju.mld

“Manju” is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load bithe.mld (see section 13.22 on page 427):

```

6428 <*manju>
6429 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
6430 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
6431 </manju>

```

### 13.116 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.16 on page 423):

```

6432 <*meyalu>
6433 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
6434 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
6435 </meyalu>

```

### 13.117 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the MonTeX package [93, 96]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.19 on page 425, 13.20 on page 425, 13.21 on page 426, 13.22 on page 427, 13.29 on page 430, 13.30 on page 431, 13.172 on page 501, 13.173 on page 502, and 13.174 on page 502.

```

6436 <*mongol>
6437 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
6438 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
6439 %% Needs mongol fonts
6440 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6441 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6442 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6443 %%
6444 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6445 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6446 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6447 %%
6448 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6449 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6450 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6451 </mongol>

```

### 13.118 “Naustrian” language: `naustrian.mld`

The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language), so we load `ngermanb.mld`. See also section 13.121.

```
6452 <*naustrian>
6453 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
6454 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
6455 </naustrian>
```

### 13.119 “Newzealand” language: `newzealand.mld`

The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```
6456 <*newzealand>
6457 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
6458 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
6459 </newzealand>
```

### 13.120 “Ngerman” language: `ngerman.mld`

The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language<sup>37</sup>, so we load `ngermanb.mld`. See also section 13.121.

```
6460 <*ngerman>
6461 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
6462 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
6463 </ngerman>
```

### 13.121 “Ngermanb” language: `ngermanb.mld`

The titles for the “ngermanb” language<sup>38</sup> are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 71]. See also sections 13.118, and 13.120.

```
6464 <*ngermanb>
6465 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
```

<sup>37</sup> A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language.

<sup>38</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

```

6466 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty
6467 %% from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
6468 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
6469 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
6470 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6471 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6472 %%
6473 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6474 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6475 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6476 %%
6477 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6478 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6479 \def\sltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6480 \</ngermanb>

```

### 13.122 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language<sup>39</sup> are taken from the babel package [35, 36, 71]. See also section 13.121 on the page before.

```

6481 \<ngermanb2>
6482 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6483 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
6484 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
6485 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
6486 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
6487 %%
6488 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6489 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
6490 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
6491 %%
6492 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6493 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
6494 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
6495 \</ngermanb2>

```

### 13.123 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the norsk.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 40], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.125 on page 478.

---

<sup>39</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling and short titles.

```

6496 ⟨*norsk⟩
6497 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
6498 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty
6499 %% from noesk.dtx (babel)
6500 %% Braams, Johannes and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
6501 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
6502 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6503 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
6504 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
6505 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
6506 %%
6507 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
6508 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
6509 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
6510 %%
6511 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
6512 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
6513 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
6514 ⟨/norsk⟩

```

### 13.124 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the babel package [35, 36, 40], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 13.123 on the page before.

```

6515 ⟨*norsk2⟩
6516 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6517 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
6518 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6519 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
6520 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
6521 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
6522 %%
6523 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
6524 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
6525 \def\mlttitle{Tabelliste}%
6526 %%
6527 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
6528 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
6529 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
6530 ⟨/norsk2⟩

```

### 13.125 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language<sup>40</sup> are taken from norsk.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 40], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.123 on page 476.

```

6531 (*nynorsk)
6532 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
6533 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
6534 %% from norsk.dtx (babel)
6535 %% Braams, Johannes and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
6536 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
6537 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6538 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
6539 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
6540 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
6541 %%
6542 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
6543 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
6544 \def\plttitle{Tabellar}%
6545 %%
6546 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
6547 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
6548 \def\slttitle{Tabellar}%
6549 \end{file}

```

### 13.126 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.125.

```

6550 (*nynorsk2)
6551 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
6552 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
6553 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6554 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
6555 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
6556 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
6557 %%
6558 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
6559 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
6560 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
6561 %%
6562 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
6563 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
6564 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
6565 \end{file}

```

---

<sup>40</sup>Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialect spoken in the country.

### 13.127 “Polish” language: `polish.mld`

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the `polish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 75]. See also sections 13.128 and 13.129 on the next page.

```

6566 <*polish>
6567 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
6568 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty
6569 %% from polish.dtx (babel)
6570 %% Schalueck, Elmar and Janich, Michael
6571 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
6572 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6573 \def\pltttitle{Spis tablic}%
6574 %%
6575 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
6576 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6577 \def\mltttitle{Spis tablic}%
6578 %%
6579 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
6580 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
6581 \def\slttitle{Spis tablic}%
6582 </polish>

```

### 13.128 “Polish2” language: `polish2.mld`

The titles for the “polish2” language<sup>41</sup> are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]. See also sections 13.127 and 13.129 on the next page.

```

6583 <*polish2>
6584 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
6585 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
6586 %% Needs Omega
6587 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6588 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6589 %%
6590 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
6591 \def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
6592 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
6593 %%
6594 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
6595 \def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
6596 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
6597 %%
6598 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
6599 \def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
6600 \def\slttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
6601 </polish2>

```

---

<sup>41</sup> “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

### 13.129 “Polski” language: `polski.mld`

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the `polski.dtx` file in the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package [184, 224]. See also sections 13.127 on the preceding page and 13.128 on the page before.

```
6602 <*polski>
6603 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
6604 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
6605 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
6606 %% Mariusz Olko, Marcin Woliński.
6607 %%
6608 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre'sci}%
6609 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk'ow}%
6610 \def\plttitle{Spis tabel}%
6611 %%
6612 \def\mtctitle{Spis rysunk'ow}%
6613 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk'ow}%
6614 \def\mlttitle{Spis tabel}%
6615 %%
6616 \def\stctitle{Spis rysunk'ow}%
6617 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk'ow}%
6618 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
6619 </polski>
```

### 13.130 “Portuges” language: `portuges.mld`

This is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.131), so we just load `portuguese.mld`:

```
6620 <*portuges>
6621 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
6622 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
6623 </portuges>
```

### 13.131 “Portuguese” language: `portuguese.mld`

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 72]. See also section 13.23 on page 427, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```
6624 <*portuguese>
6625 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
6626 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
```



```

6627 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
6628 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
6629 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
6630 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6631 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
6632 %%
6633 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
6634 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6635 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
6636 %%
6637 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
6638 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6639 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
6640 </portuguese>

```

### 13.132 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

The titles for the “romanian” language are taken from the `romanian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 57].

```

6641 <*romanian>
6642 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6643 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
6644 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
6645 %% Horst, Umstatter and Juhasz, Robert
6646 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
6647 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
6648 \def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
6649 %%
6650 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
6651 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
6652 \def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
6653 %%
6654 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
6655 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
6656 \def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
6657 </romanian>

```

### 13.133 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language are taken from the `romanian.dtx` file in the `RomanianTeX` package [199]. See also sections 13.132 and 13.134 on the next page. Alas, `RomanianTeX` is not compatible with the `babel` package [35, 36].

```

6658 <*romanian2>
6659 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]
6660 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
6661 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
6662 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
6663 %% Bernd Raichle
6664 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
6665 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
6666 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
6667 %%
6668 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
6669 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
6670 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
6671 %%
6672 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
6673 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
6674 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
6675 </romanian2>

```

### 13.134 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language are taken from the `romanian.dtx` file in the RomanianTeX package [199]. See also sections 13.132 on the preceding page and 13.133 on the page before. Alas, RomanianTeX is not compatible with the `babel` package [35, 36].

```

6676 <*romanian3>
6677 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]
6678 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
6679 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
6680 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
6681 %% Bernd Raichle
6682 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
6683 \def\plftitle{Indice de figuri}%
6684 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
6685 %%
6686 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
6687 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
6688 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
6689 %%
6690 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
6691 \def\slftitle{Indice de figuri}%
6692 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
6693 </romanian3>

```

### 13.135 “Russian” language: russian.mld

The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the babel package [35, 36]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```

6694 <*russian>
6695 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
6696 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
6697 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
6698 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
6699 \def\pltttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
6700 %%
6701 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
6702 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
6703 \def\mltttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
6704 %%
6705 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
6706 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
6707 \def\sltttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
6708 </russian>

```

### 13.136 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld

The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.135.

```

6709 <*russian2m>
6710 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
6711 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
6712 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
6713 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6714 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6715 %%
6716 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
6717 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
6718 ^^^^0438^^^^0435}}%
6719 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
6720 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0438^^^^043b%
6721 ^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446^^^^0438%
6722 ^^^^0439}}%
6723 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
6724 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a ^^^^0442^^^^0430%
6725 ^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446}}%
6726 %%
6727 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
6728 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
6729 ^^^^0438^^^^0435}}%

```

```

6730 \def\mlfttitle{\localrussian%
6731 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
6732 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
6733 ^0439}}%
6734 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
6735 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
6736 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
6737 %%
6738 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
6739 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
6740 ^0438^0435}}%
6741 \def\slfttitle{\localrussian%
6742 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
6743 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
6744 ^0439}}%
6745 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
6746 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
6747 ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
6748 </russian2m>

```

### 13.137 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the ANTOMEGA project [139]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.135 on the page before.

```

6749 (*russian2o)
6750 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
6751 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
6752 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
6753 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6754 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6755 %%
6756 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
6757 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
6758 ^0456^0435}}%
6759 \def\plfttitle{\localrussian%
6760 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
6761 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
6762 ^0456^0439}}%
6763 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
6764 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
6765 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
6766 %%
6767 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
6768 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
6769 ^0456^0435}}%
6770 \def\mlfttitle{\localrussian%
6771 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
6772 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%

```

```

6773 ^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
6774 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
6775 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0442%
6776 ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
6777 %
6778 \def\stcttitle{\localrussian%
6779 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
6780 ^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
6781 \def\slfttitle{\localrussian%
6782 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0438%
6783 ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446%
6784 ^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
6785 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
6786 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a ^^^^0442%
6787 ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
6788 </russian2o>

```

### 13.138 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 63, 149]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.135 on page 483. The `parttoc` title varies depending if chapters are defined or not by the document class.

```

6789 <{*russianb>
6790 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
6791 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
6792 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
6793 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
6794 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
6795 \def\ptctitle{%
6796 {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
6797 \else
6798 \def\ptctitle{%
6799 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
6800 \fi
6801 \def\plftitle{%
6802 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6803 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
6804 \def\pltttitle{%
6805 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6806 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
6807 %%
6808 \def\mtctitle{%
6809 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
6810 \def\mlftitle{%
6811 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6812 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
6813 \def\mltttitle{%
6814 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space

```

```

6815 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
6816 %%
6817 \def\stctitle{%
6818 {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
6819 \def\slftitle{%
6820 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6821 \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
6822 \def\slttitle{%
6823 {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
6824 \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
6825 </russianb>

```

### 13.139 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTEX` package [93, 96]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.135 on page 483.

```

6826 <{*russianc}
6827 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
6828 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
6829 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
6830 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
6831 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
6832 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
6833 %%
6834 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
6835 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
6836 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
6837 %%
6838 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
6839 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
6840 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
6841 </russianc>

```

### 13.140 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo

They are several variants for the russian titles with the `cmcyralt` fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` file in the `cmcyralt` package [33].

The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```

6842 <*russian – cca>
6843 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
6844 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
6845 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
6846 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
6847 %% Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
6848 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
6849 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
6850 </russian – cca>

```

### 13.141 “Russian-cca1” language: `russian-cca1.mld` and `russian-cca1.mlo`

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the `cmcyralt.sty` file in the `cmcyralt` package[121].

The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca1.mlo`.

```

6851 <*russian – cca1>
6852 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
6853 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
6854 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
6855 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
6856 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
6857 %% Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
6858 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
6859 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
6860 </russian – cca1>

```

### 13.142 “Russian-lh” language: `russian-lh.mld` and `russian-lh.mlo`

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the `russian.sty` file in the LH package [179].

The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lh.mlo`.

```

6861 <*russian – lh>
6862 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
6863 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty
6864 %% From russian.sty in the LH package
6865 %% LH fonts in special encoding

```

```

6866 %% Sergei O. Naoumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
6867 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
6868 </russian – lh>

```

### 13.143 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the `lhcyralt.sty` file in the `lhcyr` package [239].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```

6869 < *russian – lhcyralt>
6870 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
6871 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
6872 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
6873 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
6874 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
6875 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
6876 </russian – lhcyralt>

```

### 13.144 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the `lhcyrkoi.sty` file in the `lhcyr` package [239].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo`. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```

6877 < *russian – lhcyrkoi>
6878 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
6879 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
6880 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
6881 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
6882 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
6883 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
6884 </russian – lhcyrkoi>

```



### 13.145 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrwin.sty file in the lhcyr package [239].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrwin.mlo. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

```
6885 <*russian – lhcyrwin>
6886 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
6887 %% Russian-lhcyrwin titles for minitoc.sty
6888 %% From lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
6889 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
6890 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
6891 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
6892 </russian – lhcyrwin>
```

### 13.146 “Samin” language: samin.mld

The titles for the “samin” language<sup>42</sup> are taken from the samin.dtx file in the babel package [35, 36, 58]. Specific fonts are required.

```
6893 <*samin>
6894 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
6895 %% North Sami (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
6896 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
6897 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
6898 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
6899 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
6900 \def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
6901 %%
6902 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
6903 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
6904 \def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
6905 %%
6906 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
6907 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
6908 \def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
6909 </samin>
```

<sup>42</sup>Several Sami dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more .dtx files for, e.g., Lule and South Sami. Hence the name samin.dtx (and not sami.dtx or the like) in the North Sami case. This note is copied from the samin.dtx file.

### 13.147 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language are taken from the `scottish.dtx` file in the `babel` language [35, 36, 55]:

```
6910 <*scottish>
6911 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
6912 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty
6913 %% from scottish.dtx (babel)
6914 %% Grant, Fraser
6915 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
6916 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
6917 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
6918 %%
6919 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
6920 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
6921 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
6922 %%
6923 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar-obrach}%
6924 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
6925 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\'ar}%
6926 </scottish>
```

### 13.148 “Serbian” language: `serbian.mld`

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 68]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.149 on the following page.

```
6927 <*serbian>
6928 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6929 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty
6930 %% from serbian.dtx (babel)
6931 %% Muhamedagi\'{c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
6932 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
6933 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
6934 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
6935 %%
6936 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
6937 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
6938 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
6939 %%
6940 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
6941 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
6942 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
6943 </serbian>
```

### 13.149 “Serbian” language: `serbianc.mld`

The titles for the “serbianc” language<sup>43</sup> have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.148 on the page before.

```

6944 <*serbianc>
6945 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
6946 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
6947 %%
6948 %% Marko Èehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
6949 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
6950 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
6951 \def\ptctitle{%
6952 {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
6953 \def\plftitle{%
6954 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
6955 \def\pltttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
6956 %%
6957 \def\mtctitle{%
6958 {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
6959 \def\mlftitle{%
6960 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
6961 \def\mltttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
6962 %%
6963 \def\stctitle{%
6964 {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
6965 \def\slftitle{%
6966 {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
6967 \def\sltttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
6968 </serbianc>

```

### 13.150 “Slovak” language: `slovak.mld`

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the `slovak.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 51]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

6969 <*slovak>
6970 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
6971 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
6972 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
6973 %% Chlebkova, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
6974 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
6975 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
6976 \def\pltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%

```

---

<sup>43</sup>The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

6977 %%
6978 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
6979 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
6980 \def\mltttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
6981 %%
6982 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
6983 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
6984 \def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
6985 </slovak>

```

### 13.151 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The titles for the “slovene” language are taken from the `slovene.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 81]:

```

6986 < *slovene>
6987 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
6988 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty
6989 %% from slovene.dtx (babel)
6990 %% Zavrtnik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
6991 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
6992 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
6993 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
6994 %%
6995 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
6996 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
6997 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
6998 %%
6999 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
7000 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
7001 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
7002 </slovene>

```

### 13.152 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 28]. Note that the “spanish” is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.33 on page 432). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.18 on page 424), “catalan” (section 13.35 on page 432), and “galician” (section 13.64 on page 447). “Spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.153 on the following page). “Spanish3” (see section 13.154 on page 494) is a version for the ANTOMEGA [139] project; some titles are different. “Spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 13.155 on page 494).

```

7003 <*spanish>
7004 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]
7005 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7006 %% from spanish.dtx (babel)
7007 %% Bezos, Javier
7008 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
7009 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
7010 \else
7011 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
7012 \fi
7013 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7014 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7015 %%
7016 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
7017 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7018 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7019 %%
7020 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
7021 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7022 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7023 </spanish>

```

### 13.153 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 28], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.152 on the page before.

```

7024 <*spanish2>
7025 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
7026 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7027 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
7028 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7029 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7030 %%
7031 \def\mtctitle{Contenido}%
7032 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
7033 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
7034 %%
7035 \def\stctitle{Contenido}%
7036 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
7037 \def\slttitle{Tablas}%
7038 </spanish2>

```

### 13.154 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the omega-spanish.ldf file of the ANTOMEGA project [139]. See section 13.152 on page 492.

```

7039 <*spanish3>
7040 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]
7041 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7042 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the ANTOMEGA project.
7043 \def\ptctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
7044 \def\plftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
7045 \def\plttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
7046 %%
7047 \def\mtctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
7048 \def\mlftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
7049 \def\mlttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
7050 %%
7051 \def\stctitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
7052 \def\slftitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
7053 \def\slttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
7054 </spanish3>

```

### 13.155 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the spanish.dtx file from CervanT<sub>E</sub>X [27]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.152 on page 492.

```

7055 <*spanish4>
7056 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
7057 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7058 %% from spanish.dtx (CervanTeX)
7059 %% Bezos, Javier
7060 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
7061 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
7062 \else
7063 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
7064 \fi
7065 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
7066 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
7067 %%
7068 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
7069 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
7070 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
7071 %%
7072 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
7073 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
7074 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%

```

```
7075 </spanish4>
```

### 13.156 “Swedish” language: `swedish.mld`

The titles for the “swedish” language are taken from the `swedish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 56]. See also section 13.157.

```
7076 <*swedish>
7077 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
7078 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty
7079 %% from swedish.dtx (babel)
7080 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
7081 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7082 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
7083 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
7084 %%
7085 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7086 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
7087 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
7088 %%
7089 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7090 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
7091 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
7092 </swedish>
```

### 13.157 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for `swedish`) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file in the `SIATEX` package [167]. See also section 13.156.

```
7093 <*swedish2>
7094 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
7095 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty
7096 %% from rapport.doc (slatex)
7097 %% Mattisson, Sven
7098 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7099 \def\plftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
7100 \def\pltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
7101 %%
7102 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7103 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
7104 \def\mltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
7105 %%
7106 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7107 \def\slftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
7108 \def\slttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%

```

```
7109 </swedish2>
```

### 13.158 “Thai” language: `thai.mld` and `thai.mlo`

The titles for the “thai” language are taken from the `thaicjk.ldf` file and use fonts of the CJK system [156, 157]. The `thailatex` package [207] provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`.

```
7110 <*thai>
7111 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
7112 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
7113 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
7114 %%
7115 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
7116 </thai>
```

### 13.159 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 48]:

```
7117 <*turkish>
7118 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
7119 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
7120 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
7121 %% Burc, Mustafa
7122 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
7123 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
7124 \def\pltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
7125 %%
7126 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
7127 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
7128 \def\mltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
7129 %%
7130 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
7131 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
7132 \def\slttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
7133 </turkish>
```



### 13.160 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld

The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig.mld file (see section 13.19 on page 425):

```
7134 <*uighur>
7135 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
7136 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
7137 </uighur>
```

### 13.161 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld

The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig2.mld file (see section 13.20 on page 425):

```
7138 <*uighur2>
7139 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
7140 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
7141 </uighur2>
```

### 13.162 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld

The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 13.19 on page 425):

```
7142 <*uighur3>
7143 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
7144 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
7145 </uighur3>
```

### 13.163 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld

The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```
7146 <*UKenglish>
7147 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
7148 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7149 </UKenglish>
```

### 13.164 “Ukraineb” language: `ukraineb.mld`

The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load `ukrainian.mld`. See section [13.165](#).

```

7150 (*ukraineb)
7151 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2006/01/23]
7152 %% Ukranian titles for minitoc.sty
7153 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
7154 %% Werner, Eduard
7155 \selectlanguage{ukrainian}%
7156 \end{ukraineb}

```

### 13.165 “Ukrainian” language: `ukrainian.mld`

The titles for the “ukrainian” language are taken from the `ukraineb.dtx` file in the `babel` package [\[35, 36, 76\]](#). Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is `ukraineb` (see section [13.164](#)).

```

7157 (*ukrainian)
7158 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
7159 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
7160 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
7161 %% Shvaika, Andrij
7162 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
7163 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
7164 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7165 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
7166 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7167 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsfts}}%
7168 %%
7169 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
7170 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7171 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
7172 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7173 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsfts}}%
7174 %%
7175 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
7176 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7177 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
7178 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7179 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsfts}}%
7180 \end{ukrainian}

```

### 13.166 “Uppersorbian” language: `uppersorbian.mld`

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language<sup>44</sup> are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 79]. See also section 13.105 on page 469. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.168).

```

7181 (*uppersorbian)
7182 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
7183 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
7184 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
7185 %% Werner, Eduard
7186 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
7187 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
7188 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
7189 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
7190 %%
7191 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
7192 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
7193 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
7194 %%
7195 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%
7196 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
7197 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
7198 \end{uppersorbian}

```

### 13.167 “USenglish” language: `USenglish.mld`

The “USenglish” language “US” is for “United States (of America)” is just like “english”<sup>45</sup>, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 437):

```

7199 (*USenglish)
7200 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
7201 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7202 \end{USenglish}

```

### 13.168 “Usorbian” language: `usorbian.mld`

The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.166.

<sup>44</sup>Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

<sup>45</sup>It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

7203 <*usorbian>
7204 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
7205 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
7206 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
7207 %% Werner, Eduard
7208 \selectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
7209 </usorbian>

```

### 13.169 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the vietnam.sty package. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section [13.170](#).

```

7210 <*vietnam>
7211 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
7212 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
7213 %%
7214 \def\ptctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7215 \def\plftitle{Danh s\’ach h\’inh v\~e}%
7216 \def\plttitle{Danh s\’ach b\h{a}ng}%
7217 %%
7218 \def\mtctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7219 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\’ach h\’inh v\~e}%
7220 \def\mlttitle{Danh s\’ach b\h{a}ng}%
7221 %%
7222 \def\stctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7223 \def\slftitle{Danh s\’ach h\’inh v\~e}%
7224 \def\slttitle{Danh s\’ach b\h{a}ng}%
7225 </vietnam>

```

### 13.170 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section [13.169](#).

```

7226 <*vietnamese>
7227 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
7228 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
7229 </vietnamese>

```

### 13.171 “Welsh” language: `welsh.mld`

The titles for the “welsh” language are taken from the `welsh.dtx` file in the `babel` package [35, 36, 41]:

```

7230 <*welsh>
7231 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
7232 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty
7233 %% from welsh.dtx (babel)
7234 %% Braams, Johannes
7235 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
7236 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7237 \def\plttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7238 %%
7239 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
7240 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7241 \def\mlttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7242 %%
7243 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
7244 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7245 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7246 </welsh>

```

### 13.172 “Xalx” language: `xalx.mld`

The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [93, 96]. Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.99 on page 466, 13.173 on the next page, and 13.174 on the following page.

```

7247 <*xalx>
7248 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
7249 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
7250 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7251 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7252 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7253 %%
7254 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7255 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7256 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7257 %%
7258 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7259 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7260 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7261 </xalx>

```

### 13.173 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [93, 96]. This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.172 on the page before).

```

7262 <*xalx2>
7263 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
7264 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
7265 \def\ptctitle{\mnr Aguulga}%
7266 \def\plftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}%
7267 \def\plttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}%
7268 %%
7269 \def\mtctitle{\mnr Aguulga}%
7270 \def\mlftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}%
7271 \def\mlttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}%
7272 %%
7273 \def\stctitle{\mnr Aguulga}%
7274 \def\slftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}%
7275 \def\slttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}%
7276 </xalx2>

```

### 13.174 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [93, 96]. This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.172 on the preceding page).

```

7277 <*xalx3>
7278 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
7279 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
7280 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7281 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7282 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7283 %%
7284 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7285 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7286 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7287 %%
7288 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7289 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7290 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7291 </xalx3>

```

## **Part III**

# **Complements**

Contents of the Third Part

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| <b>Bibliography</b>    | <b>505</b> |
| <b>Changes History</b> | <b>524</b> |
| <b>Index</b>           | <b>552</b> |



# Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAM, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T<sub>E</sub>X for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 505
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAM, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T<sub>E</sub>X pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUDEMANCHE. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>.
- [3] Alex AJ. *Typesetting Malayalam Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, April 2003. <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 40, 185, 417, 471, 472, 473
- [4] Alex AJ. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω*, January 2006. <mailto:indictex@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/omega/latex/contrib/malayalam-omega/doc/manual-malayalam.pdf>. 40, 185, 417, 472
- [5] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: A<sub>M</sub>S-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/instr-l.pdf>.
- [6] Donald ARSENAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 126, 204, 213
- [7] Donald ARSENAU. *chapterbib.sty*, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 56, 190, 204
- [8] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 47, 207, 222, 241, 266, 269, 272, 364, 392
- [9] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 28, 195, 197, 209, 222, 371, 377, 392
- [10] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T<sub>E</sub>X Using the CJK L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfT<sub>E</sub>X under Windows* [online]. February 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.

- [11] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online]. January 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.
- [12] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 90
- [13] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *bibtopic.sty*, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 56, 189
- [14] David BAUSUM. *T<sub>E</sub>X: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [15]. 506
- [15] David BAUSUM. *T<sub>E</sub>X: Reference and Examples* [online]. January 2006. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [14]. 506
- [16] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/JMPL.ps.gz>. 45
- [17] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online]. November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>.
- [18] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>.
- [19] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online]. July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. 57, 210
- [20] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T<sub>E</sub>X: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>.
- [21] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>.
- [22] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encoding for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>.
- [23] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages

- 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>.
- [24] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 518
- [25] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>.
- [26] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 40, 194, 417, 440, 441
- [27] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, September 2003. <mailto:jbez@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://filemon.mecanica.upm.es/CervanTeX/spanish.dtx>. 494
- [28] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:jbez@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 492, 493
- [29] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T<sub>E</sub>X*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 40, 196, 417, 452
- [30] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 212, 371
- [31] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The N (Aleph)Project*. *TUGboat*, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 208
- [32] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Éducation France, September 2006.
- [33] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 486
- [34] Johannes BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document styles*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 417
- [35] Johannes BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 35, 40, 70, 188, 189, 194, 220, 417, 418, 419, 423, 424, 427, 428, 429, 430, 432, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 443, 444, 445, 447, 448, 449, 458, 460, 461, 462, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 485, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 495, 496, 498, 499, 501
- [36] Johannes BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes (user)*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 35, 40, 70, 188, 189, 194, 220, 417, 418, 419, 423, 424, 427, 428, 429, 430, 432, 434, 435, 436,

437, 438, 439, 443, 444, 445, 447, 448, 449, 458, 460, 461, 462, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 485, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 495, 496, 498, 499, 501

- [37] Johannes BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 418, 436
- [38] Johannes BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 437, 438
- [39] Johannes BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 461
- [40] Johannes BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 476, 477, 478
- [41] Johannes BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 501
- [42] Johannes BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, and Julio SANCHEZ. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 424
- [43] Johannes BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 460
- [44] Johannes BRAAMS and Goncal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 432
- [45] Johannes BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 466, 467
- [46] Johannes BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 470, 471
- [47] Johannes BRAAMS and Georgi BOSHNAKOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 429

- [48] Johannes BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 496
- [49] Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, Chris ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base>.
- [50] Johannes BRAAMS and Manuel CARRIBA. *Galician support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 447
- [51] Johannes BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBIKOVA, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 491
- [52] Johannes BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 462
- [53] Johannes BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 417
- [54] Johannes BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *French support from the babel system*, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 444, 445
- [55] Johannes BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 490
- [56] Johannes BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 495
- [57] Johannes BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 481
- [58] Johannes BRAAMS and Regnor JERNsLETTEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 489

- [59] Johannes BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 443
- [60] Johannes BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 461
- [61] Johannes BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 423
- [62] Johannes BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 423
- [63] Johannes BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 430, 485
- [64] Johannes BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 435
- [65] Johannes BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 458
- [66] Johannes BRAAMS and Milos LOKAJICEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 434
- [67] Johannes BRAAMS, Ruiz-Altava MARTI, and Knappen. JÖRG. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 438
- [68] Johannes BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 490
- [69] Johannes BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 434



- [70] Johannes BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 448
- [71] Johannes BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 475, 476
- [72] Johannes BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm> or [mailto:Jose-Pedro\\_Ramalhete@macmail](mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 427, 480
- [73] Johannes BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 428
- [74] Johannes BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 439
- [75] Johannes BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALUECK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 479
- [76] Johannes BRAAMS and Andriy SHVAIKA. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 498
- [77] Johannes BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 449
- [78] Johannes BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/lrsorbian.dtx>. 469
- [79] Johannes BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 499
- [80] Johannes BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/albaban.dtx>. 419

- [81] Johannes BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 492
- [82] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/jura/>. 187, 197, 369
- [83] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The  $\epsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X manual*. The  $\mathcal{N}$ -S Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex\\_man.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf). 192
- [84] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006.
- [85] David CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/xr.dtx>. 25, 213, 278
- [86] David CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 214
- [87] David CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 108
- [88] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts in PdfL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online]. September 2005. Available from: <http://ipe.comp.geom.org/pdftex.html>. <mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr>.
- [89] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (teL<sub>E</sub>X) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online]. December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>. <mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>.
- [90] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/subfigure.pdf>. 30, 128, 204, 211
- [91] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 49, 72, 189, 225, 243
- [92] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 30, 134, 189, 204, 211, 356
- [93] Oliver CORFF. *MonT<sub>E</sub>X – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 40, 185, 201, 417, 425, 426, 427, 430, 431, 474, 486, 501, 502



- [94] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online]. April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch.Pentaglot.html>. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 202
- [95] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online]. July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 201
- [96] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *MonTeX – Mongolian for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 40, 185, 201, 417, 425, 426, 427, 430, 431, 474, 486, 501, 502
- [97] Serguei DACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vardan VAKOPIAN. *ArmTeX: a System for Writing in Armenian with T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* (written in armenian), June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 40, 188, 417, 421
- [98] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003.
- [99] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx>. 18, 90, 211
- [100] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, September 2006. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 90, 396
- [101] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, September 2006. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 89, 396
- [102] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>.
- [103] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiTeX and the Iranian T<sub>E</sub>X Community*. *TUGboat*, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>.
- [104] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>.
- [105] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T<sub>E</sub>X FAQ. Your 396 Questions Answered*, November 2005. Version 3.15a. Available from: <ftp://cam.ctan.org/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>.
- [106] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516, November 1990.
- [107] Chuck GENSCHE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 209

- [108] Helen GILHOLLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. Langues orientales. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. Translation and adaptation to french by Cécile DESPRAIRIES.
- [109] Michel GOOSSENS and Sebastian RAHTZ. *The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Web Companion: Integrating  $\text{\TeX}$ , HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, May 1999. With Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE and Robert S. SUTOR.
- [110] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, June 2005. <http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 194, 196, 225, 545
- [111] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph 8*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 208
- [112] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from: <http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>.
- [113] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 56, 189, 204
- [114] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004. <mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 56, 204
- [115] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 199, 548
- [116] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, April 2004. 453, 455, 457
- [117] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of  $\Omega$ : Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc.* TUGboat, 15(3):344–352, 1994.
- [118] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE.  *$\Omega$ , a  $\text{\TeX}$  extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes*. In Wlodek BZYL and PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European  $\text{\TeX}$  Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdnask, Poland, 1994. GUST. 514
- [119] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. MAPS, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24\\_7.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf).
- [120] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL.  *$\Omega$ , une extension de  $\text{\TeX}$  incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex*. Cahiers GUTenberg, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [118].
- [121] Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 487

- [122] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 49, 68, 199, 244
- [123] Alan HOENIG. *T<sub>E</sub>X Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X & T<sub>E</sub>X Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More.
- [124] Hiroya IKEDA. *p<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, September 2001. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 209
- [125] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic anf Farsi with the Arabi package. The Users Guide*, February 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user\\_guide.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user_guide.pdf). 35, 40, 188, 420, 442
- [126] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2<sub>ε</sub>*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>.
- [127] Zhuhan JIANG. *The vruler package*, October 1996. <mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>.
- [128] David M. JONES. *hangcaption.sty*, August 1992. <mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 196
- [129] Ki-Joo KIM. *A Bib<sub>T</sub><sub>E</sub>X Guide bia Examples*, April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: [http://www.geocities.com/bibtex\\_guide.pdf](http://www.geocities.com/bibtex_guide.pdf).
- [130] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.geocities.com/latex2pdf.pdf>.
- [131] Ki-Joo KIM.  *$\text{\LaTeX}$  Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: [http://www.geocities.com/latex\\_fonts.pdf](http://www.geocities.com/latex_fonts.pdf).
- [132] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 33, 192
- [133] Donald E. KNUTH. *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover T<sub>E</sub>X3, 1991. 190, 198, 212, 213, 515
- [134] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 192
- [135] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T<sub>E</sub>Xbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [133], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 198
- [136] Un KOAUNGH. *H<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X: a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package for the Korean language support*, April 2005. Written in korean. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 185, 196, 417, 455, 457

- [137] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, 2004. 208
- [138] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. *MAPS*, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22\\_13.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf).
- [139] Alexej M. KRYUKOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/omega/contrib/antomega/doc/omega/antomega/antomega.pdf>. 40, 188, 417, 449, 450, 451, 467, 479, 483, 484, 492, 494
- [140] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online]. June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>.
- [141] Frank KÜSTER. *a<sub>l</sub>numsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. [frank@kuesterei.ch](mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch), Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/>. 49, 71, 187, 225, 243
- [142] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de T<sub>E</sub>X et L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Masson, Paris, 1995.
- [143] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT<sub>E</sub>X—Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European T<sub>E</sub>X Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. CsTUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20\\_22.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf). 35, 40, 188, 417, 419, 420, 457
- [144] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT<sub>E</sub>X Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 35, 40, 188, 417, 419, 420, 457
- [145] Leslie LAMPORT. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: A Document Preparation System — User’s Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, 1994. 53, 198
- [146] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version 2<sub>ε</sub>*, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 185
- [147] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In M. BURBANK and C. THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG’96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>.
- [148] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 28
- [149] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 35, 430, 485
- [150] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>.

- [151] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 28, 209, 392
- [152] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> for authors*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 185
- [153] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 185
- [154] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> font selection*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 185, 204, 261, 339, 342
- [155] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 194, 205
- [156] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> — Multilingual support beyond babel*. TUGboat, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 35, 40, 191, 211, 212, 417, 433, 453, 454, 455, 456, 463, 464, 465, 496
- [157] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online]. August 2005. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 35, 40, 191, 211, 212, 417, 433, 453, 454, 455, 456, 463, 464, 465, 496
- [158] Knut LICKERT. *ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> for people in associations: minutes.sty*, January 2001. <mailto:knut@lickert.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/>. 201, 262, 363
- [159] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap V1.33*, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 49, 71, 196, 225, 242
- [160] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001. <mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.dtx>. 28
- [161] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997. <mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 49, 71, 211, 225, 243
- [162] Tim LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with ℒ<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>* [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>.
- [163] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 185, 192, 517
- [164] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”*, 1996. See [163]. Available from: <ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 185, 192
- [165] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999.
- [166] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeAST (The B to X of Bib<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>)*, June 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb\\_en.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf). 185, 189

- [167] Sven MATTISSON. *SE<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>: Swedish speaking version of E<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>* [online]. November 1989. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>. 40, 211, 495
- [168] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002. <mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 49, 66, 121, 211, 224, 242
- [169] Frank MITTELBACH. *ε-T<sub>E</sub>X: Guidelines for future T<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>.
- [170] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts”* [24]. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>.
- [171] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000. <mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 83, 108
- [172] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>.
- [173] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>.
- [174] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris ROWLEY. *The E<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> Companion 2. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, 2004. 28, 133, 185, 199, 204, 209, 392
- [175] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris ROWLEY. *Der E<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version.
- [176] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris ROWLEY. *E<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> Companion*. Pearson Éducation France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 539
- [177] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>.
- [178] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002. <mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>.
- [179] Sergei O. NAOUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 487



- [180] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *The KOMA-Script Bundle*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scruien.pdf>. 38, 46, 58, 70, 147, 185, 189, 197, 224, 225, 370
- [181] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfTeX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroTeX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>.
- [182] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, Special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [183] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 185
- [183] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, May 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 185, 192, 198, 519
- [184] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> po polsku czyli P<sup>A</sup>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (wersja 1.3.1)*, May 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/platex/polski.dtx>. 40, 209, 480
- [185] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T<sub>E</sub>X/L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X systems* [online]. January 2001. Available from: <http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. 40, 189, 417, 424
- [186] Anshuman PANDEY. *Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/deneric/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 40, 194, 196, 417, 435, 459
- [187] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, Paris, September 2003. 453, 455, 457
- [188] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibT<sub>E</sub>Xing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT<sub>E</sub>X users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 189
- [189] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibT<sub>E</sub>X Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibT<sub>E</sub>X's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 189
- [190] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [192].
- [191] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [192].
- [192] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online]. March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 519

- [193] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In M. BURBANK and C. THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>.
- [194] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in  $\Omega$* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: <http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega9papers/latest-omega96.pdf>.
- [195] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in  $\Omega$* . In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998.
- [196] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online]. August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 58, 68, 197, 200, 214, 222, 241, 374
- [197] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ : a manual for hyperref*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 109
- [198] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem  $\text{\LaTeX}$  und DANTE*, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung  $\text{\LaTeX}$  e.V., September 2003. Version 72. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>.
- [199] Adrian REZUŞ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , October 1996. <mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 481, 482
- [200] Chris ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-3/tb64rowl.pdf>.
- [201] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdA4.pdf>. 33
- [202] Pakin. SCOTT. *How to Package Your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Package*, November 2004. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/dtxtut/dtxtut.pdf>.
- [203] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption2 package*, November 2005. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 49, 68, 190, 244
- [204] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption package*, January 2006. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 49, 68, 190, 244
- [205] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, January 2006. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/anleitung.pdf>.
- [206] D. P. STORY. *Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online]. November 1999. Available from: <http://www.math.uakron/~dpstory/latex2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>.



- [207] Meknavin SURAPANT, Karoonboonyanan THEPPITAK, Silpa-Anan CHANOP, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. <mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/thailatex/>. 212, 496
- [208] Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 49, 68, 213, 224, 242
- [209] Thế Hàn THÀNH. *The pdfTeX Program*. In *EuroTeX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>.
- [210] Thế Hàn THÀNH. *Micro-typographic extensions to the TeX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>.
- [211] Thế Hàn THÀNH, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, and Paweł JACKOWSKI. *The pdfTeX user manual*, February 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/pdftex/manual/pdftex-a.pdf>.
- [212] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. [tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de](mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/>. 49, 71, 210, 225, 242
- [213] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>.
- [214] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>.
- [215] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 108
- [216] *The Unicode Standard* [online]. February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>.
- [217] Thomas van OUDENHOVE. *Bibliographie avec BibTeX*, 2003. Available from: [http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres\\_Bibtex.tar.gz](http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz).
- [218] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting. 453
- [219] André VIOLANTE. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: Notions de base*. Dunod, February 2006.
- [220] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977.

- [221] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 185
- [222] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T<sub>E</sub>X in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T<sub>E</sub>X*. TUGboat, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>.
- [223] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T<sub>E</sub>X in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
  - 1. Basics.
  - 2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
  - 3. Tokens, Macros.
  - 4. Output Routines.

(Une approche progressive des secrets de T<sub>E</sub>X). 245
- [224] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X i pdfP<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2005. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.gust.org.pl/doc/poczatki/platex.html>. 40, 209, 480
- [225] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 210, 211
- [226] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 53, 204
- [227] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 40, 60, 67, 108, 121, 203, 212, 371
- [228] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 49, 66, 187, 223, 373
- [229] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 59, 188, 223, 370
- [230] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 46, 85, 90, 94, 95, 132, 202, 204, 212, 222, 370
- [231] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>.
- [232] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 49, 68, 190, 244
- [233] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>.

- [234] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 61, 68, 199, 222, 224, 245, 254, 373
- [235] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 61, 68, 199, 222, 224, 245, 254, 373
- [236] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>. 49, 71, 210, 225, 243
- [237] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The iftmarg package*, March 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 197, 245
- [238] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Cheat Sheet*, August 2006. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: <http://www.dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>.
- [239] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online]. December 1998. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/supported/lhcyrr/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>. 488, 489

# Changes History

## ★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
  - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
  - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (Dan JURAFSKY).

## ★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
  - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
  - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
  - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
  - All the layout of the minitoc is in the `\minitableofcontents` command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
  - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyes` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
  - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
  - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
  - At least three passes (3) of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
  - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).

- Some mods added to work with `xr.sty` (external references). `xr.sty` version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ **version 02**

- 1993/07/05
  - Added compatibility with `hangcaption.sty` (the package `hangcaption` (if present) must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package). *Beware* to options modifying `\@caption`.

※ **version 03**

- 1993/07/09
  - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ **version 04**

- 1993/07/09
  - Added `\if@realch` to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
  - The package file `mtcoeff.sty` allows you to use a  $\LaTeX$  document with `minitoc` commands and to make them transparent: just replace the `minitoc` option by `mtcoeff`.

★ **version 05**

- 1993/07/13
  - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ **version 06**

- 1993/07/15
  - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete `\caption` stuff (filters are better) added compatibility with `toch.sty` (`toch.sty` makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* `minitoc.sty`).

★ **version 07**

- 1993/07/22
  - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from `xr.sty` (the version 5, by David CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the `.toc` file. `\chapterend` and `\minitocno` are suppressed, `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc` and `\faketableofcontents` added.

★ **version 08**

- 1993/07/29
  - Spacing adjustments.

★ **version 09**

- 1993/08/04

- Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

#### ★ version 10

- 1993/08/05
  - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

#### ★ version 11

- 1993/08/18
  - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

#### ★ version 12

- 1993/12/16
  - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
  - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
  - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

#### ★ version 13

- 1993/12/17
  - Added `minilof` and `minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

#### ★ version 14

- 1994/01/03
  - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
  - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
  - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
  - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
  - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

#### ★ version 15

- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- ★ **version 16**
  - 1994/02/02
    - Bug fixes (typos).
- ★ **version 17**
  - 1994/06/23
    - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
    - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).
- ★ **version 18**
  - 1994/06/26
    - Make `\minitoc` really compatible with  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ .
    - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes BRAAMS).
- ★ **version 19**
  - 1994/08/16
    - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
    - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
    - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
    - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michel RYNNING).
    - Corrected appendix in articles.
- ★ **version 20**
  - 1994/08/25
    - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
    - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.
    - Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
    - Corrected vertical spacing.
    - Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.
- ★ **version 21**
  - 1994/09/07

- Corrected typos in `minitoc.sty` and `minitoc.tex`.

★ **version 22**

- 1994/10/10
  - Corrected typos in `minitoc.sty`.

★ **version 23**

- 1994/11/08
  - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
  - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis ROEGEL).
  - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
  - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
  - Removed appendix stuff.

★ **version 24**

- 1994/12/21
  - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis ROEGEL who did the work.

★ **version 25**

- 1996/09/13
  - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

★ **version 26**

- 1996/11/14
  - Language specific files are now named `<language>.mld` (replacing `mtc<language>.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
  - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

★ **version 27**

- 1996/12/20
  - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
  - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
  - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
  - Renamed `minitocoff.sty` into `mtcoff.sty` to keep the name short.

★ **version 28**

- 1997/10/29



- Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
  - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
  - Added the shorttext package option.
  - Added *coffee* stuff.
  - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
  - Fixed bug in parttocs.
- 1998/06/15
  - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU: `{\let@dottedtocline@undottedtocline}{}` should probably be `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}` (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
  - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
  - Added the tight and loose package options.
- ★ version 29
  - 1999/03/16
    - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
  - 1999/06/28
    - Added the armenian language (from ArmT<sub>E</sub>X).
  - 1999/07/23
    - Added the dotted/undotted package options (default: dotted).
  - 1999/07/29
    - Added the lithuanian language.
- ★ version 30
  - 1999/12/06
    - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
    - Corrected a bug in `\sltname` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).
- ★ version 31
  - 2000/04/04
    - Added compatibility with the hyperref package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.
- ★ version 32
  - 2000/08/08
    - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
    - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
    - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

**★ version 33**

- 2000/12/07
  - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
  - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

**★ version 34**

- 2000/12/13
  - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `toctibind` package.
  - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

**★ version 35**

- 2001/01/09
  - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. von BECHTOLSHEIM.
  - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
  - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
  - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
  - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
  - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
  - Added the `interlingua` language.

**★ version 36**

- 2002/02/11
  - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
  - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
  - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19

- Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
  - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
  - Added the bangla language.
- 2002/03/15
  - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.
- ※ **version 37**
- 2003/01/24
  - Version #37 dropped.
- ★ **version 38**
- 2003/01/24
  - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
  - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X).
  - Added `mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
  - Added the frenchb language (synonym of french).
- 2003/01/30
  - Changed the test for empty titles.
  - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
  - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
  - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
  - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
  - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` languages (synonyms of french).
  - Corrected `secttocs`, at least.
- 2003/03/18
  - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.
- ★ **version 39**
- 2003/04/09
  - Modern font commands for compatibility with the `memoir` class.
  - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and `memoir` class.
- 2003/06/08

- Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the `notoccite` package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the `notoccite` package option (loads the `notoccite` package).
- 2004/09/08
  - Added language options and `.mld` files for dialects: canadian (english), acadian, acadien, canadien (french), naustrian, ngerman (ngermanb).
  - Added comments in `.mld` files using special fonts.
  - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
  - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

#### ★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
  - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
  - Removed the test on the presence of the `multicol` package in `minitoc.tex`, because `multicol` is a required package.
  - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
  - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
  - Added a paragraph about a problem with the `appendix` package.
- 2004/12/13
  - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
  - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
  - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

#### ★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
  - Corrections in documentation.
  - Message added if some sectionning commands are not available.
  - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc.sty` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
  - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
  - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11

- $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes: `amsart` and `amspoc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
  - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`.
  - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
  - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
  - Added a hint about coherence of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
  - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
  - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
  - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
  - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
  - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
  - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03
  - Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
  - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
  - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
  - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
  - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
  - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ **version 42**

- 2005/02/14
  - Version 42 not released.
  - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
  - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
  - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ **version 43**

- 2005/02/21
  - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
  - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
  - Fixed a bug in `mtccoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
  - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
  - Moved history to the end of package code.
  - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
  - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
  - Completed the hint about coherence of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
- 2005/03/08
  - Added a hint about coherence of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
  - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
  - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
  - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
  - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
  - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
  - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.

- 2005/03/18
  - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
  - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
  - Added a hint for the `abstract` package.
- 2005/04/07
  - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
  - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
  - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
  - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
  - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
  - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
  - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
  - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left.  
Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats.sty` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
  - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26
  - Fixed rules in `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`.
- 2005/05/30
  - Fixed chapter-level entries in `parttocs`, when page numbers must be removed.
  - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
  - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
  - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
  - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
  - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
  - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
  - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
  - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06

- Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
  - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
  - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
  - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
  - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
  - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
  - Added “OUI”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
  - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
  - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
  - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29
  - Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff.sty` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
  - Added `castillian.mld`.
  - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
  - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
  - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
  - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
  - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
  - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21



- Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
  - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
  - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff.sty`.
  - Improved some messages in `mtcoff.sty`.
  - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
  - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
  - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitoc`s. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
  - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending of the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
  - The `memoir` class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
  - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
  - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
  - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
  - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.
  - Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
  - Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
  - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
  - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
  - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
  - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
  - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
  - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
  - Added a note about the `rubber` script.
- 2005/09/15

- Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.

- 2005/09/16
  - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
  - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
  - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
  - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
  - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
  - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
  - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
  - Corrected typos.
  - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
  - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
  - Load the patch for `memoir.cls` only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir.cls` is dated after 2005/09/25.
  - Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectionning commands.
- 2005/10/04
  - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
  - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02

- Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
  - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
  - Added the french L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion [176].
- 2005/11/09
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
  - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
  - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
- 2005/11/16
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
  - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23

- Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Reordering a long sequence of citations.
  - Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
  - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
  - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
  - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
  - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.

- 2005/12/08
  - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
  - Corrections of french quotes.
  - Added some PDF options.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected an URL to the  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$  in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
  - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
  - Correction of typos.
  - Added some labels.
  - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
  - The documentation needs 4  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs.
- 2005/12/22
  - Made some messages shorter.
  - Corrections in the list of messages.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
  - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
  - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04
  - Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
  - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
  - Added “\*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected the bibliography entry about `BangTeX`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Used the `afterpage` package in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10

- Corrections in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the bahasam language.
  - Added the albanian language.
  - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
  - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
  - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
  - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
  - Renamed the bahasa language as bahasai; bahasa is synonym of bahasai.
  - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of bahasam.
  - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of bahasai.
- 2006/01/12
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgements.
  - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
  - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
  - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
  - Added `magyar3.mld`.
  - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.
- 2006/01/16
  - Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
  - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
  - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
  - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
  - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23

- Corrected the table about default titles.
  - Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
  - Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
  - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
  - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes, and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
  - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
  - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
  - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02
  - Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added `dblacnt.sty` for the “The pdf<sub>TEX</sub> Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Hàn Thê THÀNH).
- 2006/02/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13

- Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
  - Added `kannada.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
  - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
  - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowlegments.
- 2006/02/17
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
  - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
  - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja.mld` into `hangul-u8` and `hanja-u8`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
  - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
  - Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
  - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `polски.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
  - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.



- 2006/03/02
  - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [110].
- 2006/03/06
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
  - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
  - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
  - Added `mtcmess.sty`.
- 2006/03/16
  - The messages are now numbered.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
  - Added FAQ 37 about `.mld` files and `babel`.
  - Added `french1.mld` and `french2.mld`.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
  - Added `english1.mld` and `english2.mld`.

**★ version 45**

- 2006/03/31
  - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.

- Added `arab2.mld`, `bicig3.mld`, `buryat2.mld`, `xalx2.mld`, and `xalx3.mld`.
- 2006/04/03
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
  - Added `swedish2.mld`.
  - The `insection` package option loads also the `flafter` package.
- 2006/04/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the Lamed logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
  - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
  - Use `sectsty.sty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13
  - In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
  - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
  - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - Added comments about the `insection` option.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
  - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
  - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03

- Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
  - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
  - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
  - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
  - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05

- Corrections in the documentation.
    - Update the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/06
    - Corrections in the documentation.
    - Update the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/08
    - Corrections in the documentation.
    - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.
- ★ **version 46**
- 2006/06/09
    - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/21
    - Update the bibliography.
    - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
  - 2006/06/22
    - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
    - Added chapter “Example files”.
  - 2006/06/23
    - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
    - Use the `lipsum` package [115] in some of the examples of documents.
    - Update the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/27
    - Update the examples of documents.
    - Added the `second.tex` example file.
  - 2006/06/29
    - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
  - 2006/06/30
    - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
  - 2006/07/03
    - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
    - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
  - 2006/07/04
    - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
    - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - 2006/07/07
    - Corrections of typos.
    - Corrections in the bibliography.
    - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
    - Correction in `french2.mld`.

- 2006/07/10
  - Correction in minilots and minilofs (and siblings) about depth.
  - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
  - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
  - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
  - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
  - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
  - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
  - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc1` in the list of files.
  - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/username/OLD`.
  - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/username/CL[0-9]`.

**★ version 47**

- 2006/07/26
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
  - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the **Ayabi** system).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
  - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
  - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
  - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.

- Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
  - Minor correction in warning message F0008.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).

★ **version 48**

- 2006/08/04
  - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
  - Update the bibliography.
  - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
  - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
  - Increasing `\textwidth`.
  - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
  - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
  - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
  - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).
- 2006/08/28
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
  - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
  - Update the bibliography.
  - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
  - Update the bibliography.

- Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
  - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
  - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
  - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
  - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
  - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
  - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
  - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
  - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
  - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
  - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
  - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
  - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
  - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
  - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
  - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
  - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
  - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
  - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.
  - Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
  - Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
  - Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
  - Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
  - Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsfc.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
  - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
  - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
  - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
  - Added a figure about systems derived from  $\text{\TeX}$  and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .
- 2006/09/13
  - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

# Index

## Symbols

|                        |                                                        |                             |                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| .lof                   | 249                                                    | \@doparttoc                 | 1570, 1636                                                                                                                 |
| .log                   | 235                                                    | \@doparttoc@used@false      | 90                                                                                                                         |
| .lot                   | 249                                                    | \@doparttoc@used@true       | 1594                                                                                                                       |
| .maf@.maf              | 48, 365, 392                                           | \@dosectlof                 | 2187, 2250                                                                                                                 |
| .mld                   | 34, 40, 65, 215, 413, 416, 417                         | \@dosectlof@used@false      | 103                                                                                                                        |
| .mlo                   | 40, 215, 362, 413, 417                                 | \@dosectlof@used@true       | 2224                                                                                                                       |
| .toc                   | 249                                                    | \@dosectlot                 | 2191, 2251                                                                                                                 |
| \@@dominilof           | 912, 946                                               | \@dosectlot@used@false      | 104                                                                                                                        |
| \@@dominilot           | 929, 946                                               | \@dosectlot@used@true       | 2241                                                                                                                       |
| \@@dominitoc           | 880, 895, 946                                          | \@dosecttoc                 | 2183, 2249                                                                                                                 |
| \@@dopartlof           | 1618, 1636                                             | \@dosecttoc@used@false      | 102                                                                                                                        |
| \@@dopartlot           | 1635, 1636                                             | \@dosecttoc@used@true       | 2207                                                                                                                       |
| \@@doparttoc           | 1601, 1636                                             | \@dotsep                    | 2825, 2838, 2843, 2848, 2853, 2858, 2863, 2868, 2873, 2878                                                                 |
| \@dosectlof            | 2231, 2249                                             | \@dottedtocline             | 647, 720, 788, 803, 849, 861, 864, 867, 872, 875, 878, 1384, 1461, 1536, 1552, 1972, 2042, 2109, 2123                      |
| \@dosectlot            | 2248, 2249                                             | \@dottedxxxline             | 2140                                                                                                                       |
| \@dosecttoc            | 2214, 2249                                             | \@ensure@R                  | 5982, 5985, 5988, 5992, 5995, 5998, 6002, 6005, 6008                                                                       |
| \@M                    | 373, 803, 826, 839, 1328, 1338, 1552, 2123, 2124, 2156 | \@fileswf                   | 651, 724, 792, 1391, 1465, 1540, 1977, 2046, 2114                                                                          |
| \@Undottedtocline      | 821, 3374, 4663                                        | \@firstchapteris@used@false | 106                                                                                                                        |
| \@Undottedtoclinep     | 834, 849, 861, 864, 867, 872, 875, 878, 4663           | \@firstchapteris@used@true  | 546                                                                                                                        |
| \@addtoreset           | 799, 1054                                              | \@firstoftwo                | 205                                                                                                                        |
| \@afterheading         | 1270, 1284, 1298, 4745, 4753                           | \@firstpartis@used@false    | 105                                                                                                                        |
| \@afterindenttrue      | 372, 825, 838                                          | \@firstpartis@used@true     | 1219                                                                                                                       |
| \@centercr             | 586, 1319, 1911                                        | \@firstsectionis@used@false | 107                                                                                                                        |
| \@chapter              | 1, 309, 805, 3759, 4356, 4719, 4721                    | \@firstsectionis@used@true  | 1882                                                                                                                       |
| \@dominilof            | 885, 947                                               | \@gobble                    | 4545, 4548, 4549, 4663                                                                                                     |
| \@dominilof@used@false | 97                                                     | \@gobbletwo                 | 4485, 4530                                                                                                                 |
| \@dominilof@used@true  | 921                                                    | \@hangfrom                  | 2146                                                                                                                       |
| \@dominilot            | 890, 948                                               | \@ifclasslater              | 197                                                                                                                        |
| \@dominilot@used@false | 98                                                     | \@ifclassloaded             | 176, 3614, 3702, 3709, 3719, 3737                                                                                          |
| \@dominilot@used@true  | 938                                                    | \@ifnextchar                | 597, 667, 735, 884, 889, 894, 1330, 1403, 1477, 1582–1584, 1922, 1988, 2055, 2195–2197, 2467, 4466, 4472, 4478, 4484, 4719 |
| \@dominitoc            | 880, 946                                               | \@ifpackagelater            | 3692                                                                                                                       |
| \@dominitoc@used@false | 96                                                     |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dominitoc@used@true  | 904                                                    |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlof            | 1574, 1637                                             |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlof@used@false | 91                                                     |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlof@used@true  | 1611                                                   |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlot            | 1578, 1638                                             |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlot@used@false | 92                                                     |                             |                                                                                                                            |
| \@dopartlot@used@true  | 1628                                                   |                             |                                                                                                                            |



- \@ifpackageloaded ..... 135, 152,  
154, 156, 158, 160, 162, 164, 166,  
168, 170, 172, 174, 3597, 3602, 3608,  
3632, 3638, 3643, 3726, 4294
- \@ifpackagewith ..... 3643, 3726
- \@ifundefined .. 17, 2467, 2932, 3001, 3260,  
3300, 3378, 3394, 3742, 3759, 3776,  
4353, 4356, 4359, 4383
- \@input ..... 1036, 1102, 1161, 3340, 3353
- \@inputcheck ... 227, 358, 1022, 1032, 1052,  
1089, 1098, 1115, 1148, 1157, 1174,  
1719, 1720, 1729, 1748, 1780, 1781,  
1790, 1808, 1840, 1841, 1850, 1868,  
2319, 2320, 2329, 2345, 2378, 2379,  
2388, 2404, 2437, 2438, 2447, 2463
- \@longextensions@false ... 334, 339, 3391
- \@longextensions@true ..... 336, 4613
- \@m@mchapter ..... 4717
- \@makechapterhead . 1325, 4744, 4749, 4751
- \@makephead@c ..... 1298
- \@makephead@l ..... 1270
- \@makephead@r ..... 1284
- \@makeschapterhead ..... 1335
- \@minilof@used@false ..... 94
- \@minilof@used@true ..... 669
- \@minilot@used@false ..... 95
- \@minilot@used@true ..... 737
- \@minitoc@used@false ..... 93
- \@minitoc@used@true ..... 599
- \@mkboth ..... 517, 1345, 1418, 1493
- \@mtc@FEfalse ..... 238, 251
- \@mtc@FEtrue ..... 228, 242, 249
- \@mtc@Himlof@false ..... 3194, 3225
- \@mtc@Himlof@true ..... 3201, 3219
- \@mtc@Himlot@false ..... 3227, 3242, 3258
- \@mtc@Himlot@true ..... 3234, 3252
- \@mtc@Hintoc@false ..... 3179, 3192, 3209
- \@mtc@Hintoc@true ..... 3186
- \@mtc@LIfalse ..... 232, 236, 238
- \@mtc@LItrue ..... 227, 242
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false ..... 3589
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@true ..... 3727
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false ..... 63
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true ..... 165
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false ..... 62
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true ..... 164
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false ..... 65
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true ..... 167
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false ..... 64
- \@mtc@captcontLoaded@true ..... 166
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false ..... 47
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true ..... 171
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false ..... 46
- \@mtc@captionIILoaded@true ..... 170
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false ..... 45
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true ..... 169
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@false ..... 44
- \@mtc@captionLoaded@true ..... 168
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false ..... 49
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true ..... 173
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false ..... 48
- \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true ..... 172
- \@mtc@chapter@def@false ..... 77, 78
- \@mtc@chapter@def@true ..... 78
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@false ..... 84
- \@mtc@chapter@undef@true ..... 83, 84
- \@mtc@checkfilesfalse ..... 3387
- \@mtc@checkfilestrue ..... 229, 3386
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@false ..... 70
- \@mtc@empty@minilof@true ..... 679
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@false ..... 71
- \@mtc@empty@minilot@true ..... 747
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false ..... 69
- \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true ..... 609
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@false ..... 67
- \@mtc@empty@partlof@true ... 1415, 1490
- \@mtc@empty@partlot@false ..... 68
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false ..... 66
- \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true ..... 1342
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false ..... 73
- \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true ..... 2000
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false ..... 74
- \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true ..... 2067
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false ..... 72
- \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true ..... 1934
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false ..... 55
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true ..... 157
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false ..... 54
- \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true ..... 156
- \@mtc@hints@false ..... 3588
- \@mtc@hints@given@false ..... 37
- \@mtc@hints@given@true ..... 895, 912,  
929, 1585, 1602, 1619, 2198, 2215,  
2232, 2487, 3598, 3603, 3609, 3615,  
3621, 3627, 3633, 3639, 3646, 3662,  
3677, 3693, 3703, 3710, 3715, 3720,  
3729, 3738, 3749, 3766, 3784, 3832,  
3841, 3849, 3857, 3867, 3875, 3883,  
3893, 3901, 3918, 3926, 3934, 3944,  
3952, 3960, 3970, 3978, 3997, 4006,  
4015, 4026, 4035, 4044, 4055, 4064,  
4073, 4082, 4090, 4098, 4112, 4120,  
4128, 4136, 4144, 4152, 4160, 4168,  
4176, 4184, 4192, 4200, 4206, 4211,  
4216, 4221, 4226, 4231, 4236, 4241,  
4246, 4251, 4256, 4261
- \@mtc@hints@true ..... 35, 3587
- \@mtc@hints@w@false . 36, 3742, 3759, 3776

- \@mtc@hints@w@true 3744, 3746, 3748, 3761, 3763, 3765, 3779, 3781, 3783, 3832
- \@mtc@hyper@used@false ..... 136
- \@mtc@hyper@used@true ..... 139
- \@mtc@insellang@false ..... 3340, 3371
- \@mtc@listfiles@false ..... 3413
- \@mtc@listfiles@true ..... 3411, 3412
- \@mtc@lof@used@false ..... 3591, 3796
- \@mtc@lof@used@true ..... 3803, 3812
- \@mtc@lot@used@false ..... 3592, 3797
- \@mtc@lot@used@true ..... 3806, 3815
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false ..... 51
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true ..... 175
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false ..... 50
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true ..... 174
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false ..... 40, 181
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@true ..... 177
- \@mtc@memoirnew@false ..... 41, 184
- \@mtc@memoirnew@true ..... 186
- \@mtc@notoccite@false ..... 130
- \@mtc@notoccite@true ..... 3390
- \@mtc@part@def@false ..... 75, 76
- \@mtc@part@def@true ..... 76
- \@mtc@part@undef@false ..... 82
- \@mtc@part@undef@true ..... 81, 82
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false ... 39, 4298
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true ..... 4298
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false ..... 57
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true ..... 159
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false ..... 56
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true ..... 158
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false ..... 59
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true ..... 161
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false ..... 58
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@true ..... 160
- \@mtc@sect@floats@false ..... 38
- \@mtc@sect@floats@true ..... 3819–3822
- \@mtc@section@def@false ..... 79, 80
- \@mtc@section@def@true ..... 80
- \@mtc@section@undef@false ..... 86
- \@mtc@section@undef@true ..... 85, 86
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false ..... 43
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true ..... 153
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false ..... 42
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true ..... 152
- \@mtc@setdepth@false ..... 3146
- \@mtc@setdepth@true ..... 3141, 3144
- \@mtc@setfeature@false ..... 3094, 3110
- \@mtc@setfeature@true ..... 3088, 3092
- \@mtc@setfont@false ..... 2600, 2617, 2655–2658, 2661, 2662, 2665, 2666, 2669–2674, 2677–2680, 2683–2686, 2689–2695, 2698–2702, 2705–2709
- \@mtc@setfont@true ..... 2595, 2598, 2653
- \@mtc@setformat@false ..... 2886, 2902
- \@mtc@setformat@true ..... 2880, 2884
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false . 2930, 2955, 2975
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true ..... 2952
- \@mtc@setrules@false .... 2999, 3024, 3045
- \@mtc@setrules@true ..... 3021
- \@mtc@settitle@false ..... 2767
- \@mtc@settitle@true ..... 2762, 2765
- \@mtc@settitlefont@false ..... 2731
- \@mtc@settitlefont@true ..... 2726, 2729
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false ..... 61
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true ..... 163
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false ..... 60
- \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true ..... 162
- \@mtc@spn@ok@false ..... 2972
- \@mtc@spn@ok@true ..... 2970
- \@mtc@sru@ok@false ..... 3042
- \@mtc@sru@ok@true ..... 3040
- \@mtc@ss@insection@false ..... 3394
- \@mtc@ss@insection@true ..... 3408
- \@mtc@toc@used@false ..... 3590, 3795
- \@mtc@toc@used@true ..... 3800, 3809
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false ..... 53
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true ..... 155
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false ..... 52
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true ..... 154
- \@mtcfixglossary@false ..... 3278, 3280
- \@mtcfixglossary@true ... 3282, 3284, 3286
- \@mtcfixindex@false ..... 3318, 3320
- \@mtcfixindex@true ..... 3322, 3324, 3326
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false ..... 176
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true ..... 193
- \@namedef ... 2532, 2541, 2550, 2584, 2798
- \@nameuse ..... 2532, 2597, 2615, 2728, 2764, 2899, 2901, 2968, 2985, 3020, 3055, 3107, 3109, 3143
- \@nobreakfalse ... 510, 656, 729, 797, 1396, 1470, 1545, 1982, 2049, 2117
- \@part ..... 1, 264, 1557, 3742, 4353
- \@partlof@used@false ..... 88
- \@partlof@used@true ..... 1405
- \@partlot@used@false ..... 89
- \@partlot@used@true ..... 1480
- \@parttoc@used@false ..... 87
- \@parttoc@used@true ..... 1332
- \@plus ..... 823, 836
- \@pnumwidth ... 846, 2807, 2836, 2841, 2846, 2851, 2856, 2861, 2866, 2871, 2876
- \@resetfont ..... 1177, 1197
- \@chapter ..... 1, 810, 3759, 4356
- \@secondoftwo ..... 205
- \@sect . 1, 297, 2129, 2136, 2175, 3776, 4359

- \@sectlof@used@false . . . . . 100
- \@sectlof@used@true . . . . . 1990
- \@sectlot@used@false . . . . . 101
- \@sectlot@used@true . . . . . 2057
- \@secttoc@used@false . . . . . 99
- \@secttoc@used@true . . . . . 1924
- \@spart . . . . . 1, 264, 1557, 3742, 4353
- \@sssect . . . . . 1, 297, 3776, 4359
- \@svsec . . . . . 2146
- \@svsechd . . . . . 2146
- \@tempdima . . . . . 375, 828, 829, 841, 842
- \@tempskipa . . . . . 2146
- \@tocfile . . . . . 600, 605, 608, 653,  
670, 675, 678, 726, 738, 743, 746, 794,  
1331, 1338, 1384, 1404, 1411, 1461,  
1478, 1486, 1536, 1923, 1930, 1972,  
1989, 1996, 2042, 2056, 2063, 2109
- \@tocrmarg . . . . . 371, 824, 837,  
2816, 2837, 2842, 2847, 2852, 2857,  
2862, 2867, 2872, 2877
- \@topnewpage . . . . . 1270, 1284, 1298, 4749
- \@undottedtocline 367, 647, 720, 788, 1384,  
1461, 1536, 1972, 2042, 2109
- \@width . . . . . 555
- \@xsect . . . . . 2146
- \\ . . . . . 586, 645, 657, 715, 730, 783, 798, 1319
- \\@mainaux . . . . . 115
- ~/ . . . . . 7215, 7219, 7223
  
- \\_ . . . . 5094, 5095, 5097, 5098, 5103, 5104, 5106,  
5107, 5112, 5113, 5115, 5116, 5507,  
5508, 5511, 5512, 5515, 5516, 5956,  
5958, 5960, 5963, 5965, 5967, 5970,  
5972, 5974, 5983, 5986, 5989, 5993,  
5996, 5999, 6003, 6006, 6009, 7165,  
7167, 7171, 7173, 7177, 7179
  
- A**
- \a@tok . . . . . 4845
- abstract . . . . . **49, 66**
- abstract (environment) . . . . . 1, 174
- acadian.mld . . . . . **417**
- acadien.mld . . . . . **418**
- \accent . . . . . 5255
- \addappheadtotoc . . . . . 762
- \addcoffeeline . . . . . 3374, 4663
- \addcontentsline . . . . . 1,  
28, 274, 301–304, 312–315, 350, 405,  
406, 519, 697, 698, 805, 829, 1089,  
1188, 1191, 1194, 1197, 1200, 1559–  
1561, 1875, 2129, 2136, 2146, 2317,  
2320, 3278, 3318, 4636, 4682, 4758,  
4761, 4765, 4768
- \addst@rred . . . . . 519, 538, 815
- \addstarredchapter . . . . . 1, 815, 1185, 4682
- \addstarredpart . . . . . 1, 815, 4682
- \addstarredsection . . . . . 1, 538, 815, 914, 4682
- \addtocontents . . . . . 1, 810, 1285, 1557, 2175,  
3180, 3194, 3227, 3374
- \addtocounter . . . . . 261, 549–551, 1036, 1073,  
1102, 1161, 1222–1224, 1746, 1806,  
1866, 1884–1886, 2343, 2402, 2461
- \addtolength . . . . . 1306, 1309, 1846
- addtotoc . . . . . **49, 66**
- \addvspace . . . . . 13, 14
- \adjustmtc . . . . . 1, 311, 402, 542, 755, 2329, 4446
- \adjustptc . . . . . 1, 29, 274, 1212, 1556, 4446
- \adjuststc . . . . . 1, 300, 694, 1879, 4446
- afrikaan.mld . . . . . **418**
- afrikaans.mld . . . . . **418**
- \afterminilof . . . . . 478, 730, 4595
- \afterminilot . . . . . 478, 798, 4595
- \afterminitoc . . . . . 478, 657, 4595
- \afterpartlof . . . . . 471, 1472, 4586
- \afterpartlot . . . . . 471, 1547, 4586
- \afterparttoc . . . . . 471, 1398, 4586
- \aftersectlof . . . . . 481, 2051, 4604
- \aftersectlot . . . . . 481, 2119, 4604
- \aftersecttoc . . . . . 481, 1984, 4604
- albanian.mld . . . . . **419**
- \alef . . . . . 4864–4866, 4868–4870, 4872–  
4874, 5506–5508, 5510–5512, 5514–  
5516, 5959, 5961, 5966, 5968, 5973,  
5975
- \alefhamza . . . . . 4865, 4869, 4873
- \alloc@ . . . . . 318
- alnumsec . . . . . **49, 71, 243, 386**
- \Alph . . . . . 1410, 1411
- alphanum . . . . . **48, 70**
- american.mld . . . . . **419**
- amsart . . . . . **48**
- amsart.cls . . . . . **62**
- amsbook . . . . . **48**
- amsbook.cls . . . . . **62**
- amsproc . . . . . **48**
- amsproc.cls . . . . . **62**
- appendices (environment) . . . . . 1
- appendix . . . . . **48, 59**
- \appendix . . . . . 1, 27, 410, 701, 992, 1254, 2232
- \appendixmtc . . . . . 4485
- arab.mld . . . . . **419, 421**
- arab2.mld . . . . . **420**
- arabi.mld . . . . . **420**
- \arabic . . . . . 956, 1063, 1122, 2290, 3180, 3194,  
3227
- arabic.mld . . . . . **421**
- armenian.mld . . . . . **421**

article ..... **248**  
 \AtBeginDocument ..... 109, 135,  
     152, 154, 156, 158, 160, 162, 164,  
     166, 168, 170, 172, 174, 511, 1206,  
     1871, 2806, 3194, 3227, 3378, 3589,  
     3742, 4349, 4619  
 \AtEndDocument 115, 3589, 3818, 4348, 4349,  
     4620  
 australian.mld ..... **422**  
 austrian.mld ..... **422**  
 \author ..... 1855  
 \ayin ..... 5957, 5964, 5971

**B**

bahasa.mld ..... **422**  
 bahasai.mld ..... **422, 423, 460**  
 bahasam.mld ..... **423, 471, 474**  
 bangla.mld ..... **424**  
 bangtex ..... **424**  
 \baselinestretch ..... 1401  
 basque.mld ..... **424**  
 \bcg ..... 4983–4985, 4987–4989, 4991–4993  
 \beforeminilof ..... 465, 683, 4595  
 \beforeminilot ..... 465, 751, 4595  
 \beforeminitoc ..... 465, 613, 4595  
 \beforepartlof ..... 458, 1417, 4586  
 \beforepartlot ..... 458, 1492, 4586  
 \beforeparttoc ..... 458, 1344, 4586  
 \beforesectlof ..... 468, 2002, 4604  
 \beforesectlot ..... 468, 2069, 4604  
 \beforesecttoc ..... 468, 1936, 4604  
 \bet ..... 5961, 5968, 5975  
 \bfseries ..... 564, 573, 1235,  
     1244, 1248, 1258, 1330, 1332, 1356,  
     1359, 1381, 1386, 1390, 1393, 1608,  
     1611, 1654, 1657, 1851, 1891, 1899,  
     2151–2155, 2157–2160  
 \bibitem ..... 2117, 2125, 2326  
 \bibliography ..... 1, 401, 693  
 \bibliographystyle ..... 400, 692  
 bicig.mld ..... **425, 497**  
 bicig2.mld ..... **425, 497**  
 bicig3.mld ..... **426**  
 \bigskipamount ..... 1, 11, 4371  
 bithe.mld ..... **427, 473**  
 book ..... **248, 250**  
 brazil.mld ..... **427, 428**  
 brazilian.mld ..... **428**  
 breton.mld ..... **428**  
 british.mld ..... **429**  
 bulgarian.mld ..... **429**  
 bulgarianb.mld ..... **430**  
 buryat.mld ..... **430**  
 buryat2.mld ..... **431**

**C**

\c@lofdepth 511, 715, 1206, 1458, 1459, 1871,  
     2039, 2040  
 \c@lotdepth 511, 783, 1206, 1533, 1534, 1871,  
     2106, 2107  
 \c@minilofdepth ..... 715  
 \c@minilotdepth ..... 783  
 \c@minitocdepth ..... 645, 4371  
 \c@mtc ..... 519, 4321, 4325, 4338, 4342, 4378  
 \c@mti ..... 575, 613, 683, 751, 895, 912, 929  
 \c@page ..... 1829  
 \c@partlofdepth ..... 1458  
 \c@partlotdepth ..... 1533  
 \c@parttocdepth ..... 1382, 4371  
 \c@ptc ..... 519, 4315, 4319, 4333, 4337, 4378  
 \c@pti .. 1260, 1298, 1351, 1424, 1499, 1585,  
     1602, 1619  
 \c@secnumdepth 1329, 2146, 2159, 2168, 4737,  
     4755  
 \c@sectlofdepth ..... 2036  
 \c@sectlotdepth ..... 2103  
 \c@secttocdepth ..... 1970, 4371  
 \c@stc ..... 519, 4326, 4330, 4343, 4347, 4378  
 \c@sti .. 1900, 1938, 2005, 2072, 2198, 2215,  
     2232  
 \c@tocdepth .369, 645, 822, 835, 1382, 1970,  
     2036, 2103  
 canadian.mld ..... **431**  
 canadien.mld ..... **432**  
 captcont ..... **49, 72, 243, 386**  
 caption ..... **49, 68, 244, 387**  
 \caption .. 65, 68, 71, 74, 83, 86, 89, 92, 101,  
     104, 107, 110, 127, 130, 133, 136, 143,  
     146, 151, 154, 161, 164, 167, 170, 319,  
     322, 340, 343, 384, 387, 393, 396, 421,  
     424, 430, 433, 445, 448, 454, 457, 527,  
     530, 548, 551, 587, 590, 596, 599, 614,  
     617, 636, 639, 676, 679, 685, 688, 708,  
     711, 717, 720, 730, 733, 739, 742, 895,  
     908, 950, 976, 1007, 1161, 1167, 1180,  
     1221, 1245, 1270, 1693, 1697, 1702,  
     1706, 1713, 1718, 1722, 1739, 1743,  
     1748, 1752, 1759, 1764, 1768, 1792,  
     1800, 1811, 1819, 2182, 2227, 2446  
 caption2 ..... **49, 68, 244, 387**  
 castillan.mld ..... **432**  
 castillian.mld ..... **432**  
 catalan.mld ..... **432**  
 catalog ..... **217**  
 ccaption ..... **49, 68, 244, 387**  
 \centering 1306, 1790, 1798, 1809, 1817, 2170,  
     2220, 2389, 2410

- \cftpagenumbersoff . . . 388–392, 399–402,  
411–416, 418, 420, 422, 424, 426, 428,  
1310, 1311
- \cftpagenumberson . . . 382–386, 394–397,  
404–409, 417, 419, 421, 423, 425, 427
- \cftsecfont . . . . . 2033, 2042
- \cftsecindent . . . . . 1303, 1305
- \cftsecnumwidth . . . . . 1304, 1306
- \cftsetrmarg . . . . . 1847
- \cftsubsecfont . . . . 2034–2036, 2043–2045
- \cftsubsecindent . . 1305, 1306, 1308, 1846
- \cftsubsecnumwidth . . . . . 1307, 1309
- \cftsubsubsecindent . . . . . 1308, 1309
- \ch@pt@c . . . . . 4718, 4722, 4724, 4730, 4732
- \chapbegin . . . . . 880
- chapter . . . . . **238, 239**
- \chapter . . . . . 1, 13, 20,  
35, 42, 61, 76, 94, 123, 138, 157, 174,  
185, 190, 195, 210, 217, 227, 236, 270,  
271, 274, 275, 280, 281, 281, 308, 309,  
310, 345, 360, 374, 411, 435, 458, 471,  
527, 538, 597, 667, 735, 756, 763, 770,  
815, 956, 984, 1033, 1079, 1148, 1184,  
1206, 1226, 1258, 1273, 1419, 1494,  
1522, 1562, 1566, 1572, 1574, 1578,  
1585, 1589, 1616, 1662, 1674, 1735,  
1755, 1784, 1803, 1863, 1940, 2009,  
2019, 2053, 2072, 2164, 2213, 2233,  
2246, 2251, 2256, 2262, 2271, 2293,  
2295, 2299, 2303, 2307, 2311, 2313,  
2403, 3263, 3284, 3303, 3324, 3742,  
3759, 4356, 4613
- \chapter@mtcck 2643, 2670, 2678, 2684, 2690,  
2699, 2706
- \chapterbegin . 810, 1036, 1102, 1161, 4459
- \chapterend . . 810, 1036, 1102, 1161, 4459
- \chapterfont . . . . . 1851
- \chaptermark . . . . . 4742
- \chapternumberline . . . . . 4759, 4762
- \chardef . . . . . 318
- checkfiles . . . . . **27, 30, 56**
- chinese1.mld . . . . . **433**
- chinese1.mlo . . . . . **433**
- chinese2.mld . . . . . **433**
- chinese2.mlo . . . . . **433**
- \cite . . . . . 1, 326, 534, 621, 2106, 2107
- CJK . . . . . **212**
- \cleardoublepage . . . . 462, 475, 1813, 1827
- \closeout . . . . . 257, 260, 332,  
946–948, 960, 991, 1036, 1067, 1102,  
1126, 1161, 1636–1638, 1656, 1670,  
1743, 1767, 1803, 1827, 1863, 2249–  
2251, 2271, 2290, 2340, 2366, 2399,  
2425, 2458, 4307, 4310
- \coffee . . . . . 988, 1674, 2274
- \coffeefont . . . . . 574, 821, 834, 1197, 4529
- \coffeeline . . . . . 3374, 4663
- \colorbox . . . . . 1370
- \columnbreak . . . . . 1358, 1375
- \columnrule . . . . . 2086
- \columnsep . . . . . 1366
- \columnseprule . . . . . 1365
- \columnwidth . 542, 613, 663, 683, 751, 1228,  
1368, 1436, 1515, 1879, 1953, 2019,  
2089, 2093, 2505
- \contentsline . . . . . 1, 274, 300, 311, 880,  
1036, 1102, 1161, 1177, 1735, 1796,  
1856, 2333, 2392, 2451
- \copy . . . . . 323, 327
- \count@ . . . . . 4371
- croatian.mld . . . . . **434**
- \cyr . 5092, 5094, 5097, 5101, 5103, 5106, 5110,  
5112, 5115, 5124, 5126, 5128, 5131,  
5133, 5135, 5138, 5140, 5142, 6796,  
6799, 6802, 6805, 6809, 6811, 6814,  
6818, 6820, 6823, 6952, 6954, 6958,  
6960, 6961, 6964, 6966, 7163, 7164,  
7166, 7169, 7170, 7172, 7175, 7176,  
7178
- \CYRa 6799, 6803, 6806, 6809, 6812, 6815, 6818,  
6821, 6824
- \cyra 5092, 5095, 5098, 5101, 5104, 5107, 5110,  
5113, 5116, 5124, 5128, 5131, 5135,  
5138, 5142, 6796, 6952, 6955, 6958,  
6961, 6964, 6967, 7165, 7167, 7171,  
7173, 7177, 7179
- \CYRb . . . . . 6806, 6815, 6824
- \cyrb 5098, 5107, 5116, 5128, 5135, 5142, 6955,  
6961, 6967, 7167, 7173, 7179
- \CYRc . . . . 6803, 6806, 6812, 6815, 6821, 6824
- \cyrc 5098, 5107, 5116, 5128, 5135, 5142, 6955,  
6961, 6967, 7165, 7167, 7171, 7173,  
7177, 7179
- \cyrd 5092, 5101, 5110, 5124, 5131, 5138, 6796,  
6952, 6958, 6964
- \CYRe . . . . . 6799, 6809, 6818
- \cyre 5092, 5095, 5098, 5101, 5104, 5107, 5110,  
5113, 5116, 5124, 5131, 5138, 6796,  
6954, 6955, 6960, 6961, 6966, 6967,  
7164, 7166, 7170, 7172, 7176, 7178
- \CYRF . . . . . 5126, 5133, 5140
- \cyrf . . . . . 5095, 5104, 5113
- \CYRg . . . . . 6799, 6809, 6818
- \cyrg . . . . 5095, 5104, 5113, 5126, 5133, 5140
- \cyrhrdsn 5092, 5094, 5097, 5101, 5103, 5106,  
5110, 5112, 5115, 5124, 5131, 5138

- \CYRi 6799, 6802, 6803, 6805, 6806, 6809, 6811,  
     6812, 6814, 6815, 6818, 6820, 6821,  
     6823, 6824  
 \cyrj 5092, 5094, 5095, 5097, 5098, 5101, 5103,  
     5104, 5106, 5107, 5110, 5112, 5113,  
     5115, 5116, 5124, 5126, 5128, 5131,  
     5133, 5135, 5138, 5140, 5142, 6796,  
     6954, 6955, 6960, 6961, 6966, 6967,  
     7167, 7173, 7179  
 \cyrji . . . 7163–7166, 7169–7172, 7175–7178  
 \CYRishrt . . . . . 6803, 6812, 6821  
 \cyrishrt . . . . . 7165, 7171, 7177  
 \cyrje . . . . . 6952, 6958, 6964  
 \CYRk . . . . 6802, 6805, 6811, 6814, 6820, 6823  
 \cyrk 5094, 5097, 5103, 5106, 5112, 5115, 6954,  
     6960, 6966, 7164, 7166, 7170, 7172,  
     7176, 7178  
 \CYRl 6799, 6803, 6806, 6809, 6812, 6815, 6818,  
     6821, 6824  
 \cyrll . . . 5098, 5107, 5116, 5128, 5135, 5142,  
     6954, 6955, 6960, 6961, 6966, 6967,  
     7164–7167, 7170–7173, 7176–7179  
 \cyrln . . . . . 7163, 7169, 7175  
 \CYRn . . . . . 6799, 6809, 6818  
 \cyrn 5092, 5095, 5098, 5101, 5104, 5107, 5110,  
     5113, 5116, 5124, 5131, 5138, 6796  
 \CYRO . . . . . 6799, 6809, 6818  
 \CYRo . . . . 6802, 6805, 6811, 6814, 6820, 6823  
 \cyro . . . . . 6796  
 \CYRP . . . . 7164, 7166, 7170, 7172, 7176, 7178  
 \CYRp . . . . 6802, 6805, 6811, 6814, 6820, 6823  
 \cyrp . . . . 5094, 5097, 5103, 5106, 5112, 5115  
 \CYRr . . . . . 6803, 6812, 6821  
 \cyrri . . . . . 5092, 5095, 5101, 5104,  
     5110, 5113, 5124, 5126, 5131, 5133,  
     5138, 5140, 6796, 6952, 6958, 6964,  
     7164–7166, 7170–7172, 7176–7178  
 \CYRS 5092, 5094, 5097, 5101, 5103, 5106, 5110,  
     5112, 5115, 5124, 5131, 5138, 6796,  
     6802, 6805, 6811, 6814, 6820, 6823,  
     6952, 6954, 6958, 6960, 6964, 6966  
 \CYRs 6802, 6803, 6805, 6811, 6812, 6814, 6820,  
     6821, 6823  
 \cyrss 5094, 5097, 5103, 5106, 5112, 5115, 7163,  
     7165, 7169, 7171, 7175, 7177  
 \cyrssftsn . . . . . 7167, 7173, 7179  
 \CYRT . . . . 5128, 5135, 5142, 6955, 6961, 6967  
 \CYRt . . . . 6803, 6806, 6812, 6815, 6821, 6824  
 \cyrtr 5095, 5098, 5104, 5107, 5113, 5116, 7163,  
     7165, 7167, 7169, 7171, 7173, 7175,  
     7177, 7179  
 \cyrty . . . . 5095, 5104, 5113, 5126, 5133, 5140  
 \CYRv . . . . . 6799, 6809, 6818  
 \CYRyu . . . . . 6803, 6812, 6821  
 \cyrzu . . . . . 7165, 7171, 7177  
 \CYRZ . . . . . 7163, 7169, 7175  
 \cyrzh . . . 5092, 5101, 5110, 5124, 5131, 5138,  
     6796, 6952, 6958, 6964  
 \cz . . . . . 6698, 6699, 6702, 6703, 6706, 6707  
 czech.mld . . . . . **434**
- D**
- \dal . 4866, 4870, 4874, 5506, 5508, 5510, 5512,  
     5514, 5516  
 danish.mld . . . . . **435**  
 \DeclareOption . . . 3382, 3386, 3388, 3390,  
     3391, 3394, 3411, 3414, 3587  
 \decrementmtc . . . . . 1, 542, 2261, 4446  
 \decrementptc . . . . . 1, 1212, 4446  
 \decrementstc . . . . . 1, 1879, 4446  
 devanagari.mld . . . . . **435, 459**  
 \df@mtic . . . . . 613, 683, 751  
 \df@mtilf . . . . . 575, 580, 690, 912  
 \df@mtilt . . . . . 575, 580, 758, 929  
 \df@mtitc . . . . . 575, 580, 620, 895  
 \df@pti . . . . . 1351, 1424, 1499  
 \df@ptilf . . . . . 1313, 1430, 1602  
 \df@ptilt . . . . . 1313, 1505, 1619  
 \df@ptitc . . . . . 1313, 1357, 1585  
 \df@sti . . . . . 1938, 2005, 2072  
 \df@stilf . . . . . 1905, 2011, 2215  
 \df@stilt . . . . . 1905, 2078, 2232  
 \df@stitc . . . . . 1905, 1945, 2198  
 \dimen@ . . . . . 4371  
 \divide . . . . . 2375  
 \dn . . . . . 5296–5298, 5300–5302, 5304–5306,  
     6027–6029, 6031–6033, 6035–6037  
 \do@mtilf . . 575, 580, 685–690, 692, 702, 706  
 \do@mtilt . . 575, 580, 753–758, 760, 770, 774  
 \do@mtitc . . . . . 575, 580, 613, 683, 751  
 \do@ptilf . . . . . 1313, 1424, 1436  
 \do@ptilt . . . . . 1313, 1499, 1515  
 \do@ptitc . . . . . 1313, 1351, 1368  
 \do@stilf . . . . . 1905, 2005, 2019  
 \do@stilt . . . . . 1905, 2072, 2086  
 \do@stitc . . . . . 1905, 1938, 1953  
 \documentclass 2, 53, 115, 175, 199, 252, 285,  
     286, 494, 748, 782, 1036, 1037, 1292,  
     1489, 1539, 1596, 1634, 1680, 1728,  
     1774, 1824, 1997, 2031, 2064, 2136,  
     2195, 2242, 2283, 2333, 2367  
 \dominilof . . . . . 1, 57, 119, 302, 667,  
     880, 885, 916, 1065, 1779, 2161, 2400,  
     2467, 3874, 3950, 4472  
 \dominilof@ . . . . . 889, 912  
 \dominilot 1, 58, 120, 303, 735, 880, 890, 933,  
     1066, 1732, 2467, 3882, 3958, 4472  
 \dominilot@ . . . . . 894, 929

- `\dominitoc` . . . . . 1, 10, 208, 301, 597,  
     753, 880, 899, 1064, 1417, 1492, 1552,  
     1602, 1648, 1778, 1860, 2006, 2050,  
     2070, 2205, 2245, 2288, 2467, 3866,  
     3942, 4472  
`\dominitoc@` . . . . . 880, 884, 895  
`\dopartlof` . . . . . 1, 507, 807, 1068, 1570, 1582,  
     1606, 2467, 3848, 3924, 4466  
`\dopartlof@` . . . . . 1583, 1602  
`\dopartlot` . . . . . 1, 507, 808, 1069, 1570, 1582,  
     1623, 2467, 3856, 3932, 4466  
`\dopartlot@` . . . . . 1584, 1619  
`\doparttoc` 1, 9, 181, 266, 507, 806, 1067, 1551,  
     1570, 1582, 1589, 1601, 1647, 2467,  
     3840, 3916, 4466  
`\doparttoc@` . . . . . 1582, 1585  
`\dosectlof` 1, 38, 508, 804, 2187, 2195, 2219,  
     2467, 3827, 3900, 3976, 4478  
`\dosectlof@` . . . . . 2196, 2215  
`\dosectlot` 1, 38, 508, 805, 1686, 2191, 2195,  
     2236, 2467, 3828, 3908, 3984, 4478  
`\dosectlot@` . . . . . 2197, 2232  
`\dosecttoc` . . . . . 1, 508, 803, 2183, 2195, 2202,  
     2344, 2467, 3892, 3968, 4478  
`\dosecttoc@` . . . . . 2195, 2198  
`\dotfil` . . . . . 294, 296, 500, 502  
`\dotfill` . . . . . 295, 501  
`dutch.mld` . . . . . **436**
- E**
- `\e@mti` . . . . . 575, 613, 683, 751, 895, 912, 929  
`\e@pti` . . . . . 1260, 1267, 1351, 1424, 1499, 1585,  
     1602, 1619  
`\e@sti` . . . . . 1900, 1938, 2005, 2072, 2198, 2215,  
     2232  
`\em` . . . . . 2121, 2128  
`emk` . . . . . **217**  
`\emph` . . . . . 1902, 1904, 1972, 1983  
`\empty` . . . . . 459–461, 465–470, 472–474, 478–483,  
     485–487, 491–496, 2033, 2034, 2042,  
     2043, 4496, 4531, 4534, 4535, 4586–  
     4612, 4641, 4650, 4659, 4669, 4671,  
     4673–4679  
`en-mtc.bst` . . . . . **217**  
`\endlist` . . . . . 596, 1329, 1921  
`\endmtc@verse` . . . . . 596  
`\endmtchideinmainlof` . . . . . 147  
`\endmtchideinmainlot` . . . . . 155, 1714, 1760  
`\endptc@verse` . . . . . 1319  
`\endstc@verse` . . . . . 1921  
`english.mld` . . . . . **419, 422, 429, 431, 437, 475, 497,**  
     **499**  
`english1.mld` . . . . . **437**  
`english2.mld` . . . . . **438**
- `\enlargethispage` . . . . . 1  
`abstract` . . . . . 1, 174  
`appendices` . . . . . 1  
`filecontents` . . . . . 4773  
`mtc@verse` 586, 639, 657, 709, 730, 777, 798,  
     2840, 2855, 2870  
`mtchideinmainlof` . . . . . 1, 3194, 4668  
`mtchideinmainlot` . . . . . 1, 3227, 4668  
`mtchideinmaintoc` . . . . . 1, 3180, 4668  
`ptc@verse` . . . . . 1319, 1382, 1384, 1455, 1461,  
     1530, 1536, 2835, 2850, 2865  
`samepage` . . . . . 613, 657, 683, 730, 751, 798, 1351,  
     1398, 1424, 1472, 1499, 1547, 1938,  
     1984, 2005, 2051, 2072, 2119  
`stc@verse` . . . . . 1911, 1970, 1972, 2036, 2042,  
     2103, 2109, 2845, 2860, 2875  
`tabular` . . . . . 613, 683, 751, 1368, 1436, 1515,  
     1953, 2019, 2086  
`esperant.mld` . . . . . **438, 439**  
`esperanto.mld` . . . . . **439**  
`estonian.mld` . . . . . **439**  
`\eth@doaltchar` 5435, 5436, 5438, 5439, 5443,  
     5444, 5446, 5447, 5451, 5452, 5454,  
     5455  
`ethiopia.mld` . . . . . **440**  
`ethiopian2.mld` . . . . . **441**  
`ethopia.mld` . . . . . **440**  
`ethopian.mld` . . . . . **440**  
`\ExecuteOptions` . . . . . 4273  
`\ext@subfigure` . . . . . 2140
- F**
- F** . . . . . **267**  
`\f@rhdr` . . . . . 4726, 4732, 4734, 4742, 4770  
`\f@rtoc` . . . . . 4725, 4730, 4759, 4762, 4765, 4768,  
     4770  
`\fa` . . . . . 4864, 4868, 4872, 5506, 5510, 5514  
`\fake@starttoc` . . . . . 497  
`\fakelistoffigures` . . . . . 497, 810, 1071, 1781,  
     3807, 4005, 4034, 4063, 4446  
`\fakelistoftables` . . . . . 497, 811, 1072, 3807,  
     4014, 4043, 4072, 4446  
`\faketableofcontents` . . . . . 182,  
     267, 497, 809, 1070, 1418, 2345, 3807,  
     3996, 4025, 4054, 4446  
`farsi1.mld` . . . . . **441**  
`farsi1.mlo` . . . . . **441**  
`farsi2.mld` . . . . . **442**  
`farsi2.mlo` . . . . . **442**  
`farsi3.mld` . . . . . **442**  
`\fbox` . . . . . 2171, 2176, 2179, 2181, 2384  
`\fboxrule` . . . . . 2382  
`\fboxsep` . . . . . 2382

`\figbox` . . . 2383, 2413, 2418, 2423, 2428, 2433, 2438, 2443  
`\figure` . . . . . 1079, 1770, 2369  
`\figure@mtcck` . . 2649, 2655, 2665, 2671, 2685, 2692, 2708  
`filecontents (environment)` . . . . . 4773  
`\finalmem` 5957, 5959, 5964, 5966, 5971, 5973  
`\finalnun` . . . . . 5956, 5963, 5970  
`finnish.mld` . . . . . 443  
`finnish2.mld` . . . . . 443  
`\firstchapteris` . . . . . 1, 542, 4255, 4545  
`\firstpartis` . . . . . 1, 1212, 4250, 4545  
`\firstsectionis` . . . . . 1, 1879, 4260, 4545  
`\FloatBarrier` . . . 1, 897, 910, 952, 978, 991, 1009, 1012  
`\flushbottom` . . . . . 795, 1050  
`fminitoc.bib` . . . . . 217  
`fminitoc.dtx` . . . . . 215, 217, 218  
`fminitoc.ist` . . . . . 217  
`fminitoc.lan` . . . . . 217  
`fminitoc.pdf` . . . . . 217  
`fmk` . . . . . 218  
`fncychap` . . . . . 49, 71, 242, 385  
`\footnotesize` . . . . . 2341  
`\FR` . . . . . 5506–5508, 5510–5512, 5514–5516  
`fr-mtc.bst` . . . . . 217  
`franc.sty` . . . . . 217  
`francais.mld` . . . . . 444  
`frbib.sty` . . . . . 217  
`french.mld` . . . . . 432, 444, 446, 447  
`french1.mld` . . . . . 445  
`french2.mld` . . . . . 84, 445  
`frenchb.mld` . . . . . 446  
`frenchle.mld` . . . . . 446  
`frenchpro.mld` . . . . . 447  
`frnew.sty` . . . . . 217  
`\fup` . . . . . 1845, 1869, 1871, 1938  
`\fussy` . . . . . 883, 1147

## G

`galician.mld` . . . . . 447  
`gaps` . . . . . 72  
`german.mld` . . . . . 422, 447  
`germanb.mld` . . . . . 448  
`germanb2.mld` . . . . . 448  
`\gobbleopt@` . . . . . 4465, 4466–4484  
`\goodap` . . . . . 2145  
`greek-mono.mld` . . . . . 449  
`greek-polydemo.mld` . . . . . 450  
`greek-polykatha.mld` . . . . . 451  
`greek.mld` . . . . . 449  
`guarani.mld` . . . . . 452

## H

`\ha` . . . . . 4864, 4868, 4872, 5506, 5510, 5514

`hangul-u8.mld` . . . . . 455  
`hangul-u8.mlo` . . . . . 455  
`hangul1.mld` . . . . . 453  
`hangul1.mlo` . . . . . 453  
`hangul2.mld` . . . . . 453  
`hangul2.mlo` . . . . . 453  
`hangul3.mld` . . . . . 454  
`hangul3.mlo` . . . . . 454  
`hangul4.mld` . . . . . 455  
`hanja-u8.mld` . . . . . 457  
`hanja-u8.mlo` . . . . . 457  
`hanja1.mld` . . . . . 456  
`hanja1.mlo` . . . . . 456  
`hanja2.mld` . . . . . 456  
`hanja2.mlo` . . . . . 456  
`\hb@xt@` . . . . . 846  
`\hebalef` . . . 5987, 5990, 5997, 6000, 6007, 6010  
`\hebayin` . . . . . 5984, 5994, 6004  
`\hebbet` . . . . . 5990, 6000, 6010  
`\hebfinalmem` . . 5984, 5987, 5994, 5997, 6004, 6007  
`\hebfinalnun` . . . . . 5983, 5993, 6003  
`\hebkafe` . . . . . 5983, 5993, 6003  
`\heblamed` . . . . . 5990, 6000, 6010  
`\hebmem` . . . 5986, 5989, 5996, 5999, 6006, 6009  
`\hebnun` . . . . . 5984, 5994, 6004  
`\hebresh` . . . 5986, 5987, 5989, 5996, 5997, 5999, 6006, 6007, 6009  
`hebrew.mld` . . . . . 457  
`hebrew2.mld` . . . . . 458  
`\hebshin` . . . 5986, 5989, 5996, 5999, 6006, 6009  
`\hebtav` . . . 5983, 5986, 5989, 5990, 5993, 5996, 5999, 6000, 6003, 6006, 6009, 6010  
`\hebtet` . . . . . 5990, 6000, 6010  
`\hebvav` . . . 5983, 5987, 5990, 5993, 5997, 6000, 6003, 6007, 6010  
`\hebyod` . . . 5984, 5986, 5987, 5989, 5994, 5996, 5997, 5999, 6004, 6006, 6007, 6009  
`hindi-modern.mld` . . . . . 459  
`hindi.mld` . . . . . 459  
`hints` . . . . . 48, 53, 239, 393  
`\hline` 636, 706, 774, 1368, 1436, 1515, 1953, 2019, 2086  
`\hrule` . . . . 555, 1399, 2508–2510, 2517–2519, 2526–2528  
`\Huge` . . . . . 1330, 1332, 1339  
`\huge` . . . . . 1851  
`hungarian.mld` . . . . . 459  
`hyperref` . . . . . 48, 58, 68, 241

## I

`icelandic.mld` . . . . . 460  
`\if@dominilof@used@` . . 93, 912, 3861, 3938  
`\if@dominilot@used@` . . 93, 929, 3861, 3938



- \if@dominitoc@used@ . . 93, 880, 895, 3861, 3938
- \if@dopartlof@used@ 87, 1602, 3835, 3912
- \if@dopartlot@used@ 87, 1619, 3835, 3912
- \if@doparttoc@used@ 87, 1585, 3835, 3912
- \if@dosectlof@used@ 99, 2215, 3819, 3887, 3964
- \if@dosectlot@used@ 99, 2232, 3819, 3887, 3964
- \if@dosecttoc@used@ 99, 2198, 3887, 3964
- \if@filesw . . . . . 121, 506
- \if@firstchapteris@used@ . 105, 542, 4253
- \if@firstpartis@used@ . . . 105, 1212, 4248
- \if@firstsectionis@used@ . . . . 105, 4258
- \if@longextensions . . . . . 600
- \if@longextensions@ . . . . . 332, 600, 670, 738, 960, 991, 1067, 1126, 1331, 1404, 1478, 1647, 1661, 1758, 1818, 1923, 1989, 2056, 2262, 2290, 2357, 2416, 3391, 4077, 4303, 4613
- \if@mainmatter . . . . . 4738, 4756
- \if@minilof@used@ 93, 668, 3861, 3938, 4019
- \if@minilot@used@ 93, 736, 3861, 3938, 4019
- \if@minitoc@used@ 93, 598, 3861, 3938, 4019
- \if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ . . . . . 3589
- \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ . . . 39, 164, 4155
- \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ . . 39, 164, 4155
- \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ . . . 39, 166, 4163
- \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ . . 39, 166, 4163
- \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ . . 39, 170, 4179
- \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ . . 39, 170, 4179
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@ . . . 39, 168, 4171
- \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ . . 39, 168, 4171
- \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ . . . 39, 172, 4187
- \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ . . 39, 172, 4187
- \if@mtc@chapter@def@ 77, 3861, 3938, 4019, 4077
- \if@mtc@chapter@undef@ . . . 83, 1877, 2466
- \if@mtc@checkfiles . . . . . 227, 3386
- \if@mtc@empty@minilof@ . . . . 66, 675, 4223
- \if@mtc@empty@minilot@ . . . . 71, 743, 4228
- \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ . . . . 66, 605, 4218
- \if@mtc@empty@partlof@ . . . . . 66, 4208
- \if@mtc@empty@partlot@ . . . . . 66, 4213
- \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ . . . . . 66, 4203
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ . . . . . 66, 4238
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ . . . . . 66, 4243
- \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ . . . . . 72, 4233
- \if@mtc@FE 227, 605, 613, 675, 683, 743, 751, 1338, 1351, 1411, 1424, 1486, 1499, 1930, 1938, 1996, 2005, 2063, 2072
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ . . . 39, 156, 4123
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ . . 39, 156, 4123
- \if@mtc@Himlof@ . . . . . 3194
- \if@mtc@Himlot@ . . . . . 3227
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ . . . . . 3179, 3180
- \if@mtc@hints@ . . . . . 35, 895, 912, 929, 1585, 1602, 1619, 2198, 2215, 2232, 2486, 3587, 3794, 4349
- \if@mtc@hints@giben@ . . . . . 35
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ 37, 3597, 3602, 3608, 3614, 3632, 3638, 3643, 3702, 3709, 3719, 3726, 3737, 3742, 3759, 3776, 3824, 3835, 3861, 3887, 3912, 3938, 3964, 3990, 4019, 4048, 4107, 4115, 4123, 4131, 4139, 4147, 4155, 4163, 4171, 4179, 4187, 4195, 4263
- \if@mtc@hints@given@true . . . . . 4077
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ 35, 3742, 3759, 3776, 3824
- \if@mtc@hyper@used@ 135, 3742, 3759, 3776
- \if@mtc@insellang@ . . . . . 3340, 3353
- \if@mtc@LI . . . . . 227
- \if@mtc@listfiles@ . . . . . 3411, 4348
- \if@mtc@lof@used@ 3589, 3794, 3798, 3807, 4001, 4030, 4059
- \if@mtc@lot@used@ 3589, 3794, 3798, 3807, 4010, 4039, 4068
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ . . . 39, 174, 4195
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ . . 39, 174, 4195
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . . . . . 39, 176, 380
- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ . . . . . 39, 176
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ . . . . . 130, 3390, 4300
- \if@mtc@part@def@ . . 75, 3835, 3912, 3990, 4077
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ . . . . . 81
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ . . 39, 3824, 4294
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ . . . 39, 158, 4131
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ . . 39, 158, 4131
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ . . . 39, 160, 4139
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ . . 39, 160, 4139
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ . . . . . 38, 3819, 3824
- \if@mtc@section@def@ 79, 1877, 2465, 3819, 3887, 3964, 4048, 4077
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ . . . . . 85
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ . . . . 39, 152, 4107
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ . . 39, 152, 4107
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ . . . . . 3141, 3143, 3160
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ . . . 3088, 3109, 3127
- \if@mtc@setfont@ . 2595, 2597, 2615, 2633, 2711
- \if@mtc@setformat@ . . . . . 2880, 2916
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ . . . 2930, 2970
- \if@mtc@setrules@ . . . . . 2999, 3020
- \if@mtc@setttitle@ . . . . . 2762, 2764, 2782
- \if@mtc@setttitlefont@ . . 2726, 2728, 2746
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ . . . 39, 162, 4147
- \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 39, 162, 4147
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ . . . . . 2930, 2970

- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ . . . . . 2999, 3040
  - \if@mtc@ss@insection@ . . . 3394, 3643, 4294
  - \if@mtc@toc@used@ . . . 3589, 3794, 3798, 3807,  
3992, 4021, 4050
  - \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ . . . 39, 154, 4115
  - \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ . . 39, 154, 4115
  - \if@mtcfixglossary@ . . . . . 3278
  - \if@mtcfixindex@ . . . . . 3318
  - \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ . . . . . 176, 195
  - \if@partlof@used@ . . . 87, 1404, 3835, 3912,  
3990
  - \if@partlot@used@ . . . 87, 1478, 3835, 3912,  
3990
  - \if@parttoc@used@ . . . 87, 1331, 3835, 3912,  
3990
  - \if@sectlof@used@ . . . 99, 1989, 3819, 3887,  
3964, 4048
  - \if@sectlot@used@ . . . 99, 2056, 3819, 3887,  
3964, 4048
  - \if@secttoc@used@ . . . 99, 1923, 3887, 3964,  
4048
  - \if@setrules@false . . . . . 3040
  - \if@twocolumn . . . . . 1270, 1284, 1298
  - \if@twoside . . . . . 1828
  - \ifanappendix . . . . . 4757
  - \ifartopt . . . . . 4743
  - \ifdim . . . . . 2153
  - \IfFileExists . . . 196, 244, 2467, 3340, 3353,  
4303
  - \ifheadnameref . . . . . 4770
  - \ifkthightmtc . . . 1, 133, 586, 1319, 1911, 4613
  - ifmtarg . . . . . **245**
  - \ifmtc@lof@used@ . . . . . 3990, 4019, 4048
  - \ifmtc@lot@used@ . . . . . 3990, 4019, 4048
  - \ifmtc@toc@used@ . . . . . 3990, 4019, 4048
  - \ifmtcwarn@ . . . . . 4619, 4636, 4682
  - \ifmtcsecondpart . . 108, 109, 115, 260, 4613,  
5603
  - \ifodd . . . . . 1829
  - \ifscan@allowed . . . . . 291, 497
  - \iftightmtc . . . 1, 133, 586, 1319, 1911, 3382,  
4613
  - \ifundottedmtc . 367, 851, 854, 857, 859, 869,  
3388, 4613
  - \ignorespaces . . . . . 805
  - imk . . . . . **217**
  - \in . . . . . 7124, 7128, 7132
  - \incrementmtc . . . . . 1, 542, 4446
  - \incrementptc . . . . . 1, 1212, 4446
  - \incrementstc . . . . . 1, 1879, 4446
  - indon.mld . . . . . **460**
  - indonesian.mld . . . . . **460**
  - \input . . . . . 332, 4363
  - \InputIfFileExists . . . . 3342, 3355, 4273
  - insection . . . . . **28, 49**
  - \insertchapterspace . . . . . 4747
  - INSTALL . . . . . **215**
  - \interlinepenalty . 373, 826, 839, 1328, 1338,  
2156
  - interlingua.mld . . . . . **461**
  - irish.mld . . . . . **461**
  - italian.mld . . . . . **462**
  - italian2.mld . . . . . **462**
  - \itemindent . . . . . 586,  
642, 712, 780, 1319, 1380, 1453, 1528,  
1913, 1914, 1968, 2034, 2101
  - \itemsep . . . . . 586, 1319, 1912
- J**
- japanese.mld . . . . . **463**
  - japanese.mlo . . . . . **463**
  - japanese2.mld . . . . . **463**
  - japanese2.mlo . . . . . **463**
  - japanese3.mld . . . . . **464**
  - japanese3.mlo . . . . . **464**
  - japanese4.mld . . . . . **464**
  - japanese4.mlo . . . . . **464**
  - japanese5.mld . . . . . **465**
  - japanese5.mlo . . . . . **465**
  - \jeem . 4866, 4870, 4874, 5506, 5508, 5510, 5512,  
5514, 5516
  - \jobname . . . . . 332, 2467, 4303, 4363
  - jura . . . . . **48, 70**
- K**
- k-loose . . . . . **38**
  - k-tight . . . . . **38, 58, 241, 263, 292**
  - \kaf . 4865, 4869, 4873, 5507, 5511, 5515, 5956,  
5963, 5970
  - kanlel.sty . . . . . **465**
  - kannada.mld . . . . . **465**
  - \kernafterminilof . . . . . 17, 731, 4383
  - \kernafterminilot . . . . . 17, 799, 4383
  - \kernafterminitoc . . . . . 17, 658, 4383
  - \kernafterpartlof . . . . . 17, 1472, 4383
  - \kernafterpartlot . . . . . 17, 1547, 4383
  - \kernafterparttoc . . . . . 17, 1398, 4383
  - \kernaftersectlof . . . 17, 2051, 2119, 4383
  - \kernaftersectlot . . . . . 17, 4383
  - \kernaftersecttoc . . . . . 17, 1984, 4383
  - khalkha.mld . . . . . **466**
  - \kiftightmtc . . . . . 3382
  - \ktightmtcfalse . . . . . 1, 134, 3385, 4615
  - \ktightmtctrue . . . . . 1, 3384
- L**
- \l@chapter . . . 311, 803, 1389, 1390, 2497, 2499,  
4539

- `\l@chapter@SVPN` . . . . . 1389, 1390
- `\l@coffee` . . . . . 3374, 4665
- `\l@listof` . . . . . 2496, 4613
- `\l@mti` 575, 580, 613, 683, 751, 895, 912, 929
- `\l@paragraph` . . . . . 2503, 4543
- `\l@part` . . . . . 274, 2498, 4538
- `\l@pchapter` . . . . . 1552
- `\l@psect` . . . . . 1552
- `\l@pti` . . 1260, 1270, 1313, 1351, 1424, 1499, 1585, 1602, 1619
- `\l@schapter` . . . . . 2123
- `\l@section` . . . . . 300, 2496, 2500, 4540
- `\l@starchapter` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@starparagraph` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@starpart` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@starsection` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@starsubparagraph` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@starsubsection` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@starsubsubsection` . . . . . 2496, 4538
- `\l@sti` . . 1900, 1905, 1938, 2005, 2072, 2198, 2215, 2232
- `\l@subfigure` . . . . . 2139
- `\l@subparagraph` . . . . . 2504, 4544
- `\l@subsection` . . . . . 2501, 4541
- `\l@subsubsection` . . . . . 2502, 4542
- `\l@xchapter` . . . . . 311, 803, 4485
- `\l@xpart` . . . . . 274, 1552, 4485
- `\l@xsect` . . . . . 300, 2123, 4485
- `\l@xsection` . . . . . 300, 2123
- `\label` . . . 1864, 1945, 2072, 2180, 2183, 2213, 2217, 2236, 2412, 2417, 2422, 2427, 2432, 2437, 2442, 2447
- `\labelitemi` . . . . . 1382, 1387
- `\labelsep` . . 643, 713, 781, 1381, 1454, 1529, 1969, 2035, 2102
- `\labelwidth` 642, 712, 780, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1968, 2034, 2101
- `\lam` . 4864–4866, 4868–4870, 4872–4874, 5507, 5508, 5511, 5512, 5515, 5516
- `\lamed` . . . . . 5961, 5968, 5975
- `lamed.eps` . . . . . **217**
- `lamed.pdf` . . . . . **217**
- `lamed.tex` . . . . . **217**
- `\LangSig` . . . . . 2068, 2104
- `\LARGE` . . . . . 1258
- `\Large` . . . . . 1244, 1853, 2046
- `\large` 573, 1356, 1381, 1386, 1390, 1393, 1899
- `latin.mld` . . . . . **466**
- `latin2.mld` . . . . . **467**
- `latvian.mld` . . . . . **467, 468**
- `\ldots` . . . . . 1560, 1564, 1568, 2354, 2363
- `\leftmargin` . . . . . 594, 595, 640, 710, 778, 1327, 1328, 1378, 1451, 1526, 1919, 1920, 1966, 2032, 2099
- `letton.mld` . . . . . **468**
- `\linewidth` . . . 1354, 1363, 1371, 2073, 2074
- `lipsum` . . . . . **199**
- `\lipsum` . . . . . 17, 19, 24, 26, 39, 41, 46, 48, 213, 215, 220, 222, 224, 230, 232, 234, 240, 242, 244, 758, 760, 765, 768, 773, 821, 823, 825, 827, 830, 832, 834, 836, 838, 840, 842, 844, 846, 848, 850, 852, 854, 856, 858, 860, 862, 864, 866, 868, 870, 872, 874, 876, 878, 880, 882, 888, 890, 899, 901, 903, 912, 917, 919, 921, 923, 925, 927, 937, 939, 941, 943, 945, 953, 955, 965, 967, 969, 971, 981, 983, 994, 998, 1000, 1002, 1011, 1017, 1019, 1021, 1023, 1025, 1081, 1083, 1085, 1087, 1090, 1092, 1094, 1096, 1098, 1100, 1102, 1104, 1106, 1108, 1110, 1112, 1114, 1116, 1118, 1120, 1122, 1124, 1126, 1128, 1130, 1132, 1134, 1136, 1138, 1140, 1142, 1144, 1146, 1154, 1156, 1171, 1173, 1175, 1183, 1186, 1189, 1192, 1195, 1198, 1201, 1208, 1210, 1212, 1214, 1216, 1223, 1225, 1234, 1236, 1238, 1240, 1247, 1249, 1251, 1253, 1261, 1263, 1265, 1278, 1280, 1282, 1288, 1618, 1620, 1622, 1624, 1626, 1628, 1630, 1664, 1666, 1668, 1670, 1672, 1674, 1676, 1691, 1695, 1699, 1704, 1708, 1711, 1716, 1720, 1724, 1737, 1741, 1745, 1750, 1754, 1757, 1762, 1766, 1770, 1788, 1796, 1807, 1815, 2011, 2013, 2015, 2017, 2021, 2023, 2025, 2027, 2056, 2058, 2060
- `\list` . . . . . 586, 1319, 1912
- `listfiles` . . . . . **48**
- `\listoffigures` . . . . . 1, 59, 121, 291, 306, 514, 1071, 2163, 2322, 2401, 3798, 4004, 4033, 4062
- `\listoftables` . . . . . 1, 60, 122, 291, 308, 516, 1072, 1688, 1734, 2207, 3798, 4013, 4042, 4071
- `\listparindent` . . . . . 586, 643, 713, 781, 1319, 1381, 1454, 1529, 1914, 1969, 2035, 2102
- `lithuanian.mld` . . . . . **468**
- `\localgreek` . . 5730, 5733, 5737, 5741, 5744, 5748, 5752, 5755, 5759, 5770, 5773, 5777, 5781, 5784, 5788, 5792, 5795, 5799, 5810, 5813, 5817, 5821, 5824, 5828, 5832, 5835, 5839
- `\locallatvian` . . . . 6258–6260, 6262–6264, 6266–6268

- \localpolish . . . . . 6590–6592, 6594–6596,  
     6598–6600  
 \localrussian . 6716, 6719, 6723, 6727, 6730,  
     6734, 6738, 6741, 6745, 6756, 6759,  
     6763, 6767, 6770, 6774, 6778, 6781,  
     6785  
 \localspanish . . . . . 7043–7045, 7047–7049,  
     7051–7053  
 lofdepth . . . . . **30, 259**  
 loose . . . . . **38**  
 lotdepth . . . . . **30, 259, 272**  
 lowersorbian.mld . . . . . **469**  
 lsorbian.mld . . . . . **469**
- M**
- M . . . . . **264**  
 \M@getttitle . . . . . 4770  
 magyar.mld . . . . . **459, 470**  
 magyar2.mld . . . . . **470**  
 magyar3.mld . . . . . **471**  
 \maketitle . . . . . 1858  
 \MakeUppercase . . 612, 682, 750, 1345, 1418,  
     1493, 1938, 2003, 2070  
 malay.mld . . . . . **471**  
 malayalam-keli.mld . . . . . **471**  
 malayalam-omega.mld . . . . . **472**  
 malayalam-omega.mlo . . . . . **472**  
 malayalam-rachana.mld . . . . . **472**  
 malayalam-rachana2.mld . . . . . **473**  
 manju.mld . . . . . **473**  
 mcaption . . . . . **49, 68, 244, 388**  
 \mdseries . . 563, 574, 790, 1234, 1247, 1249,  
     1614, 1660, 1890  
 \meem 4865, 4866, 4869, 4870, 4873, 4874, 5506,  
     5510, 5514  
 \mem . . . . . 5958, 5960, 5965, 5967, 5972, 5974  
 memoir . . . . . **48, 61, 68, 237, 245, 254**  
 \MessageBreak . . . . . 4698  
 meyalu.mld . . . . . **474**  
 \minilof . . . . . 1, 62, 77, 98, 124, 139, 158,  
     313, 378, 415, 440, 667, 1151, 1275,  
     1786, 1804, 2165, 2168, 2404, 2407,  
     3873, 3951, 4032, 4472  
 \minilof@ . . . . . 667, 668, 849  
 \minilof@mtcck . . . . . 2637, 2676  
 minilofdepth . . . . . **259, 269**  
 \minilot 1, 63, 78, 99, 125, 140, 159, 315, 380,  
     417, 442, 735, 1153, 1276, 1736, 1756,  
     3881, 3959, 4041, 4472  
 \minilot@ . . . . . 735, 736, 849  
 \minilot@mtcck . . . . . 2640, 2682  
 minilotdepth . . . . . **272**  
 \minitoc . . . . . 1, 14, 21, 36,  
     43, 211, 218, 228, 238, 311, 376, 413,  
     438, 597, 757, 764, 771, 1080, 1149,  
     1206, 1207, 1230, 1259, 1274, 1373,  
     1420, 1496, 1523, 1575, 1579, 1586,  
     1590, 1617, 1663, 1785, 1804, 1865,  
     1941, 2010, 2020, 2054, 2076, 2234,  
     2263, 2272, 2296, 2300, 2304, 2308,  
     2315, 3865, 3943, 4023, 4472  
 minitoc.bib . . . . . **217**  
 minitoc.bug . . . . . **48, 53, 217**  
 minitoc.dtx . . . . . **215, 217, 218**  
 minitoc.ins . . . . . **40, 215, 217**  
 minitoc.ist . . . . . **217**  
 minitoc.l . . . . . **215, 217**  
 minitoc.lan . . . . . **217**  
 minitoc.pdf . . . . . **217**  
 minitoc.pre . . . . . **217**  
 minitoc.sty . . . . . **215**  
 minitoc.sum . . . . . **217**  
 \minitoc@ . . . . . 597, 598, 849  
 \minitoc@mtcck . . . . . 2634, 2668  
 minitocdepth . . . . . **30, 261, 265**  
 minutes . . . . . **262**  
 mlf . . . . . **267**  
 \MLF@ . . . . . 1100, 1102  
 \MLF@contentsline . . . . . 1063, 1102  
 \MLF@explist . . . . . 1061, 1088  
 \MLF@line . . . . . 1099, 1100  
 \MLF@list . . . . . 1058, 1061, 1088, 1102  
 \MLF@lof . . . . . 1061, 1089, 1102  
 \MLF@loop . . . . . 1058, 1089  
 \MLF@next . . . . . 885, 1058, 1088  
 \mlf@pgno . . . . . 436, 437  
 \MLF@read . . . . . 1089, 1098, 1102  
 \mlf@rule . . 542, 683, 732, 2515, 2518, 2521  
 \mlf@setform . . . . . 720, 2855  
 \MLF@test . . . . . 1100, 1102  
 \mlf@dotsep . . . . . 2825, 2858  
 \mlffont . . . . . 1, 563, 683, 4508  
 \mlflofrmargin . . . . . 2816  
 \mlfname . . . . . 1067  
 \mlfpagenumbers . . 417, 430, 436, 449, 4568  
 \mlfpnumwidth . . . . . 2807, 2856  
 \mlfrule . . . . . 2505, 4550  
 \mlfSfont . . . . . 1, 563, 4508  
 \mlftitle . . . . . 1, 682, 692, 702, 706,  
     4275, 4773, 4791, 4812, 4833, 4851,  
     4869, 4891, 4920, 4937, 4954, 4972,  
     4988, 5004, 5020, 5036, 5053, 5074,  
     5102, 5132, 5153, 5169, 5204, 5242,  
     5261, 5278, 5301, 5318, 5335, 5358,  
     5384, 5401, 5422, 5442, 5473, 5511,  
     5528, 5545, 5566, 5589, 5622, 5651,  
     5666, 5683, 5698, 5716, 5744, 5748,  
     5784, 5824, 5854, 5965, 5995, 6032,

- 6054, 6079, 6096, 6114, 6132, 6206,
- 6207, 6227, 6244, 6263, 6285, 6302,
- 6326, 6343, 6360, 6381, 6404, 6421,
- 6445, 6474, 6489, 6508, 6524, 6539,
- 6555, 6576, 6595, 6613, 6634, 6651,
- 6669, 6702, 6730, 6770, 6810, 6835,
- 6903, 6920, 6937, 6959, 6979, 6996,
- 7017, 7032, 7048, 7069, 7086, 7103,
- 7127, 7164, 7192, 7219, 7240, 7255,
- 7270, 7285
- `\mlftocrmarg` ..... 2820, 2857
- `mlt` ..... **270**
- `\MLT@` ..... 1159, 1161
- `\MLT@contentsline` ..... 1122, 1161
- `\MLT@explist` ..... 1120, 1147
- `\MLT@line` ..... 1158, 1159
- `\MLT@list` ..... 1117, 1120, 1147, 1161
- `\MLT@loop` ..... 1117, 1148
- `\MLT@lot` ..... 1120, 1148, 1161
- `\MLT@next` ..... 890, 1117, 1147
- `\mlt@pgno` ..... 442, 443
- `\MLT@read` ..... 1148, 1157, 1161
- `\mlt@rule` .. 542, 751, 800, 2524, 2527, 2530
- `\mlt@setform` ..... 788, 2870
- `\MLT@test` ..... 1159, 1161
- `\mltdotsep` ..... 2825
- `\mltfont` ..... 1, 563, 751, 4508
- `\mlttitle` ..... 4813
- `\mltlofrmarg` ..... 2816
- `\mltname` ..... 1126
- `\mltpagenumbers` .. 423, 430, 436, 442, 449,
- 4568
- `\mltpnumwidth` ..... 2807
- `\mltrule` ..... 2505, 4550
- `\mltSfont` ..... 1, 563, 4508
- `\mltttitle` ..... 1, 750, 760, 770, 774,
- 4275, 4773, 4792, 4834, 4852, 4870,
- 4892, 4921, 4938, 4955, 4973, 4989,
- 5005, 5021, 5037, 5054, 5075, 5105,
- 5134, 5154, 5170, 5205, 5243, 5262,
- 5279, 5302, 5319, 5336, 5359, 5385,
- 5402, 5423, 5445, 5475, 5512, 5529,
- 5546, 5567, 5590, 5623, 5652, 5667,
- 5684, 5699, 5717, 5788, 5828, 5855,
- 5967, 5998, 6033, 6055, 6080, 6097,
- 6115, 6133, 6228, 6245, 6264, 6286,
- 6303, 6327, 6344, 6361, 6382, 6405,
- 6422, 6446, 6475, 6490, 6509, 6525,
- 6540, 6556, 6577, 6596, 6614, 6635,
- 6652, 6670, 6687, 6688, 6703, 6734,
- 6774, 6813, 6836, 6904, 6921, 6938,
- 6961, 6980, 6997, 7018, 7033, 7049,
- 7070, 7087, 7104, 7128, 7166, 7193,
- 7220, 7241, 7256, 7271, 7286
- `\mlttocrmarg` ..... 2823
- `\mm` ..... 6376–6378, 6380–6382, 6384–
- 6386, 6399–6401, 6403–6405, 6407–
- 6409, 6416–6418, 6420–6422, 6424–
- 6426
- `\mnr` ..... 5148–5150, 5152–5154, 5156–
- 5158, 5164–5166, 5168–5170, 5172–
- 5174, 6440–6442, 6444–6446, 6448–
- 6450, 7250–7252, 7254–7256, 7258–
- 7260, 7265–7267, 7269–7271, 7273–
- 7275
- `mongol.mld` ..... **474**
- `mtc` ..... **261, 264**
- `mtc-2c.tex` ..... **83, 217**
- `mtc-2nd.tex` ..... **84, 217**
- `mtc-add.tex` ..... **47, 85, 217**
- `mtc-ads.tex` ..... **47, 90, 217**
- `mtc-amm.tex` ..... **96, 217**
- `mtc-apx.tex` ..... **62, 217**
- `mtc-art.tex` ..... **96, 217**
- `mtc-bk.tex` ..... **102, 217**
- `mtc-bo.tex` ..... **108, 217**
- `mtc-ch0.tex` ..... **113, 217**
- `mtc-cri.tex` ..... **114, 217**
- `mtc-fo1.tex` ..... **115, 217**
- `mtc-fo2.tex` ..... **116, 217**
- `mtc-gap.tex` ..... **72, 217**
- `mtc-hil.tex` ..... **64, 217**
- `mtc-hi2.tex` ..... **64, 217**
- `mtc-hia.tex` ..... **117, 217**
- `mtc-hir.tex` ..... **118, 217**
- `mtc-hop.tex` ..... **119, 217**
- `mtc-liv.tex` ..... **120, 217**
- `mtc-mem.tex` ..... **124, 217**
- `mtc-mm1.tex` ..... **125, 217**
- `mtc-mu.tex` ..... **126, 217**
- `mtc-sbf.tex` ..... **128, 217**
- `mtc-scr.tex` ..... **129, 217**
- `mtc-syn.tex` ..... **131, 217**
- `mtc-tbi.tex` ..... **132, 217**
- `mtc-tlc.tex` ..... **133, 217**
- `mtc-tsfx.tex` ..... **134, 217**
- `\MTC@` ..... 1034, 1038
- `\mtc@While` ..... 213, 215, 220
- `\mtc@addtomaf` ..... 4303
- `\mtc@arg@dotinterval` ..... 2799
- `\mtc@arg@numwidth` ..... 2805
- `\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth` ..... 2803
- `\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin` ..... 2801
- `\mtc@BBR` . 318, 639, 645, 709, 715, 777, 783,
- 1377, 1382, 1450, 1455, 1525, 1530,
- 1965, 1970, 2031, 2036, 2098, 2103
- `\mtc@Body` ..... 227
- `\mtc@bottom@rule` ..... 657, 663, 730, 798

- \mtc@ck ..... 4636
- \mtc@CkFile 227, 605, 675, 743, 1338, 1411, 1486, 1930, 1996, 2063
- \mtc@CkStr 227, 613, 683, 751, 1351, 1424, 1499, 1938, 2005, 2072
- \MTC@contentsline ..... 956, 1036
- \mtc@dot ..... 1177
- \mtc@EndWhile ..... 202, 227
- \MTC@explist ..... 953, 1021
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev .. 3090, 3109, 3127
- \mtc@featparam@third ..... 3109, 3127
- \mtc@featureparam@after ..... 3081
- \mtc@featureparam@before ..... 3079
- \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle ..... 3083
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev .... 2882, 2901, 2916
- \mtc@glofix@level . 3260, 3279, 3288–3290, 3296
- \mtc@hints@chapter ..... 3759, 4356
- \mtc@hints@part ..... 3742, 4353
- \mtc@hints@schapter ..... 3759, 4356
- \mtc@hints@ssect ..... 3776, 4359
- \mtc@hints@spart ..... 3742, 4353
- \mtc@hints@ssect ..... 3776, 4359
- \mtc@hints@begindoc ... 3589, 3817, 4349
- \mtc@hints@chapter .... 3742, 3759, 4356
- \mtc@hints@checklongext ..... 4077
- \mtc@hints@enddoc . 3589, 3818, 4263, 4349
- \mtc@hints@part ..... 3742, 4353
- \mtc@hints@section .... 3742, 3776, 4359
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile 130, 647, 720, 788, 1384, 1461, 1536, 1972, 2042, 2109
- \mtc@hstrut ... 318, 1447, 1522, 2027, 2094
- \mtc@hstrutbox ..... 318
- \mtc@ifmtarg ..... 202, 237, 274, 300, 311
- \mtc@ixfix@level .. 3300, 3319, 3328–3330, 3336
- \mtc@level@abbrev ..... 2615, 2632, 2711
- \MTC@line ..... 1032, 1034
- \MTC@list ..... 949, 953, 1021, 1036
- \MTC@loop ..... 949, 1022
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof ..... 3073
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot ..... 3074
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc ..... 3072
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof ..... 3070
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot ..... 3071
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc ..... 3069
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof ..... 3076
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot ..... 3077
- \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc ..... 3075
- \mtc@maf ..... 4303, 4348
- \mtc@maf@long ..... 4303
- \mtc@maf@short ..... 4303
- \mtc@markboth 517, 612, 682, 750, 1345, 1418, 1493, 1938, 2003, 2070
- \mtc@mta@abbrev ..... 2597, 2632, 2711
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev ..... 3143, 3160
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev ..... 2728, 2746
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev ..... 2764, 2782
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev ..... 2882, 2916
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev ..... 3090, 3127
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev ..... 2951, 2970
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev ..... 3020, 3040
- \MTC@next ..... 880, 949, 1021
- \mtc@noX ..... 2987, 2989, 3040
- \mtc@onebackchap ..... 262
- \mtc@onebackchapter ..... 261
- \mtc@onebackpart ..... 261
- \mtc@onebacksect ..... 263, 291
- \mtc@onebacksection ..... 261
- \mtc@param ..... 1177
- \mtc@pgno ..... 430, 431, 647, 720, 788
- \mtc@pns@abbrev ..... 2951, 2970
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX ..... 2986
- \MTC@read ..... 1022, 1032, 1036
- \mtc@restorelofdepth ..... 3214, 4674
- \mtc@restorelotdepth ... 3247, 3259, 4674
- \mtc@restoretocdepth ... 3180, 3210, 3226, 3243, 4674
- \mtc@Rline ..... 227
- \mtc@rule .. 542, 613, 663, 2506, 2509, 2512
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev ..... 3020, 3040
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX ..... 3056
- \mtc@savelofdepth ..... 3213, 3220, 4674
- \mtc@savelotdepth ..... 3246, 3253, 4674
- \mtc@savetocdepth . 3180, 3204, 3237, 4674
- \mtc@schapter ..... 810
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter ..... 2584
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure ..... 2591
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph ..... 2588
- \mtc@sectlevel@section ..... 2585
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure ..... 2593
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph ..... 2589
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection ..... 2586
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection ..... 2587
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable ..... 2594
- \mtc@sectlevel@table ..... 2592
- \mtc@setform ..... 647, 2840
- \mtc@string .. 318, 1036, 1102, 1161, 1177, 1197, 1734, 1795, 1855, 2332, 2391, 2450, 4485
- \mtc@strut . 318, 647, 720, 788, 1384, 1461, 1536, 1972, 2042, 2109
- \mtc@strutbox ..... 318
- \mtc@sv@fakelistoffigures ..... 3807
- \mtc@sv@fakelistoftables ..... 3807
- \mtc@sv@faketableofcontents ..... 3807

- \mtc@sv@listoffigures ..... 3798
- \mtc@sv@listoftables ..... 3798
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth ..... 3194
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth ..... 3227
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents ..... 3798
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth ..... 3180, 3194, 3227
- \mtc@svchapter ..... 309
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth ..... 3194
- \mtc@svpart ..... 264, 1557
- \mtc@svsection ..... 297
- \mtc@svspart ..... 264
- \mtc@svss ..... 297
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth ..... 3227
- \MTC@test ..... 1034, 1036
- \mtc@tmp@name ..... 2632, 2711
- \mtc@tmpde@name ..... 3160
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name ..... 3127
- \mtc@tmpfm@name ..... 2916
- \mtc@tmppn@name ..... 2970, 3040
- \mtc@tmptf@name ..... 2746
- \mtc@tmpti@name ..... 2782
- \MTC@toc ..... 953, 1022, 1036
- \mtc@toks 318, 972, 1079, 1138, 1177, 1197,  
1673, 1770, 1830, 2274, 2369, 2428,  
2711, 2746, 2782, 3160
- \mtc@typetable@minilof ..... 2536
- \mtc@typetable@minilot ..... 2537
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc ..... 2535
- \mtc@typetable@partlof ..... 2533
- \mtc@typetable@partlot ..... 2534
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc ..... 2532
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof ..... 2539
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot ..... 2540
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc ..... 2538
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof ..... 2545
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot ..... 2546
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc ..... 2544
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof ..... 2542
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot ..... 2543
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc ..... 2541
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof ..... 2548
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot ..... 2549
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc ..... 2547
- \mtc@v 318, 632, 636, 702, 706, 770, 774, 1368,  
1436, 1515, 1953, 2019, 2086
- \mtc@verse ..... 586
- mtc@verse (environment) . 586, 639, 657, 709,  
730, 777, 798, 2840, 2855, 2870
- \mtc@While ..... 202, 227
- \mtc@WhileBody ..... 202
- \mtc@WhileCondition ..... 202
- \mtc@WhileNext ..... 202
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition ..... 202
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline 988, 1197, 1684, 2274
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine . 1644, 2257, 2352,  
2411
- \MTC@WriteContentsline . . 973, 1005, 1079,  
1138, 1177, 1674, 1698, 1770, 1830,  
2274, 2305, 2369, 2428
- \mtc@xifmtarg ..... 202
- \mtc@YN@F ..... 2561
- \mtc@YN@f ..... 2560
- \mtc@YN@FALSE ..... 2557
- \mtc@YN@false ..... 2556
- \mtc@YN@FAUX ..... 2559
- \mtc@YN@faux ..... 2558
- \mtc@YN@N ..... 2555
- \mtc@YN@n ..... 2554
- \mtc@YN@NO ..... 2553
- \mtc@YN@no ..... 2552
- \mtc@YN@NON ..... 2562
- \mtc@YN@non ..... 2563
- \mtc@YN@O ..... 2581
- \mtc@YN@o ..... 2582
- \mtc@YN@OFF ..... 2551
- \mtc@YN@off ..... 2550
- \mtc@YN@ON ..... 2566
- \mtc@YN@on ..... 2565
- \mtc@YN@OUI ..... 2579
- \mtc@YN@oui ..... 2580
- \mtc@YN@T ..... 2574
- \mtc@YN@t ..... 2573
- \mtc@YN@TRUE ..... 2572
- \mtc@YN@true ..... 2571
- \mtc@YN@TRUEV ..... 2578
- \mtc@YN@v ..... 2577
- \mtc@YN@VRAI ..... 2576
- \mtc@YN@vrai ..... 2575
- \mtc@YN@Y ..... 2570
- \mtc@YN@y ..... 2569
- \mtc@YN@YES ..... 2568
- \mtc@YN@yes ..... 2567
- \mtc@zrule 318, 639, 660, 709, 733, 777, 801,  
1377, 1398, 1450, 1472, 1525, 1547,  
1965, 1984, 2031, 2051, 2098, 2119
- \mtcaddchapter ..... 1, 12,  
174, 305, 307, 309, 311, 348, 349, 352,  
353, 358, 359, 407, 1495, 1563, 1567,  
1573, 2208, 2247, 2252, 2257, 2292,  
2294, 2312, 2314, 2324, 4636
- \mtcaddpart ..... 1, 274, 1555, 1783, 4636
- \mtcaddsection . . 1, 174, 300, 513, 515, 517,  
556–559, 564, 565, 645–648, 653, 654,  
699, 915, 4636
- \mtcArabTok ..... 4845–4848, 4850–4852,  
4854–4856
- \mtcdotsep ..... 2825, 2843
- \mtcEnglishIIpart ..... 5370, 5379–5381

- \mtcfixglossary . 1, 3264, 3269, 3271, 3278, 4680
- \mtcfixindex . . 1, 404, 696, 3304, 3309, 3311, 3318, 4681
- \mtcfont . . . . . 1, 563, 613, 1045, 4508
- \mtcFrenchIIpart . . 5601, 5613, 5616, 5619
- \mtcgapafterheads 15, 188, 193, 1270, 1284, 1298, 4381
- \mtcgapbeforeheads 15, 187, 192, 1270, 1284, 1298, 4381
- \mtchideinmainlof . . . . . 142
- mtchideinmainlof (environment) 1, 3194, 4668
- \mtchideinmainlot . . . . . 150, 1701, 1747
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) 1, 3227, 4668
- mtchideinmaintoc (environment) 1, 3180, 4668
- \mtcindent . 9, 206, 542, 586, 639, 709, 777, 1044, 1314, 2066, 4371
- \mtcloadmlo . . 3353, 4549, 5219, 5230, 5491, 5500, 5871, 5884, 5896, 5908, 5917, 5929, 5941, 5950, 6146, 6158, 6170, 6182, 6195, 6391, 6849, 6859, 6867, 6875, 6883, 6891, 7115
- \mtcloadrmarg . . . . . 2816
- mtcmess.sty . . . . . 215
- \mtcname . . . . . 960, 991
- mtcoff . . . . . 51, 54
- mtcoff.sty . . . . . 215
- \mtcoffwarn@false . . . . . 4619
- \mtcoffwarn@true . . 4385, 4391, 4397, 4407, 4413, 4419, 4428, 4434, 4440, 4636, 4645, 4654, 4682, 4687, 4692
- \mtcPackage . . . . . 198
- \mtcPackageError . . 2602, 2619, 2719, 2733, 2755, 2769, 2791, 2888, 2904, 2923, 2958, 2977, 3027, 3046, 3096, 3113, 3135, 3148, 3163, 3174, 3183, 3189, 3198, 3206, 3216, 3222, 3231, 3239, 3249, 3255, 3267, 3292, 3307, 3332, 3345, 3358, 3367, 3397, 4275, 4698
- \mtcPackageInfo . . . . . 2, 135, 178, 184, 186, 188, 268, 281, 283, 289, 308, 332, 343, 345, 607, 677, 745, 898, 915, 932, 961, 965, 994, 998, 1028, 1068, 1072, 1095, 1127, 1131, 1154, 1340, 1413, 1488, 1588, 1605, 1622, 1648, 1652, 1662, 1666, 1725, 1759, 1763, 1786, 1819, 1823, 1846, 1932, 1998, 2065, 2201, 2218, 2235, 2263, 2267, 2294, 2298, 2325, 2358, 2362, 2384, 2417, 2421, 2443, 2467, 2714, 2749, 2785, 2918, 2990, 2993, 3060, 3063, 3130, 3169, 3343, 3356, 3594, 3604, 3610, 3616, 3622, 3628, 3634, 3704, 3721, 3730, 4268, 4304, 4698, 4715
- \mtcPackageWarning . 544, 1024, 1091, 1150, 1217, 1721, 1782, 1842, 1880, 2321, 2380, 2439, 4386, 4392, 4398, 4408, 4414, 4420, 4429, 4435, 4441, 4637, 4646, 4655, 4683, 4688, 4693, 4698
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine . . . . . 265, 285, 349, 359, 363, 3262, 3270, 3302, 3310, 3392, 3599, 3640, 3647, 3663, 3678, 3694, 3711, 3716, 3739, 3750, 3754, 3767, 3771, 3785, 3789, 3826, 3838, 3846, 3854, 3864, 3872, 3880, 3890, 3898, 3906, 3915, 3923, 3931, 3941, 3949, 3957, 3967, 3975, 3983, 3993, 4002, 4011, 4022, 4031, 4040, 4051, 4060, 4069, 4083, 4091, 4099, 4109, 4117, 4125, 4133, 4141, 4149, 4157, 4165, 4173, 4181, 4189, 4197, 4204, 4209, 4214, 4219, 4224, 4229, 4234, 4239, 4244, 4249, 4254, 4259, 4264, 4621, 4698
- \mtcpagenumbers . 381, 430, 449, 1058, 4568
- \mtcPfont . . . . . 1, 563, 1048, 4508
- \mtcpnumwidth . . . . . 2807, 2841
- \mtcprepare . . . . . 1, 2467, 4484
- \mtcprepare@ . . . . . 2467
- \mtcrule . . . . . 2505, 4550
- \mtcsecondpartfalse 108, 113, 119, 127, 4617
- \mtcsecondparttrue . . . . . 111, 117, 124
- \mtcselectlanguage . . . . . 1, 174, 3340, 3414, 4548, 4773, 4775, 4779, 4800, 4821, 4879, 4900, 4904, 4908, 5062, 5083, 5178, 5182, 5187, 5192, 5410, 5460, 5554, 5631, 5635, 5639, 6014, 6041, 6063, 6067, 6215, 6272, 6369, 6430, 6434, 6454, 6458, 6462, 6622, 7136, 7140, 7144, 7148, 7201, 7228
- \mtcsetdepth 1, 2150, 2167, 2342, 2406, 3142, 3149, 3164, 3170, 3175, 3178, 4530
- \mtcsetfeature . . . 1, 497, 3088, 3097, 3114, 3131, 3136, 4530
- \mtcsetfont . . . . . 1, 1608, 1611, 1614, 1654, 1657, 1660, 2040, 2041, 2151–2155, 2157–2160, 2340, 2595, 2596, 2603, 2620, 2715, 2720, 4530
- \mtcsetformat . 1, 647, 720, 788, 2835, 2880, 2889, 2905, 2919, 2924, 4530
- \mtcsetpagenumber@ . . . . . 2950
- \mtcsetpagenumbers . . 1, 2932, 2959, 2978, 4530
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ . . . . . 2932, 2950
- \mtcsetrules . . . . 1, 3001, 3028, 3047, 4530
- \mtcsetrules@ . . . . . 3001, 3019
- \mtcsetttitle 1, 174, 2048, 2762, 2763, 2770, 2786, 2792, 4530



- `\mtcsettitlefont` 1, 2046, 2726, 2727, 2734, 2750, 4530  
`\mtcSfont` ..... 1, 563, 1046, 4508  
`\mtcskip` ..... 1, 9, 312, 314, 377, 379, 414, 416, 439, 441, 519, 523, 583, 606, 610, 672, 704, 726, 820, 886, 916, 935, 961, 987, 989, 996, 1150, 1152, 1377, 2166, 2405, 4446  
`\mtcskipamount` ..... 1, 9, 4371  
`\mtcSPfont` ..... 1, 563, 1048, 4508  
`\mtcSSfont` ..... 1, 563, 1047, 4508  
`\mtcSSSfont` ..... 1, 563, 1048, 4508  
`\mtcsv@listoffigures` ..... 291  
`\mtcsv@listoftables` ..... 291  
`\mtcsv@tableofcontents` ..... 291  
`\mtctitle` . 1, 612, 613, 683, 751, 1318, 4275, 4773, 4790, 4811, 4832, 4850, 4868, 4890, 4919, 4936, 4953, 4971, 4987, 5003, 5019, 5035, 5052, 5073, 5100, 5130, 5152, 5168, 5203, 5241, 5260, 5277, 5300, 5317, 5334, 5357, 5383, 5400, 5421, 5441, 5472, 5510, 5527, 5544, 5565, 5588, 5621, 5650, 5665, 5682, 5697, 5715, 5741, 5781, 5821, 5853, 5963, 5992, 6031, 6053, 6078, 6095, 6113, 6131, 6205, 6226, 6243, 6262, 6284, 6301, 6325, 6342, 6359, 6380, 6403, 6420, 6444, 6473, 6488, 6507, 6523, 6538, 6554, 6575, 6594, 6612, 6633, 6650, 6668, 6686, 6701, 6727, 6767, 6808, 6834, 6902, 6919, 6936, 6957, 6978, 6995, 7016, 7031, 7047, 7068, 7085, 7102, 7126, 7163, 7191, 7218, 7239, 7254, 7269, 7284  
`\mtctocmarg` ..... 2817, 2842  
`\mtifont` ..... 1, 563, 613, 683, 751, 4508  
`\mz` ..... 6698, 6699, 6702, 6703, 6706, 6707
- N**
- `\n@mti` .... 575, 613, 683, 751, 895, 912, 929  
`\n@pti` .. 1260, 1267, 1351, 1424, 1499, 1585, 1602, 1619  
`\n@sti` .. 1900, 1938, 2005, 2072, 2198, 2215, 2232  
`naustrian.mld` ..... **475**  
`needspace` ..... **53**  
`\NeedsTeXFormat` ..... 2, 4367, 4700, 4711  
`\newblock` ..... 2119, 2121, 2127, 2128  
`\newbox` ..... 321, 325  
`\newcommand` . 274, 300, 311, 549, 1222, 1884, 2068, 2145, 2372, 2383, 2596, 2727, 2763, 2881, 2932, 2950, 3001, 3019, 3089, 3142, 3180, 3181, 3213, 3214, 3246, 3247, 3279, 3319, 3377, 4450–4452, 4636, 4645, 4654, 4680, 4681, 4701, 4703, 4705, 4707  
`\newcounter` . 513, 515, 547, 553, 1206, 1212, 1871, 1883, 1887  
`\newif` ..... 35–75, 77, 79, 81, 83, 85, 87–108, 130, 133, 134, 136, 176, 227–229, 291, 334, 367, 497, 2595, 2726, 2762, 2880, 2930, 2931, 2999, 3000, 3088, 3141, 3179, 3194, 3227, 3278, 3318, 3340, 3394, 3411, 3589–3592, 4613–4617, 4619  
`\newlength` ..... 9, 1231, 1889  
`\newread` ..... 318, 361  
`\newwrite` ..... 8, 506  
`newzealand.mld` ..... **475**  
`ngerman.mld` ..... **475**  
`ngermanb.mld` ..... **475**  
`ngermanb2.mld` ..... **476**  
`nocheckfiles` ..... **30, 49**  
`\nocite` ..... 398, 690  
`nohints` ..... **48**  
`\noindent` .. 629, 699, 767, 1366, 1439, 1514, 1954, 2020, 2087  
`nolistfiles` ..... **48**  
`\nomlfpagenumbers` 417, 430, 436, 1062, 4568  
`\nomlfrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`\nomltpagenumbers` 423, 430, 436, 442, 1063, 4568  
`\nomltrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`\nomtcpagenumbers` .. 381, 430, 1061, 1316, 4568  
`\nomtcrule` ..... 1060, 1315, 2505, 4550  
`\noopsort` ..... 399, 691  
`\noplfpagenumbers` ..... 417, 441, 4568  
`\noplfrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`\nopltpagenumbers` ..... 423, 447, 4568  
`\nopltrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`\noptcpagenumbers` ..... 403, 435, 4568  
`\noptcrule` ..... 1059, 2505, 4550  
`\normalcolor` ..... 846  
`\normalfont` ..... 846, 1327, 1337  
`\normalsize` .. 1247–1249, 1608, 1611, 1614, 1654, 1657, 1660, 2035, 2036, 2040, 2041, 2044, 2045  
`norsk.mld` ..... **476**  
`norsk2.mld` ..... **477**  
`\noslfpagenumbers` ..... 417, 439, 4568  
`\noslfrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`\nosltpagenumbers` ..... 423, 445, 4568  
`\nosltrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`\nostcpagenumbers` ..... 393, 433, 4568  
`\ostcrule` ..... 2505, 4550  
`notoccite` ..... **47, 241**  
`\numberline` ..... 1089, 2146

- \nun . . . . . 5506, 5510, 5514, 5957, 5964, 5971  
 nynorsk.mld . . . . . **478**  
 nynorsk2.mld . . . . . **478**
- O**
- \oe . . . . . 1936, 1966  
 \openin . . . . . 1022, 1089, 1148  
 \openout . . . . . 255,  
     259, 332, 507, 960, 991, 1036, 1067,  
     1102, 1126, 1161, 1657, 1671, 1744,  
     1768, 1804, 1828, 1864, 2272, 2290,  
     2341, 2367, 2400, 2426, 2459, 4308
- P**
- \PackageError . . . . . 4698  
 \PackageInfo . . . . . 4698  
 \PackageWarning . . . . . 4698  
 \PackageWarningNoLine . . . . . 4698  
 \pagebreak . . . 662, 734, 802, 1401, 1475, 1550,  
     1987, 2054, 2122  
 \pagenumbering . . . . . 2204, 2210  
 \pageref . . . . . 2450  
 \pagestyle . . . . . 1403  
 \paragraph 900, 922, 942, 970, 973, 1174, 1196,  
     1215, 1248, 1674, 2274  
 \paragraph@mtcck . . . . . 2647  
 \parbox . . . . . 1371, 2388  
 \parsep . . . . . 586, 1319, 1916  
 \parskip . . . 9, 1319, 1360, 1433, 1508, 1948,  
     2014, 2081  
 part . . . . . **238**  
 \part . . . . . 1, 183,  
     186, 191, 264, 268, 272, 278, 518, 522,  
     605, 812, 815, 928, 985, 1074, 1202,  
     1255, 1554, 1570, 1583, 1604, 1644,  
     1650, 1755, 1782, 1815, 3268, 3282,  
     3308, 3322, 3742, 4353  
 \part@mtcck . . . 2642, 2669, 2677, 2683, 2689,  
     2698, 2705  
 \partbegin . . . 1, 1285, 1557, 1745, 1805, 1865,  
     4459  
 \partend . . . . 1557, 1734, 1795, 1855, 4459  
 \partlof . . . . . 1, 519,  
     606, 814, 930, 988, 1076, 1204, 1260,  
     1330, 1403, 3847, 3925, 4003, 4466  
 \partlof@ . . . . . 859, 1403, 1404  
 \partlof@mtcck . . . . . 2636, 2660  
 partlofdepth . . . . . **288, 298**  
 \partlot 1, 519, 606, 815, 931, 990, 1077, 1260,  
     1330, 1477, 3855, 3933, 4012, 4466  
 \partlot@ . . . . . 859, 1477, 1478  
 \partlot@mtcck . . . . . 2639, 2664  
 partlotdepth . . . . . **288, 301**  
 \partopsep . . . . . 590, 1319, 1915
- \parttoc . . . . . 1,  
     30, 184, 189, 194, 269, 273, 279, 519,  
     606, 813, 929, 986, 1075, 1203, 1256,  
     1260, 1330, 1557, 1571, 1584, 1606,  
     1609, 1612, 1615, 1652, 1655, 1658,  
     1661, 3839, 3917, 3994, 4466  
 \parttoc@ . . . . . 859, 1330, 1331  
 \parttoc@mtcck . . . . . 2633, 2654  
 parttocdepth . . . . . **30, 289, 295**  
 \pchapter . . . . . 1552, 1674, 4485  
 \pfill . . . . . 295, 501  
 placeins . . . . . **48, 49, 237**  
 \PLF@ . . . . . 1791, 1795  
 \PLF@contentsline . . . . . 1755, 1794, 1795  
 \PLF@explist . . . . . 1753, 1779  
 \PLF@line . . . . . 1789, 1791  
 \PLF@list . . . . . 1750, 1753, 1779, 1795  
 \PLF@lof . . . . . 1753, 1780, 1795  
 \PLF@loop . . . . . 1750, 1780  
 \PLF@next . . . . . 1574, 1750, 1779  
 \plf@pgno . . . . . 440, 441, 1461  
 \PLF@read . . . . . 1780, 1789, 1795  
 \plf@rule . . . . . 542, 1436, 1472, 2514, 2517, 2520  
 \plf@setform . . . . . 1461, 2850  
 \PLF@test . . . . . 1791, 1793, 1795  
 \PLF@WriteContentsLine . . . . . 1755  
 \plfdotsep . . . . . 2825, 2853, 2873, 2878  
 \plffont . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1433, 1642, 4496  
 \plfname . . . . . 1755, 1758  
 \plfpagenumbers . . . . . 417, 440, 449, 4568  
 \plfpnumwidth . . . . . 2807, 2851, 2871, 2876  
 \plfrule . . . . . 2505, 4550  
 \plfsfont . . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1643, 4496  
 \plftitle . . . . . 1,  
     1418, 1424, 1436, 4275, 4773, 4787,  
     4808, 4829, 4847, 4865, 4887, 4916,  
     4933, 4950, 4968, 4984, 5000, 5016,  
     5032, 5049, 5070, 5093, 5125, 5149,  
     5165, 5200, 5238, 5257, 5274, 5297,  
     5314, 5331, 5350, 5380, 5397, 5418,  
     5434, 5467, 5507, 5524, 5541, 5562,  
     5581, 5614, 5647, 5662, 5679, 5694,  
     5712, 5733, 5737, 5773, 5813, 5850,  
     5958, 5985, 6028, 6050, 6075, 6092,  
     6110, 6128, 6202, 6203, 6223, 6240,  
     6259, 6281, 6298, 6322, 6339, 6356,  
     6377, 6400, 6417, 6441, 6470, 6485,  
     6504, 6520, 6543, 6559, 6572, 6591,  
     6609, 6630, 6647, 6665, 6698, 6719,  
     6759, 6801, 6831, 6899, 6916, 6933,  
     6953, 6975, 6992, 7013, 7028, 7044,  
     7065, 7082, 7099, 7123, 7170, 7188,  
     7215, 7236, 7251, 7266, 7281  
 \plftocrmarg . . . . . 2816, 2852, 2872, 2877

- \PLT@ ..... 1851, 1855
- \PLT@contentsline ..... 1815, 1854, 1855
- \PLT@explist ..... 1813, 1839
- \PLT@line ..... 1849, 1851
- \PLT@list ..... 1810, 1813, 1839, 1855
- \PLT@loop ..... 1810, 1840
- \PLT@lot ..... 1813, 1840, 1855
- \PLT@next ..... 1578, 1810, 1839, 2191
- \plt@pgno ..... 446, 447, 1536
- \PLT@read ..... 1840, 1849, 1855
- \plt@rule . 542, 1515, 1548, 2523, 2526, 2529
- \plt@setform ..... 1536, 2865
- \PLT@test ..... 1851, 1853, 1855
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine ..... 1815
- \pltdotsep ..... 2825, 2868
- \pltfont ... 1, 1233, 1246, 1508, 1644, 4496
- \pltname ..... 1815, 1818
- \pltpagenumbers ..... 423, 446, 449, 4568
- \pltptnumwidth ..... 2807, 2866
- \pltrule ..... 2505, 4550
- \pltSfont ..... 1, 1233, 1246, 1645, 4496
- \plttitle ..... 1, 1493, 1499, 1515, 4275, 4773, 4788, 4809, 4830, 4848, 4866, 4888, 4917, 4934, 4951, 4969, 4985, 5001, 5017, 5033, 5050, 5071, 5096, 5127, 5150, 5166, 5201, 5239, 5258, 5275, 5298, 5315, 5332, 5353, 5381, 5398, 5419, 5437, 5469, 5508, 5525, 5542, 5563, 5584, 5617, 5648, 5663, 5680, 5695, 5713, 5777, 5817, 5851, 5960, 5988, 6029, 6051, 6076, 6093, 6111, 6129, 6224, 6241, 6260, 6282, 6299, 6323, 6340, 6357, 6378, 6401, 6418, 6442, 6471, 6486, 6505, 6521, 6544, 6560, 6573, 6592, 6610, 6631, 6648, 6666, 6683, 6684, 6699, 6723, 6763, 6804, 6832, 6900, 6917, 6934, 6955, 6976, 6993, 7014, 7029, 7045, 7066, 7083, 7100, 7124, 7172, 7189, 7216, 7237, 7252, 7267, 7282
- \plttocmarg ..... 2816, 2867
- pmk ..... **217**
- polish.mld ..... **479**
- polish2.mld ..... **479**
- polski.mld ..... **480**
- portuges.mld ..... **480**
- portuguese.mld ..... **480**
- \printindex ..... 1, 403, 695
- \ProcessOptions ..... 4293
- \ProcessOptions\* ..... 4293
- \protect ..... 1
- \providecommand ... 1845, 2033, 2034, 2042, 2043, 4275
- \ProvidesFile . 4364, 4774, 4778, 4782, 4799, 4803, 4820, 4824, 4841, 4859, 4878, 4882, 4899, 4903, 4907, 4911, 4928, 4945, 4962, 4980, 4996, 5012, 5028, 5044, 5061, 5065, 5082, 5086, 5119, 5145, 5161, 5177, 5181, 5185, 5190, 5195, 5212, 5222, 5233, 5250, 5269, 5286, 5309, 5326, 5343, 5366, 5392, 5409, 5413, 5430, 5458, 5463, 5485, 5494, 5503, 5519, 5536, 5553, 5557, 5574, 5597, 5630, 5634, 5638, 5642, 5659, 5674, 5691, 5706, 5724, 5764, 5804, 5844, 5862, 5874, 5887, 5899, 5911, 5920, 5932, 5944, 5953, 5978, 6013, 6017, 6040, 6044, 6062, 6066, 6070, 6087, 6104, 6122, 6140, 6149, 6161, 6173, 6185, 6198, 6214, 6218, 6235, 6252, 6271, 6275, 6293, 6310, 6317, 6334, 6351, 6368, 6372, 6389, 6395, 6412, 6429, 6433, 6437, 6453, 6457, 6461, 6465, 6482, 6497, 6516, 6532, 6551, 6567, 6584, 6603, 6621, 6625, 6642, 6659, 6677, 6695, 6710, 6750, 6790, 6827, 6843, 6852, 6862, 6870, 6878, 6886, 6894, 6911, 6928, 6945, 6970, 6987, 7004, 7025, 7040, 7056, 7077, 7094, 7111, 7118, 7135, 7139, 7143, 7147, 7151, 7158, 7182, 7200, 7204, 7211, 7227, 7231, 7248, 7263, 7278
- \ProvidesPackage ..... 2, 4367, 4699, 4712
- \ps@chapterverso ..... 1826, 1835
- \ps@empty ..... 1826, 1835
- \psect ..... 1552, 4485
- ptc ..... **247, 289, 302**
- \PTC@ ..... 1730, 1734
- \PTC@contentsline ..... 1644, 1733, 1734
- \PTC@explist ..... 1642, 1718
- \PTC@line ..... 1728, 1730
- \PTC@list ..... 1639, 1642, 1718, 1734
- \PTC@loop ..... 1639, 1719
- \PTC@next ..... 1570, 1639, 1718
- \ptc@pgno ..... 434, 435, 1384
- \PTC@read ..... 1719, 1728, 1734
- \ptc@rule 1228, 1368, 1398, 1547, 2505, 2508, 2511
- \ptc@setform ..... 1384, 2835
- \ptc@spart ..... 1557
- \PTC@test ..... 1730, 1732
- \PTC@toc ..... 1642, 1719, 1734
- \ptc@verse ..... 1319
- ptc@verse (environment) ... 1319, 1382, 1384, 1455, 1461, 1530, 1536, 2835, 2850, 2865

- \ptcCfont . . . . . 1, 1246, 4496
  - \ptcdotsep . . . . . 2825, 2838
  - \ptcfont . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1360, 1638–1645, 4496
  - \ptcindent . . 1231, 1319, 1377, 1450, 1525, 4375
  - \ptcname . . . . . 1644, 1661
  - \ptcpagenumbers . . . . 403, 434, 449, 4568
  - \ptcPfont . . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1640, 4496
  - \ptcpnumwidth . . . . . 2807, 2836
  - \ptcrule . . . . . 2505, 4550
  - \ptcSfont . . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 4496
  - \ptcSPfont . . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1641, 4496
  - \ptcSSfont . . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1638, 4496
  - \ptcSSSfont . . . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1639, 4496
  - \ptctitle . . . . . 1, 1345, 1351, 1368, 4275, 4773, 4786, 4807, 4828, 4846, 4864, 4886, 4915, 4932, 4949, 4967, 4983, 4999, 5015, 5031, 5048, 5069, 5091, 5123, 5148, 5164, 5199, 5237, 5256, 5273, 5296, 5313, 5330, 5347, 5379, 5396, 5417, 5433, 5466, 5506, 5523, 5540, 5561, 5578, 5611, 5646, 5661, 5678, 5693, 5711, 5730, 5770, 5810, 5849, 5956, 5982, 6027, 6049, 6074, 6091, 6109, 6127, 6201, 6222, 6239, 6258, 6280, 6297, 6321, 6338, 6355, 6376, 6399, 6416, 6440, 6469, 6484, 6503, 6519, 6542, 6558, 6571, 6590, 6608, 6629, 6646, 6664, 6682, 6697, 6716, 6756, 6795, 6798, 6830, 6898, 6915, 6932, 6951, 6974, 6991, 7009, 7011, 7027, 7043, 7061, 7063, 7081, 7098, 7122, 7169, 7187, 7214, 7235, 7250, 7265, 7280
  - \ptctocmarg . . . . . 2816, 2837
  - \ptifont . . 1, 1233, 1246, 1270, 1284, 1298, 1368, 1436, 1515, 4496
- Q**
- \qaf . . . . . 4865, 4866, 4869, 4870, 4873, 4874
  - \quad . . . . . 1330, 2415, 2425, 2430, 2440
  - quotchap . . . . . **49, 71, 242, 385**
  - \qva . . . . . 5297, 5301, 5305, 6028, 6032, 6036
- R**
- \r@mti . . . . 575, 613, 683, 751, 895, 912, 929
  - \r@pti . . 1260, 1284, 1351, 1424, 1499, 1585, 1602, 1619
  - \r@sti . . 1900, 1938, 2005, 2072, 2198, 2215, 2232
  - \ra . . . . . 4864, 4868, 4872, 5506, 5510, 5514
  - \raggedbottom . . . . . 795, 1050
  - \raggedright 623, 693, 761, 1278, 1337, 1360, 1433, 1508, 1853, 1948, 2014, 2081, 2173
  - \re . . . . . 5296, 5300, 5304, 6027, 6031, 6035
  - \read . 230, 318, 1032, 1098, 1157, 1729, 1790, 1850, 2329, 2388, 2447
  - README . . . . . **217**
  - \ref . . . . . 1935, 2187, 2450–2454, 2457, 2460
  - \refstepcounter . . . . . 2146, 4739
  - \removelastskip . . . . . 12
  - \renewcommand . . . . . 187, 188, 192, 193, 790, 792, 1045–1047, 1318, 1382, 1387, 1401, 1410, 1411, 1852, 2035, 2036, 2044, 2045, 2139, 4717
  - report . . . . . **248, 250**
  - \RequirePackage . . 2, 197, 4294, 4300, 4370, 4714
  - \reset@font 358, 625, 632, 636, 695, 702, 706, 763, 770, 774, 1181, 1186, 1199, 1201, 1362, 1370, 1374, 1435, 1442, 1446, 1510, 1517, 1521, 1950, 1958, 1962, 2016, 2023, 2028, 2083, 2090, 2095
  - \resh . . . . 5958–5960, 5965–5967, 5972–5974
  - \rightmargin . 595, 641, 711, 779, 1328, 1379, 1452, 1527, 1920, 1967, 2033, 2100
  - \rmfamily . . . . 563, 564, 573, 574, 790, 1234, 1235, 1244, 1247–1249, 1258, 1608, 1654, 1890, 1891, 1899, 2044, 2045, 2151–2155, 2157–2160
  - rmk . . . . . **218**
  - \Roman . . . 5349, 5352, 5355, 5378, 5580, 5583, 5586, 5610
  - romanian.mld . . . . . **481**
  - romanian2.mld . . . . . **481**
  - romanian3.mld . . . . . **482**
  - romannum . . . . . **49, 71, 243, 385**
  - \rs . . . . . 5296, 5300, 5304, 6027, 6031, 6035
  - \ru . . . . . 2372, 2396
  - rubber@rubber . . . . . **57**
  - \rule . . . . . 322, 326, 330, 666, 1229, 1354, 1363, 1888, 2511–2513, 2520–2522, 2529–2531
  - russian-cca.mld . . . . . **486**
  - russian-cca.mlo . . . . . **486**
  - russian-ccal.mld . . . . . **487**
  - russian-ccal.mlo . . . . . **487**
  - russian-lh.mld . . . . . **487**
  - russian-lh.mlo . . . . . **487**
  - russian-lhcyralt.mld . . . . . **488**
  - russian-lhcyralt.mlo . . . . . **488**
  - russian-lhcyrkoi.mld . . . . . **488**
  - russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo . . . . . **488**
  - russian-lhcyrwin.mld . . . . . **489**
  - russian-lhcyrwin.mlo . . . . . **489**

- russian.mld ..... **483**  
 russian2m.mld ..... **483**  
 russian2o.mld ..... **484**  
 russianb.mld ..... **485**  
 russianc.mld ..... **486**
- S**
- samepage ..... **294, 297, 300**  
 samepage (environment) ..... 613, 657,  
     683, 730, 751, 798, 1351, 1398, 1424,  
     1472, 1499, 1547, 1938, 1984, 2005,  
     2051, 2072, 2119  
 samin.mld ..... **489**  
 \scan@allowedtrue ..... 292, 498  
 \schapter ..... 1, 2123  
 scottish.mld ..... **490**  
 scrartcl ..... **48**  
 scrbook ..... **48, 119**  
 screprt ..... **48**  
 \scshape . 2035, 2036, 2040, 2041, 2044–2046  
 \sectbegin . . 2175, 2332, 2391, 2450, 4459  
 \sectend . . . 2175, 2332, 2391, 2450, 4459  
 section ..... **49, 238, 239**  
 \section . 1, 281, 297, 815, 973, 1674, 2136,  
     2257, 2352, 2411, 3742, 3776, 4359  
 \section@mtcck . . . 2644, 2691, 2700, 2707  
 \sectionfont ..... 1853  
 \sectlof ..... 1, 523,  
     583, 610, 672, 704, 726, 820, 887, 916,  
     935, 961, 996, 1015, 1988, 3828, 3899,  
     3977, 4061, 4478  
 \sectlof@ ..... 869, 1988, 1989  
 \sectlof@mtcck ..... 2638, 2697  
 sectlofdepth ..... **313, 320**  
 \sectlot ..... 1, 523, 583, 610,  
     672, 704, 726, 1016, 1690, 1710, 2055,  
     3828, 3907, 3985, 4070, 4478  
 \sectlot@ ..... 869, 2055, 2056  
 \sectlot@mtcck ..... 2641, 2704  
 sectlotdepth ..... **313, 323**  
 sectsty ..... **49, 66, 237, 242, 384**  
 \secttoc ..... 1, 523, 583,  
     610, 672, 704, 726, 819, 885, 916, 933,  
     934, 960, 995, 1014, 1922, 2348, 2357,  
     3891, 3969, 4052, 4478  
 \secttoc@ ..... 869, 1922, 1923  
 \secttoc@mtcck ..... 2635, 2688  
 secttocdepth ..... **30, 313, 317**  
 \seen 4864, 4868, 4872, 5506–5508, 5510–5512,  
     5514–5516  
 \selectlanguage ..... 6314, 7155, 7208  
 serbian.mld ..... **490**  
 serbianc.mld ..... **491**
- \setcounter 1, 1206, 1212, 1570, 1574, 1578,  
     1871, 3160, 3180, 3194, 3227, 3378  
 \setvruler ..... 180  
 \sf ..... 792, 1047  
 \sffamily ..... 1330, 1332, 1339, 1851  
 sfheaders ..... **49, 71, 243, 386**  
 \sh ..... 5148, 5152, 5156  
 \sheen . . . 4865, 4869, 4873, 5507, 5511, 5515  
 \shin . . . . 5958, 5960, 5965, 5967, 5972, 5974  
 shorttext ..... **49, 55**  
 \sistx@n ..... 318  
 \SLF@ ..... 2389, 2391  
 \SLF@contentsline ..... 2352, 2391  
 \SLF@explist ..... 2350, 2377  
 \SLF@line ..... 2387  
 \SLF@list ..... 2347, 2350, 2377, 2391  
 \SLF@lof ..... 2350, 2378, 2391  
 \SLF@loop ..... 2347, 2378  
 \SLF@next ..... 2187, 2347, 2377  
 \slf@pgno ..... 438, 439, 2042  
 \SLF@read ..... 2378, 2387, 2391  
 \slf@rule . 542, 2019, 2052, 2516, 2519, 2522  
 \slf@setform ..... 2042, 2860  
 \SLF@test ..... 2387, 2391  
 \slfdotsep ..... 2825, 2863  
 \slffont ..... 1, 1890, 2014, 4519  
 \slflotrmarg ..... 2816  
 \slfname ..... 2352, 2357  
 \slfpagenumbers . . . . 417, 438, 449, 4568  
 \slfpnumwidth ..... 2807, 2861  
 \slfrule ..... 2505, 4550  
 \slfSfont ..... 1, 1890, 4519  
 \slftitle ..... 1, 2003,  
     2005, 2019, 4275, 4773, 4795, 4816,  
     4837, 4855, 4873, 4895, 4924, 4941,  
     4958, 4976, 4992, 5008, 5024, 5040,  
     5057, 5078, 5111, 5139, 5157, 5173,  
     5208, 5246, 5265, 5282, 5305, 5322,  
     5339, 5362, 5388, 5405, 5426, 5450,  
     5479, 5515, 5532, 5549, 5570, 5593,  
     5626, 5655, 5670, 5687, 5702, 5720,  
     5755, 5759, 5795, 5835, 5858, 5972,  
     6005, 6036, 6058, 6083, 6100, 6118,  
     6136, 6210, 6211, 6231, 6248, 6267,  
     6289, 6306, 6330, 6347, 6364, 6385,  
     6408, 6425, 6449, 6478, 6493, 6512,  
     6528, 6547, 6563, 6580, 6599, 6617,  
     6638, 6655, 6673, 6706, 6741, 6781,  
     6819, 6839, 6907, 6924, 6941, 6965,  
     6983, 7000, 7021, 7036, 7052, 7073,  
     7090, 7107, 7131, 7176, 7196, 7223,  
     7244, 7259, 7274, 7289  
 \slftocrmarg ..... 2821, 2862  
 \sloppy ..... 816, 1078

- slovak.mld ..... **491**
- slovene.mld ..... **492**
- \slshape ..... 574, 2152, 2154, 2157, 2159
- \SLT@ ..... 2448, 2450
- \SLT@contentsline ..... 2411, 2450
- \SLT@explist ..... 2409, 2436
- \SLT@line ..... 2446
- \SLT@list ..... 2406, 2409, 2436, 2450
- \SLT@loop ..... 2406, 2437
- \SLT@lot ..... 2409, 2437, 2450
- \SLT@next ..... 2194, 2406, 2436
- \slt@pgno ..... 444, 445, 2109
- \SLT@read ..... 2437, 2446, 2450
- \slt@rule . 542, 2088, 2120, 2525, 2528, 2531
- \slt@setform ..... 2109, 2875
- \SLT@test ..... 2446, 2450
- \sltdotsep ..... 2825
- \sltfont ..... 1, 1890, 2081, 4519
- \sltlotrmarg ..... 2816
- \sltname ..... 2411, 2416
- \sltpagenumbers ..... 423, 444, 449, 4568
- \sltpnumwidth ..... 2807
- \sltrule ..... 2505, 4550
- \sltSfont ..... 1, 1890, 4519
- \sltttitle ..... 1, 2070, 2072, 2086,
  - 4275, 4773, 4796, 4817, 4838, 4856,
  - 4874, 4896, 4925, 4942, 4959, 4977,
  - 4993, 5009, 5025, 5041, 5058, 5079,
  - 5114, 5141, 5158, 5174, 5209, 5247,
  - 5266, 5283, 5306, 5323, 5340, 5363,
  - 5389, 5406, 5427, 5453, 5481, 5516,
  - 5533, 5550, 5571, 5594, 5627, 5656,
  - 5671, 5688, 5703, 5721, 5799, 5839,
  - 5859, 5974, 6008, 6037, 6059, 6084,
  - 6101, 6119, 6137, 6232, 6249, 6268,
  - 6290, 6307, 6331, 6348, 6365, 6386,
  - 6409, 6426, 6450, 6479, 6494, 6513,
  - 6529, 6548, 6564, 6581, 6600, 6618,
  - 6639, 6656, 6674, 6691, 6692, 6707,
  - 6745, 6785, 6822, 6840, 6908, 6925,
  - 6942, 6967, 6984, 7001, 7022, 7037,
  - 7053, 7074, 7091, 7108, 7132, 7178,
  - 7197, 7224, 7245, 7260, 7275, 7290
- \slttocrmarg ..... 2824
- spanish.mld ..... **432, 492**
- spanish2.mld ..... **493**
- spanish3.mld ..... **494**
- spanish4.mld ..... **494**
- \spart ..... 1
- \star ..... 1382, 1387
- \starchapter ..... 880, 991, 1698
- \starparagraph ..... 1005, 1698, 2305
- \starpart ..... 1659
- \starsection ..... 1005, 1698, 2136, 2290
- \starsubparagraph ..... 1005, 1698, 2305
- \starsubsection ..... 1005, 1698, 2305
- \starsubsubsection ..... 1005, 1698, 2305
- stc ..... **249, 313**
- \STC@ ..... 2330, 2332
- \STC@contentsline ..... 2257, 2332
- \STC@explist ..... 2255, 2318
- \STC@line ..... 2328, 2330
- \STC@list ..... 2252, 2255, 2318, 2332
- \STC@loop ..... 2252, 2319
- \STC@next ..... 2183, 2252, 2318
- \stc@pgno ..... 432, 433, 1972
- \STC@read ..... 2319, 2328, 2332
- \stc@rule ... 1879, 1953, 1984, 2051, 2086,
  - 2119, 2507, 2510, 2513
- \stc@sect ..... 2175
- \stc@setform ..... 1972, 2845
- \STC@test ..... 2330, 2332
- \STC@toc ..... 2255, 2319, 2332
- \stc@verse ..... 1911
- stc@verse (environment) ... 1911, 1970, 1972,
  - 2036, 2042, 2103, 2109, 2845, 2860,
  - 2875
- \stcdotsep ..... 2825, 2848
- \stcfont ..... 1, 790, 1890, 1948, 4519
- \stcindent 788, 1879, 1919, 1965, 2031, 2098,
  - 2339, 4371
- \stclotrmarg ..... 2816
- \stcname ..... 2257, 2262, 2290
- \stcpagenumbers ..... 393, 432, 449, 4568
- \stcPfont ..... 1, 793, 1890, 4519
- \stcpnumwidth ..... 2807, 2846
- \stcPSfont ..... 1
- \stcrule ..... 2505, 4550
- \stcSPfont ..... 793, 1890, 4519
- \stcSSfont ..... 1, 792, 1890, 4519
- \stcSSSfont ..... 1, 793, 1890, 4519
- \stctitle ..... 1, 1938, 1953, 4275,
  - 4773, 4794, 4815, 4836, 4854, 4872,
  - 4894, 4923, 4940, 4957, 4975, 4991,
  - 5007, 5023, 5039, 5056, 5077, 5109,
  - 5137, 5156, 5172, 5207, 5245, 5264,
  - 5281, 5304, 5321, 5338, 5361, 5387,
  - 5404, 5425, 5449, 5478, 5514, 5531,
  - 5548, 5569, 5592, 5625, 5654, 5669,
  - 5686, 5701, 5719, 5752, 5792, 5832,
  - 5857, 5970, 6002, 6035, 6057, 6082,
  - 6099, 6117, 6135, 6209, 6230, 6247,
  - 6266, 6288, 6305, 6329, 6346, 6363,
  - 6384, 6407, 6424, 6448, 6477, 6492,
  - 6511, 6527, 6546, 6562, 6579, 6598,
  - 6616, 6637, 6654, 6672, 6690, 6705,
  - 6738, 6778, 6817, 6838, 6906, 6923,
  - 6940, 6963, 6982, 6999, 7020, 7035,

- 7051, 7072, 7089, 7106, 7130, 7175,  
7195, 7222, 7243, 7258, 7273, 7288  
`\stctocrmarg` ..... 2818, 2847  
`\stepcounter` ..... 264,  
297, 309, 519, 959, 991, 1066, 1125,  
1557, 1646, 1660, 1699, 1757, 1817,  
2260, 2290, 2355, 2414  
`\stifont` ... 1, 1890, 1953, 2019, 2086, 4519  
`subfig` ..... **30, 356**  
`\subfigbottomskip` ..... 2147, 2177  
`\subfigcapskip` ..... 2458  
`\subfigtopskip` ..... 2146, 2177  
`subfigure` ..... **30**  
`\subfigure` ..... 1079,  
1770, 2175, 2178, 2180, 2369, 2411,  
2416, 2421, 2426, 2431, 2436, 2441  
`\subfigure@mtcck` .. 2651, 2656, 2666, 2672,  
2686, 2693, 2709  
`\subparagraph` . 902, 924, 944, 973, 980, 1250,  
1674, 2274  
`\subparagraph@mtcck` ..... 2648  
`\subref` ..... 2451–2454  
`\subsection` ..... 524, 533,  
584, 593, 611, 620, 673, 682, 705, 714,  
727, 736, 822, 824, 826, 828, 831, 833,  
835, 837, 839, 841, 843, 845, 847, 849,  
851, 853, 855, 857, 859, 861, 863, 865,  
867, 869, 871, 873, 875, 877, 879, 881,  
889, 911, 918, 926, 938, 954, 966, 973,  
982, 997, 999, 1001, 1010, 1018, 1020,  
1022, 1024, 1143, 1170, 1190, 1211,  
1237, 1453, 1458, 1470, 1475, 1510,  
1621, 1623, 1627, 1629, 1667, 1669,  
1673, 1674, 1675, 1874, 1893, 1912,  
1919, 1929, 1933, 1945, 1951, 1962,  
1969, 1975, 2274, 2349, 2354, 2358,  
2363  
`\subsection@mtcck` ..... 2645  
`\subsubsection` ..... 602, 603,  
898, 920, 940, 968, 973, 1172, 1193,  
1213, 1239, 1674, 1897, 1902, 1907,  
1956, 1980, 1986, 1991, 2274, 2350,  
2352, 2359, 2361  
`\subsubsection@mtcck` ..... 2646  
`\subtable` ..... 1138, 1830, 2428  
`\subtable@mtcck` ... 2652, 2658, 2662, 2674,  
2680, 2695, 2702  
`\sv@chapter` ..... 805  
`\sv@minilof@` ..... 849  
`\sv@minilot@` ..... 849  
`\sv@minitoc@` ..... 849  
`\sv@part` ..... 1557  
`\sv@partlof@` ..... 859  
`\sv@partlot@` ..... 859  
`\sv@parttoc@` ..... 859  
`\sv@sect` ..... 2129, 2135  
`\sv@sectlof@` ..... 869  
`\sv@sectlot@` ..... 869  
`\sv@secttoc@` ..... 869  
`\sv@spart` ..... 1557  
`swedish.mld` ..... **495**  
`swedish2.mld` ..... **495**
- ## T
- `T` ..... **270**  
`\taa` ..... 5506–5508, 5510–5512, 5514–5516  
`\table` ..... 1138, 1830, 2428  
`\table@mtcck` .. 2650, 2657, 2661, 2673, 2679,  
2694, 2701  
`\tableofcontents` ..... 1, 11, 209, 291,  
304, 512, 754, 1070, 1493, 1553, 1603,  
1649, 1780, 1861, 2007, 2051, 2071,  
2162, 2206, 2260, 2289, 3798, 3995,  
4024, 4053  
`tabular (environment)` .. 613, 683, 751, 1368,  
1436, 1515, 1953, 2019, 2086  
`\tav` . 5956, 5958, 5960, 5961, 5963, 5965, 5967,  
5968, 5970, 5972, 5974, 5975  
`\testtemp` ..... 2371, 2373–2376, 2379  
`\tet` ..... 5961, 5968, 5975  
`\textheight` ..... 2336  
`\textit` ..... 1357  
`\textsc` ... 336, 1855, 1869, 1871, 1926, 1938,  
2068  
`\textsf` ..... 333  
`\textsl` ..... 336, 544, 631  
`\textsuperscript` ..... 1845  
`\texttt` 360, 464, 466, 472, 474, 480, 482, 566,  
655  
`\textwidth` ..... 2334  
`\tf@mtc` 8, 227, 332, 946, 956, 960, 991, 1036,  
1067, 1102, 1126, 1161, 1177, 1197,  
1636, 1644, 1670, 1671, 1743, 1744,  
1755, 1767, 1768, 1803, 1804, 1815,  
1827, 1828, 1863, 1864, 2249, 2257,  
2271, 2272, 2302, 2303, 2340, 2341,  
2352, 2366, 2367, 2399, 2400, 2411,  
2425, 2426, 2458, 2459, 4303, 4485  
`thai.ldf` ..... **496**  
`thai.mld` ..... **496**  
`thai.mlo` ..... **496**  
`thaicjk.ldf` ..... **496**  
`thailatex` ..... **212, 496**  
`\The@mtc` ... 542, 601, 603, 671, 673, 739, 741  
`\thechapter` ..... 1330, 1411, 4759, 4762  
`\themtc` 542, 956, 960, 991, 1064, 1067, 1123,  
1126  
`\Thepart` ..... 1212, 1331, 1404, 1478

- `\theptc` . 1212, 1644, 1663, 1664, 1667, 1668,  
1755, 1760, 1761, 1764, 1765, 1815,  
1820, 1821, 1824, 1825
- `\thesection` . . . . . 1410, 1411, 1852
- `\thestc` . . . . . 1923, 1989, 2056, 2113,  
2257, 2264, 2265, 2268, 2269, 2290,  
2352, 2359, 2360, 2363, 2364, 2411,  
2418, 2419, 2422, 2423
- `\thispageminilofstyle` . . . . 484, 681, 4595
- `\thispageminilotstyle` . . . . 484, 749, 4595
- `\thispageminitocstyle` . . . . 484, 611, 4595
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . . . . 484, 1418, 4586
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` . . . . 484, 1493, 4586
- `\thispageparttocstyle` . . . . 484, 1345, 4586
- `\thispagesectlofsty` . . . . 484, 2002, 4604
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` . . . . 484, 2069, 4604
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` . . . . 484, 1936, 4604
- `\thispagestyle` . . . . . 484
- `tight` . . . . . **38, 58, 241, 263, 292**
- `\tightmtcfalse` . . . . . 1, 133, 3383, 4614
- `\tightmtctrue` . . . . . 1, 3382
- `\title` . . . . . 1854
- `titlesec` . . . . . **48**
- `titletoc` . . . . . **48**
- `tocbibind` . . . . . **46, 48, 85, 90, 94, 95**
- `tocdepth` . . . . . **265, 269**
- `\toclevel@chapter` . . . . . 145
- `\toclevel@paragraph` . . . . . 149
- `\toclevel@part` . . . . . 144
- `\toclevel@section` . . . . . 146
- `\toclevel@starchapter` . . . . . 145
- `\toclevel@starparagraph` . . . . . 149
- `\toclevel@starpart` . . . . . 144
- `\toclevel@starsection` . . . . . 146
- `\toclevel@starsubparagraph` . . . . . 150
- `\toclevel@starsubsection` . . . . . 147
- `\toclevel@starsubsubsection` . . . . . 148
- `\toclevel@subparagraph` . . . . . 150
- `\toclevel@subsection` . . . . . 147
- `\toclevel@subsubsection` . . . . . 148
- `\toclevel@xchapter` . . . . . 141
- `\toclevel@xpart` . . . . . 140
- `\toclevel@xsect` . . . . . 142
- `\toclevel@xsection` . . . . . 143
- `tocloft` . . . . . **48, 60**
- `TODO` . . . . . **217**
- `\topsep` . . . . . 586, 1319
- `\ttfamily` . . . . . 1611, 1614, 1657, 1660
- `turkish.mld` . . . . . **496**
- U**
- `uighur.mld` . . . . . **497**
- `uighur2.mld` . . . . . **497**
- `uighur3.mld` . . . . . **497**
- `UKenglish.mld` . . . . . **497**
- `ukraineb.mld` . . . . . **498**
- `ukrainian.mld` . . . . . **498**
- `undotted` . . . . . **58**
- `\undottedmtcfalse` . . . . . 367, 3389, 4616
- `\undottedmtctrue` . . . . . 3388
- `\unhcopy` . . . . . 324, 328
- `\unitlength` . . 892, 905, 947, 973, 1004, 1158,  
1164, 1177, 1218, 1242, 1267
- `\unpenalty` . . . . . 331
- `unsrt` . . . . . **47**
- `uppersorbian.mld` . . . . . **499**
- `\upshape` . . . . . 563,  
564, 573, 790, 1234, 1235, 1244, 1247–  
1249, 1258, 1608, 1611, 1614, 1654,  
1657, 1660, 1890, 1891, 1899, 2151,  
2153, 2155, 2158, 2160
- `\url` . . . . . 467, 475, 483
- `USenglish.mld` . . . . . **499**
- `\usepackage` . . . . . 1, 3–5,  
54, 116, 176–178, 201–203, 205, 253–  
258, 287–289, 297, 298, 495, 503, 504,  
749, 750, 783–785, 1038–1041, 1293,  
1295–1302, 1312, 1313, 1490, 1541–  
1544, 1597–1599, 1635–1637, 1682,  
1683, 1729, 1730, 1775, 1776, 1837–  
1844, 1999–2002, 2004, 2032, 2038,  
2039, 2065, 2067, 2137, 2142, 2143,  
2198–2202, 2243, 2284, 2285, 2338,  
2368–2370, 4632
- `usorbian.mld` . . . . . **499**
- V**
- `\value` 116, 4077, 5347, 5350, 5353, 5370, 5578,  
5581, 5584, 5601, 5611, 5614, 5617
- `varsects` . . . . . **49, 68, 242, 384**
- `\vav` . 5956, 5959, 5961, 5963, 5966, 5968, 5970,  
5973, 5975
- `\vbox` . . . . . 2176, 2179, 2181, 2385, 2392
- `\vfil` . . . . . 2176, 2179, 2181, 2386, 2391
- `\vfill` . . . . . 1358, 1375
- `vietnam.mld` . . . . . **500**
- `vietnam.sty` . . . . . **500**
- `vietnamese.mld` . . . . . **500**
- `\vref` . . . . . 2190, 2191
- `\vrule` . . . . . 2377, 2378, 2380
- W**
- `\waw` . . . . . 4866, 4870, 4874, 5508, 5512, 5516
- `welsh.mld` . . . . . **501**
- `while.tip` . . . . . **245**
- `\write` . . . . . 332, 1177, 1197



**X**

`\xalx` . . . . 6830–6832, 6834–6836, 6838–6840,  
           7280–7282, 7284–7286, 7288–7290  
`xalx.mld` . . . . . **466, 501**  
`xalx2.mld` . . . . . **502**  
`xalx3.mld` . . . . . **502**  
`xchapter` . . . . . **250**  
`\xchapter` . . . . . 803, 1063, 1122, 4485  
`xmk` . . . . . **218**  
`xpart` . . . . . **248**  
`\xpart` . . . . . 1212, 1756, 1816, 4485  
`xsect` . . . . . **249**  
`\xsect` . . . . . 2123, 2354, 2413, 4485  
`\xsection` . . . . . 2123

**Y**

`\ya` . . . . . 5507, 5508, 5511, 5512, 5515, 5516  
`\yahamza` . 4865, 4866, 4869, 4870, 4873, 4874  
`\yod` . . . . . 5957–5960, 5964–5967, 5971–5974